Contents)

Onit 7: Health and safety	
Test 1	
Test 1	5
Test 2	5
Unit 9: A good education	10
Test 3	
Revision 3: Units 7, 8 & 9	
Test on Revision 3	
Unit 10: What's your job?	
Test 4	
Unit 11: Amazing people	232
Test 5	279
Unit 12: Hard work	282
Test 6	325
Revision 4: Units 10, 11 & 12	
Test on Revision 4	
Treasure Island	
Chapter (7)	
Chapter (8)	
Chapter (9)	
Chapter (10)	the state of the s
Chapter (11)	369
Chapter (12)	376



(Objectives

Reading : Leaflet about hygiene around the home

Writing : An email giving advice

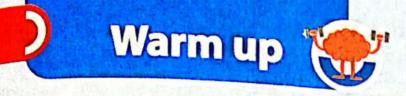
Listening : How to give first aid

Speaking : Giving advice

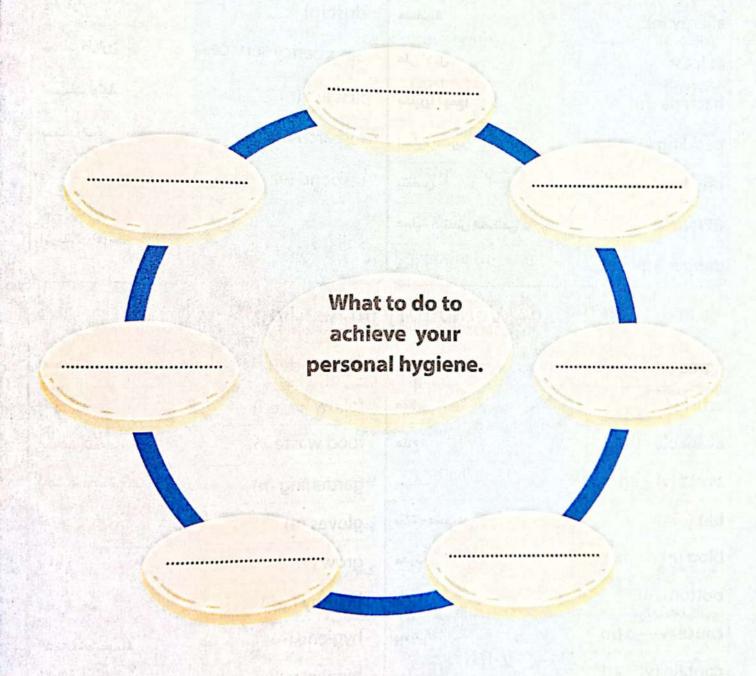
Language : should/shouldn't, must/ mustn't

Critical thinking : Interpreting research: the importance of hygiene





Your guide to personal hygiene:





Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

allergy (n)	حساسية
at least	على الأقل
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا (جمع)
bedding (n)	أغطية السرير
breathe (v) – d	يتنفس
CPR (n)	عملية التنفس الصناعي
danger (n)	خطر

dust (n)	
	غبار/تراب
emergency services	خدمات طوارئ
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
research (n)	، بحث/دراسة
respond (v) – ed	يستجيب/يرد
soil (n)	التربة الزراعية

Vocabulary on Reading

agree (v) – d	يوافق
article (n)	مقال
available (adj)	متاح
avoid (v) – ed	يتجنب
bin (n)	سلة مهملات
blog (n)	مدونة
bottom (n)	قاع
cause (v) – d (n)	بنس/بنست
contain (v) – ed	يحتوى على
drop (v) – ped	يسقط

easily (adv)	بسهولة
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع
food waste (n)	فضلات الطعام
gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة
gloves (n)	قفازات
grow (v)	ينمو
healthy (adj)	صحی/سلیم
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية
hygienically (adv)	صحیئا (بشکل صحی)
interpreting (n)	تفسير



Health and safety



leaflet (n)	5.A.:/
	منشور/نشرة
leave (v)	يغادر/يترك
links (n)	روابط
pet (n)	حيوان أليف
remove (v) – d	یزیل ۳۰۰۰
rule (n)	قاعدة
safe (adj)	سليم/آمن
safety (n)	سلامة/أمان
scientific (adj)	علمي
separate (adj)	منفصل

جلد إنسان (بشرة)
صابونى
مدهش
حمام
بنطلون
يثق في/ثقة
غیر عادی
دافئ
يرتدى
موقع على الإنترنت

Vocabulary on Listening

basic (adj)	أساسى
cable (n)	كابل /سـِلْك (كهربائي)
check (v) – ed	يفحص/يراجع
description (n)	وصف
electrical (adj)	کھربی
equipment (n)	معدات
hurt (v)	يؤذى/يجرح
ingredients (n)	مقادير

lie (v)	يستلقى/يكذب
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد
medical (adj)	طبی
metal (n)	معدن
nearby (adj)	قريب/مجاور
possibility (n)	إمكانية/احتمالية
shout (v) (ed)	يهتف/يصيح
situation (n)	موقف



Workbook Vocabulary

chopping boards	ألواح تقطيع (طعام)
cleaner (n)	منظف/عامل نظافة
cough (v) – ed	یکح
cut (n)	جرح/شق
dirt (n)	قذارة
expert (n)	خبير
extra (adj)	إضافي
fact (n)	حقيقة
messy (adj)	فوضوی

properly (adv)	٨٠. (م.
regularly (adv)	ئىپىكىل ختىر
·	بانتظام
replace (v) – d	المنيس
sneeze (v) – d	يعطس
special (adj)	خاص
sponge (n)	قطعة إسفنج
spread (v)	ينتشر
tissue (n)	منديل ورقى
wet (adj)	مبلل

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as often as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع
become ill	يصبح مريضنا
carry bacteria	ينقل العدوى البكتيرية
come back again	يرجع مرة أخرى
do CPR	يقوم بعمل التنفس الصناعي
DOs and DON'Ts	ما يجب فعله وما لا يجب فعله
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
get dirty	يتسخ

give advice	ينصح
have a shower	يغتسل
have an allergy to	لدیه حساسیه من
keep clean	يحافظ على نظيفًا
make harder	يجعل أصعب
move away from	يتحرك بعيداً عن
post online	ينشر على الإنترنت
protect against	يحمى ضد/من

research on the same t	opic أبحاث في نفس الموضوع
stay clean	يبقى نظيفًا
belong to	ينتمى لـ/يخص
contact with	تواصل مع
drink from	يشرب من
evacuate from	يخلى من
evacuate to	يخلى إلى
fall on	يسقط على
full of	مملوء ب
find about	يكشف عن
go into	يدخل فى
home for	موطن لــ

take air in and out	يستنشق ويزفر الهواء
know about	يعرف عن
live in	يعيش في
live on	يعيش على
return from	يعود من
shout at	يصرخ في
talk to	يتحدث إلى
think of/about	یفکر فی
lie <mark>on</mark>	يستلقى على
move around	يتنقل
near to	قریب من
respond to	يستجيب لـ عموس



Derivatives

Verb		Noun		AA	
agree	يوافق	agreement	غاق	agreeable	jective
		allergy allergen	ساسية ادة تثير الحساسيا		نبول سسسسسسسسسسسسسسسسس په حساسية
breathe	يتنفس	breathing breath	ملية التنفس لنفس	breathless breathy	بر قادر على التنفس
burn	يحرق	burn burner	-رق مشعل	hurning	شقص/مضىء
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive describable	صفى ابل للوصف
نذرًا dirty	يجعل شيئنا ة	dirt	قذارة	dirty	نر نر
dust	يزيل التراب	dust	تراب	dusty	ترب (علیه غبار)
endanger ر	يعرض للخط	danger	خطر	dangerous endangered	نطير بعرض للخطر
grow	ينمو	growth	نمو	growing	ام/متزاید
interpret	يفسر	interpretation interpreter	تفسیر مترجم (فوری)	interpretive	تفسيرى
medicate	يعالج/يداوي	medicine	طب / دواء	medical	طبی
شوضی mess	يقوم بعمل	mess	فوضى	messy	فوضوى
respond	يستجيب	response	استجابة	responsive	متجاوب
ون على	يضع الصاب	soap	صابون	soapy	صابونی
اsoil ا	يلطخ/يلوث	soil	التربة الزراعية	soiled	متسخ



Pre-reading question: - What do you do to keep your home clean?

Hygiene at home: Seven DOs and DON'Ts for a healthy life





1. Take your shoes off

The bottoms of your shoes can carry⁽¹⁾ a lot of bacteria into your house. You should always take your shoes off at the door.

2. No more dust(2)

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned. However, dust can make it difficult to breathe and it can cause⁽³⁾ skin problems. You should clean your house or flat as often as you can.

3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks⁽⁴⁾ can easily fall⁽⁵⁾ on the kitchen floor. You should clean your kitchen floor at least⁽⁶⁾ once a week. You should use warm⁽⁷⁾, soapy water so you can remove⁽⁸⁾ all the bacteria.

4. Change your bedding

We spend a lot of our time asleep in bed. You should change your bedding⁽⁹⁾ at least once every two weeks so bacteria can't live in it.

5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets (10)

Research has shown that contact⁽¹¹⁾ with pets early in life can protect you against allergies⁽¹²⁾. But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything else until you've washed your hands.

6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear gloves⁽¹³⁾ if you're going to touch soil⁽¹⁴⁾ in the garden because it can contain bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished gardening, too.

/11		
(1)	U	يحه
	-	-

غبار (2)

اتصال (11)

7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can grow⁽¹⁵⁾ in your bin⁽¹⁶⁾. You shouldn't leave your bin open.

Hygiene rules(17) around the world

In the UK, you must put your food waste(18) in a separate(19) bin. In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house.

In the USA, you should offer(20) to help clean up after dinner at a friend's house.

ينمو (15)

سلة معملات (16)

قواعد (17)

فضلات الطعام (18)

منفصل (19)

يعرض (20)

Post-reading question:

- Can you think of another DO or DON'T for hygiene at home?



Pre-listening question:

- What do you think is wrong with the man in the picture?

Nurse: Today, I'm going to tell you what to do if you find a person who is lying(1) on the ground and not moving. Call the emergency services immediately(2). Then you must



يستلقى (1)

فورًا (2)

يتحقق من (3)

مخاطر (4)

الكابلات الكهربائية (5)

عمليه التنفس (6)

responds. If the person doesn't respond to you, put your face next to their face so you can check their breathing(6). If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to do CPR so you can help the person start to breathe again.

Post-listening question:

- What advice can the emergency services give to help someone breathe again?

check(3) if there are any dangers(4) near to the person,

like electrical cables(5). If there are any dangers, move

the person away from them. When you know they're

safe, shout 'Hello!' or 'Wake up!' and see if the person

Workbook Text

Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of dirt⁽¹⁾ and bacteria.

Research shows that the deep cuts in chopping boards⁽²⁾ are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them properly⁽³⁾. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too. However, bacteria really love warm, wet places and so your kitchen sponge⁽⁴⁾ probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home.

Experts⁽⁵⁾ say that it's most important to wash our hands regularly. If we touch animals, we should wash our hands, and we need to use a tissue⁽⁶⁾ when we sneeze to stop the bacteria spreading⁽⁷⁾ in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boats

spreading⁽⁷⁾ in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boards and giving them an extra clean once a week. We should replace⁽⁸⁾ kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy special cleaners for phones, tablets and computers.

=.11:	
عداره	
	قذارة

ألواح التقطيع (2)

بصورة صحيحة (3)

يستبدل (8)

Video Script

We need food to live, but if our food isn't prepared hygienically⁽¹⁾, we can have some serious⁽²⁾ health problems. That's the reason why food hygiene is very important, both in restaurants and shops, and at home.

Before you start cooking, you must wash your hands, so that there are no bacteria on them. If you have long hair, you should tie it up so no hairs⁽³⁾ will go into the food you're cooking. After that, you can take your ingredients⁽⁴⁾, knives⁽⁵⁾ and other equipment and start preparing the food. You must wash fruit and vegetables first. You mustn't touch the metal part of the knife while you're using it.

(1)	صحية	ريقة	h
1.1	**		

جاد/خطير (2)

شعرات (3)

مكونات (4)

سكاكين (5)





Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She has an inf	fluenza. She can't stop co	oughing and	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
a) laughing	b) breathing	c) eating	al)
Bacteria like to	o grow in warm, wet pla	ces like a kitchen	d) sneezing
a) oven	b) cook	c) sponge	14
My father was	very angry because the	re was on all	the furniture
a) uust	DI DIN	c) cloud	
(4) You should us	e a when you sn	eeze in order not to	Spread bactout
a) paper	D) tissue	c) sponge	4) 4 · · ·
You should wa	sh your hands with	after using the to	oilet
a) gloves	b) oil	c) dirt	d) soan

Focus on Vocabulary

allergy حساسية	a medical condition in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance	
at least على الأقل	not less than a particular number or amount	
bacteria بکتیریا (جمع)	very small living things that cause diseases	
bedding أغطية السرير (ملايات السرير)	sheets, covers, etc. that you put on a bed	
breathe پتنفس	taking air in and out of your body	
CPR عملية التنفس الصناعي	something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body	
danger خطر	the possibility of being hurt or killed	

dust غبار/تراب	 dry powder consisting of extremely small bits of dirt that is in buildings on furniture, floors, etc. if they are not kept clean
emergency services خدمات طوارئ	people who come to help you very quickly
first aid إسعافات أولية	basic medical help given quickly
research البحث العلمي	studying something to find new facts about it
respond پستجیب/پرد	doing something when someone talks to you
soil تربة زراعية	▶ the top layer of the earth in which plants grow

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد ١
available	متاح/متوافر	feasible/ obtainable	unavailable	غير متاح/غير متوافر
avoid	يتجنب	evade/ avert	face	يواجه
bottom	قاع	base	top	قمة
change	يغير	alter/ modify	remain	يظل المالية العالم
danger	خطر	hazard	safety	أمان
easily	بسمولة	simply/ smoothly	difficultly	بصعوبة
follow	يتع	pursue	disregard	يتجاهل
hygiene	النظافة الشخصية	personal cleanliness	sanitation	النظافة العامة
interpret	يفسر	clarify	confuse	يربك أرباد والمست
leave	يغادر	depart/ abandon	arrive/ reach	يصل
messy	فوضوی	untidy	tidy	مرتب
respond	يستجيب	answer/ reply to Lan a	ignore	يتجاهل ويع معتدي



Notes on Vocabulary



take ... off

بمعانِ كثيرة مثل: (take ... off) بمعانِ كثيرة مثل:

to remove a piece of clothing from your/somebody's body

(سبكلم) يظع

He took off his wet boots and sat by the fire.

to leave the ground and begin to fly

تقلع (للطائرات)

The plane took off an hour late.

to leave a place, especially in a hurry

يترك (مكانـًا بسرعة)

When he saw me coming, he took off in the opposite direction.

to become successful or popular very quickly or suddenly

ينجح (بسرعة/بشكل مفاجئ)

The new magazine has really taken off.

Her singing career took off after her TV interview.

to copy somebody's voice, actions or manner in an amusing way (=) impersonate (شخصنا

Ali can take off his father to perfection.

(cause make

cause + (object) + to + inf.

يسبب

Nothing will cause me to change my mind.

make + (object) + inf.

يجعل

Nothing will make me change my mind.

make + (someone/something) + adj.

يجعل

The latest news made him happy.

(contain	include	consist of

يحتوى على (بداخله)

This drink doesn't contain any sugar.

include

يشتمل على/يتضمن

Does the price of this service include tax?

يتكون من

My house consists of four rooms, a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom.

soil earth ground land floor

soil تربة زراعية

▶This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil to grow well. earth

الكرة الأرضية/تراب

Earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.

ground

أرض الشارع

On my way to school, I dropped my bag on the ground. land

▶ Earth consists of water and land.

floor

طابق في بناية/أرضية الحجرة

يقضى وقتاً مع (شخص)

يقضى وقتـًا في (مكان)

My brother lives on the 15th floor in this building.

The floor of my room needs to be cleaned.

(skin leather

skin جلد (إنسان/حيوان)

The only difference between us is the colour of our skins.

leather جلد مدبوغ

▶ He would wear his black leather jacket at the party.

C spend

spend (time) + (v-ing) يقضى وقتـُا في

Mona spends all her free time painting.

spend (time) with + (somebody)

I want to spend more time with my family.

spend (time) in/at

We'll have to spend the night in a hotel.

wear put on

يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص) Wear

We wear light clothes in summer.

يقوم بارتداء (في الحال) put on

Put on your shoes. We are late for school.



Language Notes

1. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things.

على مفرد. في bacterium هي جمع ويتبعها فعل جمع ... المفرد منها هي bacterium ويتبعها فعل مفرد. 2. Research has shown that contact with pets early in life can protect you against allergies . كلمة Research كاسم بمعنى أبحاث لا تعد ولا تجمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

3. A lot of bacteria can grow in your bin.

. النعل grow إذا جاء بمعنى ينمو فهو فعل لازم (لا يأتي بعده مفعول) أما اذا جاء بمعنى يزرع فهو فعل متعـدٌ (يأتي بعده مفعول).

4. You should wear gloves if you're going to touch soil in the garden.

. كلمة gloves هي جمع ويتبعها فعل جمع.

I bought a pair of gloves which is very expensive.

. تعامل كلمة gloves معاملة المفرد إذا سبقها كلمة pair.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My mother made me my room as a punishment.
 - a) clean

b) to clean

c) cleaning

- d) to cleaning
- I saw the woman who sat on the of the street asking people for money.
 - a) ground

b) land

c) floor

- d) soil
- To keep healthy, we should avoid foods whicha lot of fat.
 - a) consist

b) include

c) enclose

- d) contain
- as myis quite sensitive... as my مستحضرات تجميل is quite sensitive...
 - a) leather

b) skin

c) heart

- d) kidney
- I was taking my shoes when the phone rang.
 - a) from

b) of

c) off

aid) up had ata ath an

Vocabulary Exercises

A CONTRACTOR	V Ocabular y L	ACICISCS	cotton title c (5)
Choose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or d	the could have be:	oth and motions will be
1 The doctor told me			
a) response	b) impact	c) allergy	d) reply
2 My wife changes the	= of our sons'	bed every day.	DON SAMPLEY
a) carpet	b) leaflet	c) board	d) bedding
3 I could help the inju	red man because I had	d learnt a lot about	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
a) hospitality	b) first aid	c) hygiene	d) diet
We called the	when our teacher for	elt ill in the class.	
a) customer service	ara yang a Aprimi yang sa	b) call centre	
c) maintenance		d) emergency servi	ces
Most people don't re	ealise that they are	polluted air unt	il they get sick.
a) smiling	b) breathing	c) carrying	d) breezing
6 The doctor put plast	ter on my cut to stop	from getting	to it.
a) bacteria	b) blood	c) pets	d) birds
When his breathing			
	b) CBC		
Many skin diseases of			
	b) hygiene		
You should put your	rubbish in the	Take care not to le	ave it open.
	b) dust		d) bin
She is well to the second of the se			
a) replying	b) agreeing	c) responding	d) answering
Some plants and he			
	b) floor		
The doctors said she			
a) threat		c) safety	
The government shows the control of the control	ould improve	on al إجراءات	l our railways.
a) economic	900	c) maturity	
They lack the referer	to do their ow مراجع rces	n, so they shoul	d visit public libraries.
a) service	b) paragraph	c) research	d) history
15 The teacher told us t	that tomatoes	best in direct sunlig	ht.
a) grow	b) agree	c) plant	d) enlarge
6 It is known that smo	king can seriously dar	mage yourai	nd cause death.
a) health	b) work	c) relationship	d) trust
These old books wer	re all covered with	when I found th	nem.
a) blogs	b) skin	c) trust	d) dust
18 While I was carrying			

a) cable

b) car c) mountain d) plane

30 How many factory workers are in danger of losing their jobs? The antonym of the Pregnant women should avoid certain foods such as raw eggs. The synonym of the word "avoid" is e) alter c) confuse d) evade a) avert b) face 32 He has changed a lot since I last saw him. The synonym of the word "changed" is e) ignored d) pursued a) faced b) modified c) altered 33 Before leaving the train, make sure you have all your belongings with you. The antonym of the word "leaving" is e) clarifying a) reaching b) arriving c) departing d) abandoning https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg



(should - shouldn't) (must - mustn't)



should/shouldn't + inf.

We use "should/ shouldn't" for suggestions and advice.

١ - للاقتراح والنصيحة

- You should always wash your hands after you touch the cat. (I advise you to do this.)
- We should go to the party together. (I suggest going to the party together.)
- You shouldn't sleep late. It is bad for you. (I advise you not to do this.)

We use "should" when we ask for or give an opinion (I think – I don't think – Do you think?). المان المان

- I don't think you should work till late.
- I think my children should do their best to pass their exams.

٣- عند الاقتراح مع كلمة suggest.

- I suggest you should go with us.

Important Notes

	لنصيحة: ١٠٠٥- ١٠٠١ ١٠٠٠ نصيحة:	١) من الممكن استخدام الكلمات التالية بدلًا من should في ال
- Agnor	had better + inf.	My students had better study hard.
	ought to + inf.	My students <mark>ought to</mark> study hard.
	I advise to	I <mark>advise</mark> my students <mark>to</mark> study hard.
should =	It is advisable to	It is advisable for my students to study hard.
	If I were you, I would	If I were you, I would study hard.
	It is important to	It is important to study hard.
	It would be a good idea to	It would be a good idea to study hard.

:shoudn'	بدلًا من أ	الكلمات التالية	٢) من الممكن استخدام ا
			۲) من العقب

	had better not + inf.	You had better not walk alone in uninhabited places.	
	oughtn't to + inf.	You oughtn't to walk alone in uninhabited places.	
	I advise not to	I advise you not to walk alone in uninhabited places.	
shouldn't =	It is inadvisable to	It is inadvisable to walk alone in uninhabited places.	
	If I were you, I wouldn't	If I were you, I wouldn't walk alone in uninhabited places.	
	It is important not to	It is important not to walk alone in uninhabited places.	
	It wouldn't be a good idea to	It wouldn't be a good idea to walk alone in uninhabited places.	

٢) مع زمن الماضى تتحول النصيحة إلى لوم blame ويكون الشكل كالتالى:

should have + P.P. (It was wrong not to do that thing)

You should have come early. (You didn't come early and it was wrong.)

shouldn't have + P.P. (It was wrong to do that thing)

You shouldn't have wasted your time. (You wasted your time and it was wrong.)



must/mustn't + inf.

must

تستخدم must:

We use must for:

1. Necessity.

الضرورة

- You must study hard. (It is necessary to study hard.)
- I must phone my friend to tell a very important thing.
- Plants must get enough light and water if they are to grow properly.

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg

2. Strong advice.

نصيحة قوية

- You must stop smoking to keep healthy.
- You must study hard to get high marks.

3. Warm invitations.

دعوات حارة

- You must come to my birthday party. It will be tomorrow.
- You must have lunch with us. I will wait for you.

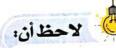
4. Strong feelings.

مشاعرقوية

- I must buy a present for my mother's birthday.
- We must phone Noha to ask about her mother as she is ill.

mustn't

- We use mustn't to express prohibition: (something dangerous OR against the law) - نستخدم mustn't للتعبير عن التحريم (شيء خطير أو ضد القانون).
- You mustn't park your car here. It is not allowed.
- You mustn't smoke in petrol stations. It is against law.
- You mustn't smoke in hospitals.





- يمكن استخدام بدائل must في المثال التالي:

	It is forbidden (banned/ prohibited) to + inf.	It is forbidden (banned/ prohibited) to smoke in hospitals.
mustn't =	It is not allowed to + inf.	It is not allowed to smoke in hospitals.
. 1 1 3	Subj. + (am – is – are) not allowed to + inf.	You are not allowed to smoke in hospitals.

- We also can use "mustn't" for strong advice:
- من الممكن استخدام mustn't للتعبير عن النصيحة القوية.
- You mustn't stay up late as it is bad for your health.
- You mustn't waste your time in vain.
- You mustn't eat this food. It is poisonous.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Oh dear! It is later than I thought, Igo now.
 - a) should b) must
 - c) need d) mustn't
- This book is very valuable. You read it.
 - a) need b) shouldn't
 - c) should d) mustn't
- Youcome early to attend the conference from the very beginning.
 - a) don't have to b) need
 - c) mustn't d) must
- Youturn this music down before your dad gets angry.
 - a) had better b) mustn't
 - c) ought d) shouldn't
- It isto sleep early to be able to get up early.
 - a) necessity b) advice
 - c) advisable d) forbidden



Language Exercises

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1 write to	my brother. I haven't	written to him for lor	ng.
a) have	b) must	c) mustn't	d) shouldn't
2 Mona's eyes are no	ot good. She	wear glasses for reac	ling. It is my advice.
a) must to	b) could		d) shouldn't
3 This is a military a	rea, you to p	hotograph anything.	
a) are allowed		b) aren't allowed	
c) must		d) needn't	
4 We don't have mu	ich time for the train	n. Wehurry.	
a) must	b) mustn't	c) may	d) needn't
5 The baby is asleep	and I want to do th	e housework. You	shout.
a) should	b) must	c) needn't	d) mustn't
6 Students	forget their teacher'	s instructions or they	will be punished.
a) oughtn't		b) mustn't	
c) don't have to	ester in Gherrich	d) should	
You don't have en	ough money for thi	s expensive jacket, yo	ulook for
a cheaper one. I su	uggest.		
a) mustn't	b) should	c) shouldn't	d) might
8 It is really a good	film. Yougo	and see it with your f	amily.
a) advise	b) should to	c) had better	d) ought
9 He suggested tha	t we go to tl	he park to have fun.	
a) should	b) must	c) needn't	d) mustn't
10 You talk to	your mother like tha	at. It is impolite.	
a) must	b) needn't	c) mustn't	d) may
11 When you come t	o Cairo again, you	come and see	us.
a) should	b) must	c) has to	d) ought
12 No one is	to smoke in public ¡	olaces. It is forbidden	The publisher of
a) provented	h) hanned	c) nococcary	d) allowed

The state of the s			The state of the s
13 You had a lot	of problems as I told you. Yo	ou to my a	dvice
a) have listen	ed	b) should liste	en
c) should hav		d) can't have	50, 40, 50
and the second s	e at school on time. It is a		of 110,7 5025 // 803
a) should	the set out the second	b) am allowed	d to
c) mustn't		d) have to	
	Irive fast in the city centre.	It is really danger	ous.
a) must		b) have to	
c) are inadvis	able to	d) mustn't	
	ghter that she'd better	the essay aga	ain to modify it.
a) write		c) writing	* 1. 1
	rive very carefully near sch	nools as there are	
a) must	b) are advisable	c) shouldn't	d) mustn't
18 This shirt is ve	ery tight, you to try	another one.	
a) should	b) must	c) ought	d) are banned
19 To get a high	mark in the exam, you	revise regula	rly.
a) should to	in in it may be	b) had better t	to
c) must to		d) ought to	
20 You tr	y this cake. It is really delic	ious.	
a) needn't	b) mustn't	c) must	d) suggest
21 You w	ear your shoes inside the l	nouse because it i	makes the floor dirty
a) needn't	Vice market and the con-	b) are not allow	wed
c) shouldn't	A NO PROPERTY OF A PARTY	d) hadn't bette	er
🥝 You wa	alk off when the teacher is	speaking with yo	ou. It is impolite.
a) should		b) are prohibit	ed
c) had better		d) mustn't	
😆 This site is very	dangerous to kids, they	be here.	
a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) shouldn't to
🤒 Men in Egypt	do their military se	rvice. It is their du	uty.
a) must	b) would	c) should	d) may
🥦 I think you	do more exercise to k	eep fit.	
a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) shouldn't

Pill in the space:

_	
	1 Traffic rules are similar in most countries. But in some European countries, people(a)
	2 Tourism is an important source of our national income. We
	Here are some advice you must follow if you have an exam. I think that you
5	Taking a nap is very good for your health. Remember that the best time to take a nap is about eight hours after you get(a)

	Gen	eral Exercis	ses (Lessons 1	&2)
11 Choose	the correct a	inswer from a, b, c	or d:	1 - 1 ATTA ATTENTO
One on a) em The to a) brows Resta	of my daughte nergency eacherde eathed urants may be	ers has a/an b) healthy eeply before speakir b) smiled	to cow's milk. c) allergy ng again. It was clea c) looked y fail to maintain s	tandards of hygiene. The
	blic cleanlines		b) personal cl	
c) sar	nitation		d) personal a	wareness
4 He in	haled the smo	ke and couldn't sto	p	set i a materiative i de s
a) lau	ghing	b) coughing	c) sniffing	d) spreading
While	one of you gi	ves to the ir	njured, the other sh	ould call an ambulance
a) firs	A 600		b) emergency	services
	t help		d) training	
6 Durin	a one	passenger began	to feel ill and want	ed the pilot to land.
	e-off		c) take-out	d) take-down
		rtain bacteria, virus		
	nitted to hum		, ,	
	ke	b) carry	c) invent	d) discover
		re time my		The state of the s
a) by	to spena mo.	b) to	c) in	d) with
	ld be a good i	dea to stop smokin	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	The second secon
			should	

10 You wash your hands before and after meals. b) mustn't c) must

a) shouldn't

d) might

19 We forget that we have an important meeting tomorrow.

a) aren't allowed b) shouldn't

c) don't have to

d) mustn't

Hendbe at home before 10 p.m. or she will be punished.

a) should

b) have to

c) must

d) is forbidden

It isto sleep early and get up early to have good health.

a) necessity

b) advisable

c) forbidden

d) banned

WhatI do if I have a difficult problem? Really, I need your advice.

a) might

b) should

c) advice

d) mustn't

If you are not well, you ask Yousra to go instead.

a) mustn't

b) ought

c) had better d) should to

6 Oh! It is raining again. I my car.

a) should have washed

b) must have washed

c) shouldn't have washed

d) can't have washed

Fill in the space:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Marwa was reputed as a wicked and quarrelsome lady. She lived with her husband whom she ill-treated. She cut off her relations with her neighbours. When one of her relatives paid her a visit, she would quarrel with him and make him leave for good.

One day, Marwa went to the butcher's. When the butcher gave her the meat she asked for, she threw it angrily to the ground saying that it was of a bad quality. A dog passing began to eat the meat. She kicked it severely and it bit her. Her leg was bleeding and she left the butcher's in a rage.

Some days later, she suffered terribly. She went to the doctor who examined her. The doctor told her that she was suffering from a very terrible and incurable disease known as rabies. It is caused by the bite of a mad dog. There is no cure for this disease. The doctor warned her that if she bit anyone, he or she would die.

She returned home sad and told her husband everything. She asked him to bring her a pen and paper. She sat down and began to write a list of names. He said to her, "Are you writing your will, my dear?" She said "No, I'm writing the names of those whom I'm going to bite." Seeing his name top on the list, he ran away like a mad man. He never returned home until the worst had happened.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The dog bit Marwa	
a) once	b) twice
c) thrice	d) it isn't mentioned in the passage
2 "There is no cure for this terrible disea	se."This means
a) death is probable	b) death is impossible
c) it can't be cured and death is sure	d) it can be cured and death is sure
Her husband's name was top on the list.	This shows that
a) he was the first to love	b) she loved him
c) she wanted to give him all her money	d) she hated him most of all
The Control of the Co	

UNIT

- The sentence "until the worst had happened." means that
 - a) she bit all the people she wrote their names
 - b) she died
 - c) she wrote the names of those she would bite
 - d) she ran away like a mad woman
- 5 Another meaning for the word severely is
 - a) gently
- b) kindly
- c) strongly
- d) carelessly

B) Answer the following questions:

- When do you think a person writes his will?
- Why do you think Marwa is a hateful character?
- What is rabies? What causes it?

A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. We have to take great care of trees as they help to keep the balance of nature and as scientists say, "Trees help the earth to breathe".
- 2. We all have always dreamed of living in a modern and advanced country where people are respected and are tolerant to each other.
- 3. Television is thought to show a variety of programmes that appeal to people of different ages. Also, it helps students by presenting some useful educational programmes.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- لابد أن يكون للوالدين العادات الصحية السليمة وقواعد النظافة الشخصية حتى يتعلم الطفل هذه العادات حيث إن الأطفال يقلدون آباءهم.
- ٢- لابد أن نتحمل جميعـًا مسئولية الحفاظ على نظافة مياه النيل وكذلك الحفاظ على كل قطرة مياه لأن نهر النيل يعتبر شريان الحياة في مصر.
 - ٣- عادة ما تبذل الحكومة جهدًا كبيرًا وقت الأزمات خاصة عند تعرض البلاد للكوارث الصحية مثل انتشار الفيروسات الخطيرة مثل فيروس كورونا.

Enrich your Vocabulary

balance	توازن
tolerant	متسامح
appeal to	تروق لـ
drop of water	قطرة مياه
crisis	ازمة
Coronavirus	فيروس كورونا المستجد

advanced	متقدم
variety	تنوع مر کاردستارین در در ازاره
imitate	يقلد ١١٥٥ و ١١٠٠
artery	شریان ۱۹۹۰ ۱۹۹۸
disaster	كارثة عاردوه الأدام proj

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

- 1. We should respect older people and follow their advice.
- Youth and social networking sites.



Lessons 3&4





Key Vocabulary

blanket (n)	بطانية
burn (n) (v)	حرق/يحرق
evacuate (v) – d	یخلی (مکانا)

immediately (adv)	في الحال
wrap (v) – ped	يلف

Vocabulary on Reading

back (n)	ظمر
break (v)	يكسر
complain (v) – ed	يشكو
cut (v) (n)	يجرح/جرح (صغير)
damage (n)	تلذ
fire (n)	حريق

happen (v) – ed	يحدث	
hurt (v)	يؤلم	
injured (adj)	مصاب	
offer (v) – ed	يعرض/يقدم عرضنا	
remember (v) – ed	يتذكر	
smoke (n)	دخان	

Workbook Vocabulary

apologise (v) – d	يعتذر
argument (n)	جدال
beach (n)	شاطیء (بلاج)
borrow (v) – ed	يستلف
explain (v) – ed	يشرح

helmet (n)	خوذة
plaster (n)	لاصق طبى/ضمادة
realise (v) – d	يدرك
serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
smell (n)	رائحة



Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة
at the weekend	فى نهاية الأسبوع
get angry	يغضب
have an argument with	لديه جدال مع
have problems	لدیه مشکلات
. come up	يحدث قريبًا
complain about	يشكو بشأن
decide on	يقرر بشان
get to	يصل إلى
help with	يساعد في

make a mistake	نطف
make sure	مرايز
put pressure on	ربلد لمغض
receive advice	يتلقى نصيحة
stay calm	يېقى ھادئا
take action	يتخذ إجراء
on fire	محترق
put on	يضع على
sorry for	يأسف على

Derivatives

Verb	Noun		Adject	ive
apologise يعتذر	apology	اعتذار	apologetic	اعتذاری/تبریری
argue يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلی
يشكو complain	complaint complainant	شكوى صاحب الشكوى		
evacuate (مکانـُا)	evacuation evacuee	إخلاء مـُرحـَل	evacuative	إخلائي
explain يشرح	explanation	شرح	explanatory	تفسيرى
یصیب injure	injury	إصابة	injured	مصاب



Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Can you remember any good advice that you have received?

To : (name)
Subject : Advice

Dear,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my neighbour, Mrs Zeinab? She had an accident⁽¹⁾ last year and now she doesn't go out⁽²⁾ much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat⁽³⁾ yesterday and the bins were full. The floor and kitchen were dirty, too. She complained⁽⁴⁾ about her back hurting⁽⁵⁾ and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams coming up⁽⁶⁾. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

حادث (1)

يخرج (2)

شقة (3)

یشتکی (4)

ألم /إصابة (5)

يحدث قريبًا (6)

Post-reading question: - Can you help your friend with this problem? How?

Workbook Text

To : Amir

Subject : Help! Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the argument⁽¹⁾ you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay calm and explain⁽²⁾ that he should ask you before he borrows⁽³⁾ your things. I'm sure he will realise that he made a mistake⁽⁴⁾ and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow? I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

جدال (1)

يشرح (2)

يستعير (3)

ارتكب خطأ (4)

ينسى (5)

رائحة (6)

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was planning to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot⁽⁵⁾ about it! The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is really dirty. There's dust everywhere and there's a strange smell⁽⁶⁾ in the kitchen! What should I do? Help! Regards,

Maher





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In a/an	case, we must stay caln	n to decide on the be	st action to take,
a) argument	b) agreement	c) evacuation	d) fact
In accidents, the	injured person should	(be up iii a bi	anker to keep
them warm. a) given	b) evacuated	c) broken	d) wrapped
a) evacuated	ldings should be b) burnt	c) removed	d) damaged
My frienda) burnt	his back while playing b) complained	g the final match. c) hurt	d) cured
6 I must fo	r cancelling the meetin	g as the manager is v	ery ill.
a) remember	b) apologise	c) realise	d) explain

Focus on Vocabulary

blanket بطانية	a warm cover on a bed
burn	damage to the body caused by fire or heat
evacuate یخلی (مکانـًا)	▶ to leave a place because it is not safe
immediately في الحال	very quickly, without waiting
wrap یلف	▶ to cover something with cloth or paper

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
argument	جدال	disagreement/ debate	agreement/ harmony
evacuate	یخلی (مکانـًا)	abandon/ empty	remain يظل
immediately	فى الحال	at once/ instantly	later فيما بعد
realise	يدرك	understand/ grasp	يسىء الفهم misunderstand
serious	خطير	dangerous/ hazardous	safe/ secure آمن
wrap	يلف إن ع مع	cover	یکشف uncover

Notes on Vocabulary

(realise recognise

realise

I suddenly realised that the boy was crying.

recognise يتعرف على

I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I recognised her immediately.

(complain (that/ of/ about/ to)

complain that + subject + verb +

يشكو أن

She complained that no one had been at the airport to meet her.

complain of/about

يشكو من

- Nora has been complaining of severe headaches.
- She often complains about not feeling appreciated at work.

complain to

يشكو إلى

Neighbours complained to the police about the dogs barking.

UNIT 7

remember + (to + inf.) / (v-ing)

remember + (to + inf.)

تَنْكَر ثُم يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم بعد)

I remembered to give her the message.

(I remembered first, then I gave her the message.)

remember + (v-ing)

بتنكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم في الماضي)

I remembered giving her the message.

(I gave her the message and now I remember that I did so.)

forget + (to + inf.) / (v-ing)

forget + (to + inf.)

ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم)

I forgot to go to that meeting. (I forgot so I didn't go.)

forget + (v-ing)

قام بالفعل ونسى أنه قام به (الفعل تم)

I forgot going that meeting. (I forgot now that I went.)

Language Notes

- 1. I'm sure he will realise that he made a mistake and he will say sorry too.
- تستخدم في نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى ايضًا. afternoons.
 - I suggest (that) she study her lessons at night.

- يتبع الفعل suggest بــ (v-ing).

ومن الممكن أن يأتى بعده جملة كاملة يكون تكوينها كالآتى: (فاعل + فعل في المصدر +) ومن الممكن أن يأتي بعده جملة كاملة يكون تكوينها كالآتى: (فاعل + فعل في المصدر +)

- يستخدم الفعل burn بمعنى يحترق (لا يحتاج إلى مفعول).

My brother burnt his old books.

- ومن الممكن أيضاً استخدامه بمعنى يحرق (يحتاج إلى مفعول).



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 am sorry. I forgot the letter for you as I was busy.
 - a) posting

b) to posting

c) to post

- d) post
- I'm going to complain the manager because you insulted me.
 - a) for

b) of

c) about

- d) to
- The moment I saw her, I that she was very angry.
 - a) recognised

b) failed

c) accompanied

- d) realised
- Ihim as soon as he came into the room.
 - a) recognised

b) failed

c) accompanied

- d) realised
- Please, remember off the light before going out of the room.
 - a) switching

b) to switch

c) to switching

d) switched



UNIT 7

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's cold tonight	Can II	c or a:	
a) blanket	can I have another	on my bed, ple	ease?
		Claanar	
a) compliant	neighbour was take	n to hospital with serio	ous
Pinifelits	D) burns	c) complaints	d) do-
Children were	from the city t	o escape the dangers	of war.
a) evacuated	b) left	c) stayed	d) removed
When the teleph	one rang, my daught	er answered it	
a) immediate	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	c) immediately	d) once
He spent the eve	ning up the	presents for the party.	
a) wrapping	3		d) taking
6 Ask your teacher		o prepare for the exam	i.
a) mistake		c) argument	d) advice
7 Hisleg p	revented him from p	laying the final match.	
a) serious		c) injured	-
8 Ahmed never	about his work,	but he's obviously exh	austed.
a) arranges	b) complains	c) realises	d) recognises
We had a/an	with the waiter a	bout the bill. They add	ed more taxes.
a) agreement	b) statement	c) discussion	d) argument
My friends describ	e me as a ma	an as I don't like jokes.	
a) serious	b) kind	c) funny	d) humorous
1 can't play footbal	I this week because I's	ve my foot.	
a) moved	b) attacked	c) hurt	d) replaced
1 think you should .	to your broth	ner for wasting his time	2.
a) thank			d) offer
18 There was a/an different opinions.	between my p	parents about our exp	penses. They had tw
a) agreement	b) discussion	c) achievement	d) argument
		ew system. I don't know	v how to use it.
a) discuss	b) explain	c) tell	d) borrow
https://www	v.youtube.com/chann	el/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdr	oqhzzqlg

		70 to 100	
(Expressions, idioms,	prepositions, derivative	es, synonyms and an	tonyms Exercises
6 My father always pu	t his coffee th	e table and forgot to	drink it
a) at	D) IN	c) on	d) up
6 He was sorry	making such a mista	ke.	u, up
a) to	b) with	c) at	d) for
7 All the neighbours c	omplainedth	e noise during the p	artv.
a) from	b) to	c) about	d) by
18 He always helps his	wife the house	ework. He is very kin	d.
a) at	b) with	c) from	d) of
19 Have you ever seen a	a building fire	? I think it is very sca	iry.
a) in	b) at	c) with	d) on
Choose TWO correct a	nswers out of the FIV	E options given:	
the verb "realise" is s			
a) cover	far money Martin 1, 2 is n	b) understand	
c) misunderstand		d) remain	
e) grasp			
The government sho	ould find a solution to	the serious proble	m of unemployment.
	word "serious" is		
a) hazardous		b) safe	
c) dangerous		d) secure	
e) empty			
She answered almost	t immediately. The syn	onym of the word "ir	mmediately" is
a) at once		b) later	
c) unseriously		d) fairly	
e) instantly			
The police gave the	order to evacuate the	area. The synonym o	of the word "evacuate"
is	9 20		
a) remain		b) uncover	
c) understand		d) abandon	
a) ampty			
The present was beau	utifully wrapped in go	ld paper. The synony	ym of the word
"wrapped" is			
a) remained	nate:	b) covered	
		d) confused	
c) tidied			
e) folded			





Expressing Necessity:

من الممكن التعبير عن الإلزام في الأزمنة المختلفة كما يلي:

- have to / has to / need (s) to + inf. = It is necessary for ... to ... ومن المضارع ...
 - You have to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.
 - = It is necessary for you to wear a helmet.
- had to + inf. = It was necessary for ... to ... في زمن الماضي
 - They had to leave early in order not to miss the train.
 - = It was necessary for them to leave early.
- will have to + inf. = It will be necessary for ... to ... في زمن المستقبل
 - You will have to show your passport to the officer at the airport.
 - = It will be necessary for you to show your passport.

Expressing Lack of Necessity:

من الممكن التعبير عن عدم الإلزام في الأزمنة المختلفة كما يلي:

- needn't / don't doesn't have to / don't doesn't need to + inf. في زمن المضارع
 - She isn't late for school so she doesn't have to / needn't hurry.
- في زمن الماضي (لم يكن مضطر ًا وبالفعل لم يقم بالفعل) didn't have to + inf.
 - I didn't have to buy more bread. We already have a lot. (I didn't buy bread.)
- في زمن الماضي (لم يكن مضطرًا للقيام بالفعل ولكنه قام به) needn't have + P.P. (ه
 - You needn't have come so early. Why did you do that?
- won't have to / won't need to + inf. في زمن المستقبل
 - I won't need to travel by train. My friend will take me in his car.
- don't/ doesn't have to / needn't + inf.
 - = It is not necessary for ... to + inf.
- didn't have to + inf. / needn't have + P.P.
 - = It was unnecessary for ... to + inf.
- won't have to + inf.
 - = It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 You have got plenty of time. Youhurry.
 - a) should

b) must

c) needn't

- d) doesn't have to
- 2 You study history at school this year. It is a basic subject.
 - a) should

b) have to

c) mustn't

- d) need
- - a) didn't have to hurry

b) needn't hurry

c) should have hurried

- d) needn't have hurried
- We have already cleaned the house. Youclean it again.
 - a) need to

b) don't need to

c) mustn't

- d) needed
- Youwork a bit harder or you will fail in the exams.
 - a) 'd better

b) shouldn't

c) ought

d) need





Language Exercises

1 Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1 Thoro is anough	petrol in your car, you	go to the pe	etrol station.
a) must	b) have to	c) mustn't	d) don't have to
Vour flight is 5 h	b) have to ours from now, you	prepare your lu	ggage now. We're st
	ours nom now, , -		
early.	b) have to	c) needn't	d) shouldn't
a) must	uted at my little son. H	e will never forgive y	ou.
3) can't have	b) should have	c) may have	d) shouldn't have
a) can't have	h your car, it is still clea	in.	Tring gla
al mustn't	h) needn't	c) snoulding	d) doesn't have to
# I'm corry I could	n't come yesterday. I	travel as my br	other was ill.
a) have to		c) need to	d) had to
& You mor	e bread. We already ha		
a) can't buy	e bread, we all easy the	b) must buy	
d) needn't have l	oought	d) had to buy	
	ll of mistakes. You		
a) needn't have o		b) should have c	hecked
c) must have che			
	esterday, so I t		
	b) mustn't		
	take this medicine		7
a) has to			d) should
1 to buy n	ny daughter a present a		
a) ought to reme		b) should remen	
c) should have re	membered	d) shouldn't have	
1 We our ur	mbrellas to England. It	didn't rain at all	remembered
a) needn't have ta	ken	b) didn't have to	tako
c) must take		d) had to take	take
12 It for all of ou	ur students to come to	school last week to	charo in the fun day.
a) Hau to	D) is necessary	C) Was nococcan	d) is a must
13 I can do my work o	on my own. You	to help me	u) is a must
a) needn't	b) mustn't	c) should-4	d) don't need
4 I really out	yesterday. It was raini	ng heavily and I are	d) don't need
and thave to g	U	b) needs/+ base	wet.
c) can't have gone		b) needn't have g	one
		d) shouldn't go	

	My daughter got a of her.	very low mark in the ex	kam. She me	ore and it was wrong
	a) should have stud			
			b) must have stud	died
6	We spent the week	tudied	d) needn't study	hapan, assistan
	a) must have spent	end in the farm, but w	eit in Alexa	andria.
	c) can't have spent		b) couldn't have s	
1	Tomorrow, I	travel to Alex to mee	d) could have spe	ent
	a) will need	b) will have to		Section of the sectio
18		dy hard to pass her ex	c) had to	d) could have
0.19	a) have	b) must		Notes LI
15		new suit for the weddir	c) needs	a) should
	a) don't have to	b) needn't to		
20		to do my best to pass	c) mustn't	d) aren't allowed
	a) will be	b) is	c) was	d) wacn't
2		lay tomorrow, so I	to school	d) wasn't
Ī	a) needn't have gor	ne	h) won't have to	10 100 100 11
	c) mustn't have gor	ne distribution of the second	d) must have gon	0
22		. be set for finishing ou		
	a) mustn't	b) can't		
23	The state of the s	food. It is poisonous a		
	a) shouldn't		and the Control of th	
24		places and public trans	A STATE OF THE RESERVE AND ASSESSMENT OF THE RESERVE	E HUMBELLER
10	<u> </u>	b) banned		d) advisable
25		ool, so Ihurry.	4.50	
		b) has to		
26		wear a uniform in prir		
	a) need	b) mustn't	c) have to	d) shouldn't
27	You swim in	this area because the	re are sharks.	
	a) must	b) needn't	c) can	d) mustn't
28	Lthink the accident	is your own mistake. Y	ou driven s	o fast.
	a) should have	b) shouldn't have	c) can't have	d) must
99	It was wrong of VOU	to sleep late. You	early.	
	a) shouldn't sleep		b) can't have slep	t
	c) shouldn't have sle	ept	d) ought to have	
30	I think you	lo some sports to be h	ealthy. I only advis	e you.
-	a) ought	b) can't	c) might	d) had better



2 Fill in the space:

	m me space.
	Water is life. We all(a) waste water. We(b)
	It is obvious that stress is a serious problem. The people
	Having a large family can be a form of insurance. Even when they are young children can work
t	Our life today is quite different from life fifty years ago. Life in the past
pa en sp	port is an essential part of our life. It

Life Skills

Asking for advice طلب النصيحة	Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة
 What should/ must I do to? Can you give me advice about? How do you advise me? What do you suggest? 	- Ladvise you to (not to) Linf

Responding to advice

قبول النصيحة Agree - Accept	رفض النصيحة Refuse	
 Yes, I know, I should (not) You are right. Thanks for your advice. I will do that. 	I don't think so. I will see. I'm afraid, I can't do that.	



What to do if there is a fire:

- There are some tips you will need during a house fire.
 - 1. Get the fire extinguisher طفاية الحريق.
 - 2. Raise an alarm to inform others in the house.
 - 3. Call the fire department.
 - 4. Leave valuables behind and never delay to find them.
 - 5. Always crawl and keep yourself close to the ground.
 - 6. Cover your nose with a damp towel فوطة مبللة.
 - 7. Close the doors behind you once you leave the house.
 - 8. Once you leave the burning house, stay out and don't return again.

UNIT 7

Model Essay

An essay about what to do in a fire

Fires are very dangerous and scary. They cause a lot of damage and destructions as well as injuries and deaths. Always remember to stay calm to be able to call for help. Y_{OU} have to know how to stay safe if a fire breaks out in your house. And to prevent a house fire from causing severe damages, you need some tips which can help you stay safe.

So, here are some tips that you will need if there is a fire in your house; firstly, you should go for your fire extinguisher if you hear the sound of the fire alarm and don't ignore it. Secondly, you should do anything to inform others in the house that there is a fire; by screaming or using the alarm. Thirdly, you must then pick your phone and call the fire department to come immediately. Fourthly, you mustn't wait to find the valuable things; you must escape at once. Above all, you should cover your nose with a shirt or a damp towel to prevent smoke from entering your lungs.

Once you get out of the house, you should close the doors to prevent fire from spreading outside the house. Also, never return to your house even if you left your animals or property behind.



Giving advice:

- Speaking
- Giving advice about how to be healthy:
- Imagine that you and your friend are discussing how to be healthy.
- You can visit the website https://www.wikihow.life/Become-Healthy to get more advice about this subject.
- Prepare answers for the following questions:
- 1. Do you already follow any of the rules of health?
- 2. Which rule do you want to start doing? Why?
- 3. What are the other rules that you can suggest?

Practice

Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Barkat and Rafiq about the rules of health.

Barkat: Do you follow the rules of health?

Rafiq: Yes, of course.

Barkat:?

Rafiq: It is very important to our health.

Barkat: Can you give me some advice about the rules of health?

Rafig:

Barkat: Could you please tell me the benefits of following the rules of health?

Rafiq:

Barkat: Thanks a lot, Rafiq. I have learnt a lot about the rules of health.



UNIT 7

General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b,	coru:	THE REAL PROPERTY.
	would not place too m	ucn III tilis bad	man,
a) trust	b) doubt	c) loigiveriess	d) prediction
Ma should nut	cold water on burns		
a) surprisingly	b) differently	c) immediately	d) difficultly
3 The teacher ask	ed the students to	the poem.	- 1
a) separate	b) interpret	c) remove	d) breathe
4 The earthquake	caused to pro	operty estimated at 1,0	00,000 pounds.
a) danger	b) adventure	c) break	d) damage
6 After the accide	ent, he suffered	and bruises کدمات.	The state of the s
		c) arguments	d) pandemics
	calm during the fund		
	b) stay		d) do
The state of the s	angry with me. I		
		c) have	d) keep
I can't decide	who to invite to	my wedding party nex	t week.
a) at	b) on	c) out	d) in
It is to e	at healthy food to kee	p fit.	
a) necessity	b) necessary	c) must	d) forbidden
10 You sho	w your passport when	you leave or reach any	country.
a) have to	b) should	c) mustn't	d) must
1 You parl	k your car here. There i	s a "No parking" sign.	
a) have to	b) mustn't	c) needn't	d) didn't have to
Yesterday, I	to school as it was	a national holiday. I res	sted at home.
a) nad to go		b) needn't have g	
c) didn't have to	go	d) went	
13 You drive	e over 100 km an houi	r on this road. It is agair	nst the law.
a) mignt	b) shouldn't	mustn't	d) must
hey didn't win t	he match. They	well and hard to win	
a) must have tra	ined	b) needn't have tr	
c) should train		d) should have two	:mad
was very nervoi	us before the interviev	v, though I Eve	ervone was so
and I go	t the Job.	J	.,,
a) needn't worry		b) didn't have to w	vorry
c) can't have wor	ried	d) needn't have we	

- Yougo into this building. It is impossible as it is a military building.

 a) needn't

 b) can't
 - c) should d) must

Fill in the space:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometres from earth? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return? That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars One mission in 2031.

Surprisingly, 200,000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they know that they will never see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or the thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or disease. They also knew that their new lives would be difficult, and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars. The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space.

A special <u>settlement</u> will be built on Mars where food will be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life: there will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, for some fearless pioneers, <u>it</u> is a challenge they cannot refuse.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why did the people decide to travel to Mars?
 - a) They want to see if they can survive there.
 - b) They want to see the dust storms.
 - c) Scientists made them go there.
 - d) They don't like earth.

- What is the main idea of the text?
 - a) One day, we will all live on Mars.
 - c) The people who go to Mars will be famous.
- b) Life on Mars will be very difficult d) Life on Mars will never be possible

b) A place where a group of people live

- What does the word "settlement" mean?
 - a) A farm.
 - c) A factory.
- What does the underlined "it" refer to?
 - a) An offer to go to Mars.
 - c) Time spent with three other people.
- b) A six-month journey into space.
- d) An offer to send in an application,
- - a) easy
- b) smooth
- c) marvelous

d) A rocket.

d) tough

B) Answer the following questions:

- 6 How would you feel if someone told you that you could never return to earth?
- Why do you think that many people will live on Mars in the future?
- Find a word that is similar to the word: "certain"

4) A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. Electricity has become a main part of our life. People can't do without it. We depend on electricity in almost all aspects of life.
- 2. It is known that energy and water are the basis and the arteries of life. All living things and machines can't live or work without them.
- 3. We must bear in mind that increasing production is the only way of stability and safety. With it, we can increase our income and overcome the burdens of life.

B) Translate into English:

١- من الضروري لأي إنسان أن يحافظ على نظافة البيئة المحيطة به، وكذلك نظافته الشخصية؛ حتى لا يتعرض للكثير من الأمراض المعدية.

٢- تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا باررًا وهامـًا في حياتنا، فنحن لا نستطيع أن نتخيل الحياة بدون وسائل الاتصالات ووسائل النقل الحديثة.

٢- مما لا شـك فيه أن للتلوث آثارًا خطيرة على البيئة سـواء كان ذلك للإنسـان أو الحيوان أو النبات، ومن هنا يجب علينا - أفرادًا وحكومات - أن نعمل بجد لكي نقلل من نسبة التلوث.

Enrich your Vocabulary

aspects	مظاهر/مجالات	outstanding	بارز
burdens	مصاعب	imitate	يقلد
upset	يزعج	arteries	شرايير
expose to	يتعرض لـ	ية responsibility	مسئوا

- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:
 - 1. The importance of cleanliness.
 - How to avoid illnesses and infectious diseases.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(1) Don'ta word of this to anyone. It's	a secret.
	a) hear	b) listen
	c) eat	d) breathe
2	We're hoping toup the important	negotiations this week.
	a) tie	b) roll
	c) wrap	d) soil
3	I couldn't my laughter after hearing	g that joke.
	a) contain	b) include
	c) extend	d) spread
4	The hills were covered with aof sr	now during the winter.
	a) blanket	b) cloth
	c) germ	d) pile
5	These lines of the poem are somewhat hard	d to I need to ask my teacher
	a) interact	b) interpret
	c) investigate	d) report
6	The patient isto the new medication	on. Doctors have said this.
	a) feeling	b) responding
	c) answering	d) realising
7	They made a plan tothe boss beca	ause they don't like his way.
	a) relieve	b) elect
	c) reward	d) remove
3	They are ways to increase the use of	of solar power.
	a) searching	b) researching
	c) recognising	d) hindering
	The companya profit in the first qu	uarter after the new development.
	a) returned	b) reflected
	c) realised	d) restored
0	Many of the pages in this book had been	by the child's dirty fingers.
	a) printed	b) soiled
	c) brushed	d) drawn

11 If youin my place,	would you leave of stay till the end:	
a) was	b) were	
c) are	d) had been	
12 Don't forget the let	ter to your boss today.	
a) sending	b) to sending	. March
c) send	d) to send	
The state of the s	when youworking and before I	eaving it.
a) finished	b) have finished	
c) had finished	d) finishes	
4he to travel abroad,	, he'd do post graduate studies.	
a) If	b) Unless	
c) Were	d) Was	
6 Are you all going to clean th	e school by?	
a) yourself	b) yourselves	
c) herself	d) themselves	
6 We the car for 6 mo	nths before it was stolen.	
a) had been owning	b) has owned	
c) had owned	d) will own	
7 It is a bad thing that dust	comes back again immediately afte	er cleaning.
a) quick	b) quicker	
c) slowly	d) quickly	
🔞 Hala tennis all afterr	noon and needs a shower now.	
a) has been played	b) has been playing	
c) is playing	d) had played	
19 I spent a lot of time	in bed because of my illness.	
a) sleep	b) is sleeping	
c) slept	d) asleep	
🔯 I don't enjoy watching any sp	ortssquash.	
a) expect for	b) side from	
c) a part from	d) side	

Based on Unit 7



Test 1

	hoose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c o	or d:			
1	I have a/an	have a/an to certain foods, so I can't eat any of them.				
	a) emergency	b) sense	c) allergy	d) experience		
2	During the operati	on, hisstopp	ed three times before	his death.		
	a) blood	b) breathing	c) thinking	d) moving		
3	Follow your doctor	r's important	, and you will stay awa	y from infections.		
	a) role	b) advice	c) rule	d) operation		
4	Mountain climbers	need special	in order to complete	their mission properly.		
	a) equalities	b) quantities	c) equipment	d) apparatus		
5	We can't make a ca	ake without sugar. It i	s an important			
	a) compound	b) ingredient	c) factor	d) tool		
6	Physical exercise c	an protect you	heart disease.			
	a) against	b) with	c) by	d) for		
7	I phone m	y father more often a	is he is very ill and it is	very important for him.		
	a) can	b) need	c) must	d) might		
8	He didn't pass his exams. Hehard for them.					
	a) should study		b) must study			
		died				
9			u and the baby is aslee			
			c) must			
10			ion. It would be a goo			
		b) mustn't		d) should be		
11		227 250 250		me time of the meeting.		
	a) must have atter		b) might have attended			
	c) can't have atten		d) shouldn't have at	tended		
12		licence to drive a ca				
	a) should	b) mustn't	PARAMETER PROVINCE CONTRACTOR STORE	d) have to		
			FIVE options given:			
13	A burglar could ea	sily climb in through	that window. The synd	onym of the word "easily"		
		randana a				
	a) smoothly		b) simply			
	c) hard		d) difficultly			

e) safely

M She found the keys	at the bottom of her h	andbag. The antonym	of the word "botton
is			

a) sanitation

b) hazard

c) base

d) peak

e) top

15 Fill in the space:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As I put my key into the keyhole, the door slid open, to my amazement, I saw that the kitchen light was on. I had left my house at about ten that morning and I could not explain why I might have left it on. It immediately dawned on me that someone had broken into the house and the first thing I thought of doing was to call on my neighbour Mr. Hassan.

As soon as we got into the hall, we found that everything was in a terrible mess. The armchairs were all overturned, two small tables lay turned over on the floor and the radio had been, smashed. There could be no doubt that the burglar had left nothing untouched. Before going on to inspect the rest of the house, I called the police.

Then we went into my bedroom. All my clothes were thrown all over the bed and the floor. The bed cover had been removed and the mattress had been emptied of its feathers. The police officers arrived a few minutes later and made a thorough search and declared that the burglar must have been quite experienced for he had even ransacked the kitchen cupboards. I told the officers it would take me at least two day's hard work to sort out all those things and find out whether anything had been stolen. Fortunately, I never used to leave money in the house and the only thing that they could have taken would be my watch which I had left in the bathroom. We all went to the bathroom only to find the watch there. Mr Hassan remarked that burglars never imagined they could possibly find anything valuable in a bathroom.

A) Choose the	correct	answer	from a,	b, c or d:
---------------	---------	--------	---------	------------

- - a) bolted

b) open

c) locked

- d) unfastened
- - a) foolish

b) clever

c) inexperienced

- d) rash
- 18 The underlined word "we" refers to
 - a) the police officers
 - b) Mr Hassan and the writer
 - c) Mr Hassan and the police officer
 - d) Mr Hassan, the writer and the police officers
- 19 Burglars never imagined they could findthings in a bathroom.
 - a) cheap

b) inexpensive

c) workless

- d) precious
- - a) guessed

b) announced

c) refused

d) denied

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21 What do you think the best places to keep our valuable belongings?
- 22 What did the burglar do inside the house?
- 23 Give a suitable title to the passage.

24 Translate into English:

- إن الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة أصبح ضرورة. ولذلك يجب على كل من الأفراد والحكومات أن يتعاونوا لخلق بيئة صحية ونظيفة خالية من الأويئة والأمراض.

25 Translate into Arabic:

Vitamins are very necessary for good health. It is known that their absence may cause serious diseases. Foods that contain vitamins are called protective foods.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: Keeping the water of the Nile clean.





Unit 🔞

Robots

(Objectives

Reading : Online posts about the advantages of new technology

Writing : An essay about the advantages and disadvantages of having technology

in the house

Listening : Discussion on how technology can improve learning

Speaking : Discussing consequences

Language : Zero, first and second conditionals

Critical thinking : Is technology always good?

Respect for diversity: People have different views related to technology https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg



The following are some of the most important inventions of modern history, arrange them according to what you think is the most important to the less important.

	Invention	Year	Inventor	Notes
	Printing Press	1450	Johannes Gutenberg	allowed literacy to greatly expand
***************************************	Electric Light	1879	Thomas Edison	powered countless social changes
	Automobile	1885	Karl Benz	increased personal mobility and freedom
	Telephone	1876	Alexander Graham Bell	spreadcommunication across wide areas
	Radio and Television	1895 & 1926	Guglielmo Marconi & John Baird	made the world smaller
	Vaccination	1796	Edward Jenner	protected people from disease
Secular Control	Computer	1939	John Atanasoff, et al.	transformed business world; predecessor to the Internet
	Airplane	1903	Orville and Wilbur Wright	allowed people and products to quickly move
	Gas powered tractor	1892	John Froelich	started agricultural mechanization
14-14	Anesthesia	1844	Horace Wells	provided a great leap forward for medicine



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

benefit (v) – ed (n)	يستفيد/فائدة
click (n)	نقرة / ضغطة (على الماوس)
familiar (adj)	مألوف
find out (v)	يكتشف
get around (v)	يتجول/ينتقل من مكان لمكان
go out (v)	يخرج
GPS (Global Positioning System)	نظام تحديد المواقع (في السيارة)
. comming system,	رـــــ رــــ

hybrid vehicle (n)	مركبة تعمل بمصدرين للوقود
internet (n)	الإنترنت
invention (n)	اختراع المحادم
navigate (v) – d	يوجه/يقود
robot (n)	إنسان آلى
vehicle (n)	مركبة

Vocabulary on Reading

abroad (adv)	بالخارج
air-conditioning (n)	نظام تكييف الهواء
control (v) – led	. يتحكم
distance (n)	مسافة
easily (adv)	بسهولة
electricity (n)	كهرباء
engine (n)	محرك

even if	حتی لو
exactly (adv)	بالضبط
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظا
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ
global (adj)	عالمي
invention (n)	اختراع
machine (n)	ماكينة/آلة



petrol (n)	بنزين
position (n)	موقع أو مكانة
positioning (n)	ملاحة (تحديد موقع)
project (n)	مشروع
really (adv)	حقًا ج- معد محس

relax (v) – ed	يستريح/يسترخي
system (n)	نظام
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
useful (<mark>adj</mark>)	مفید مفید مفید مهاری برای

Vocabulary on Listening

cause (n) (v) – d	ببنه/بسب
communication (n)	اتصال
concentrate (v) – d	يركز المستح
consequences (n)	نتائج
discuss (v) – ed	يناقش
feel like (v)	يشعر وكانه

lead (n) (v)	قيادة/يدير
luxurious (adj)	فُخم /فاخِر
luxury (n)	رفاهية/ترف
reason (n)	i.i.
result (n)	نتيجة
statement (n)	بیان

Workbook Vocabulary

annoying (adj)	مزعج
charge (v) – d	يشحن
culture (n)	ثقافة
direction (n)	اتجاه
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف
electric (adj)	کمربی
fail (v) – ed	يفشل
fridge (n)	ثلاجة

lose (v)	يخسر
memory (n)	ذاكرة
shopping list (n)	قائمة التسوق
stressful (adj)	مبخفد
terrible (adj)	فظیع/رهیب
waste (n) (v) – d	إسراف/ينضنيع
wheel (n)	عجلة (سيارة مثلا)

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a click of a button	ضغطة زر
appear on phone	يظهر على التليفون
buy online with	يشترى على الإنترنت بـ
cycle around town	يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة
do exercise	يۇدى تدريبا
do something faster	يفعل شيئًا أسرع
do things	يقوم بعمل أشياء
drive the engine	يشغل المحرك
for this reason	لأجل هذا السبب
from one place to an	من مكان لآخر other
get answers to	يحصل على إجابات لـ
get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق
agree with	يتفق مع
communicate with	يتواصل مع
connect to	يتصل بــ
concentrate on	يركز في
familiar with	مألوف لدى
help with	مساعدة في

get nervous	يتوتر
give directions	يعطى اتجاهات
give an opinion	يعطى رأيكا
go abroad	يسافر للخارج
go down	يقل
go long distances	يذهب مسافات بعيدة
go online	يتصل بالإنترنت
have fun	يحصل على المتعة
most of the time	معظم الوقت
on computer	على الحاسب الآلى
putting parts together	تجميع أجزاء معنا
interested in	مهتم ب
lead to	يۇدى إلى
ride on	یرکب علی
send to	يرسل إلى
travel on	يسافر على
useful to	مفید ا

Derivatives

Verb	Noun		Adjecti	ve
annoy يضايق	annoyance	ضيق	annoyed annoying	متضايق مزعج
يستفيد benefit	benefit beneficiary	فائدة منتفع	beneficial	مفيد
يتصل communicate	communication	اتصال	communicative	اتصالى
یرکز concentrate	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مئركز
یستنبت/یزرع (خلایا أو بکتریا) culture	culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافی مثقف
يُبعد (بشكل معنوى) distance	distance	مسافة	distant	بعيد
يجعل الأمر مألوفيًا familiarise	familiarity	معرفة – دراية	familiar	مألوف
globalise يعولم	globe globalisation	الكرة الأرضية العولمة	global	عالمي
يخترع	invention inventor	اختراع مخترع	inventive	ابتكارى/مبدع
	luxury	رفاهية/ترف	luxurious	فخم/فاخر
يوجه/يقود navigate	navigation navigator (ربان/ملاح/بحار)	الملاحه/التنقل ضابط الملاحة	navigational	ملاحى/انتقالى
relax	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed relaxing	مسترخ مريح



Pre-reading question:

- What things would it be difficult to live without?

What is the best invention(1) that we have today and why is it so great? Please leave your comments(2) below.

Baher 12 minutes ago

The internet is the best invention that we have today. You can find information about anything you're interested in (3). It's really useful if you need to find out something for a school project(4), for example. I'd never be able to do my homework without it! The internet also makes life easier in your free time. You can buy anything you want online with a click(5) of a button. You can also communicate with your friends easily, even if they live abroad.

Khadeeja 23 minutes ago

In my opinion, GPS (Global Positioning System) is the best invention. GPS helps you to navigate (6) your journey from one place to another. You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't familiar with(7). In the past, people needed maps to get around (6), but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to get somewhere, the technology will tell you exactly where to go.

اختراع (1)

تعليقات (2)

ممتم بـ (3)

مشروع (4)

يقود/يوجه (6)

مألوف لدى (7)

يتجول (8)

مركبات (9)

عسن الحظ*ر* (10)

مركبات هجينة (11)

مسافات (13)

Most cars, buses and other vehicles on need petrol, but petrol is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol? Fortunately (10), we now have hybrid vehicles (11). Hybrid vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine. For this reason, the vehicle uses a lot less (12) petrol. There are also cars that are only electric. At the moment, they cannot go long distances (13), although they are useful to travel short distances, like to school or to the shops.

Post-reading question:

-What do you think the most useful invention is if you need help with your schoolwork?



Pre-listening question:

- What are the consequences of inventing the internet? Mention two.

Ahmed

: Well, the reason that we have the internet is so that people in different(1) countries can talk to each other very easily and get answers to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and



مختلف (1)

اتصال (2)

سببت (3)

إجازات ترفيهية (4)

يركز (5)

easy communication(2), it can lead to problems if people spend too much time talking online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused(3) some.

Mustafa: The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on luxury holidays (4) and you think 'Why isn't my life like that?'This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all concentrate(5) on our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.

Post-listening question:

- What are the problems people have when they spend too much time watching television?

Check Point 1

	And the second s			1.20	_	-	
Consultation of the last of th	each the correct answer fro					•	•
	t and and a tre		ı. D.			v.	
	IL - COMMON ANSWELLIN	V	,,	_	7 4 4		
	- acatho correct dillova	700					

- By using GPS, the car can find the place you want to get to and then _______your journey to it.

 a) control

 b) take

 c) navigate

 d) connect
- a) control
 b) take
 This man's face looks, but I can't remember who he is.
- a) familiar b) useful c) helpful d) unfamiliar
- 3 The internet is the most useful if you need help with your schoolwork.
 a) navigation b) invention c) invitation d) exploration
- a) navigation b) invention c) invitation

 What is the of having such an expensive car?
 - a) harm b) benefit c) consequence d) reason
- (5) What type ofis it? It's an SUV car.
 - a) vehicle b) instrument c) link d) lorry

Focus on Vocabulary

click ضغطة (على الماوس)	the action of pressing a button on a computer mouse
familiar مالوف	well-known to you and easy to recognise
find out یکتشف	▶ learn something that you didn't know before
get around يتجول/ينتقل من مكان لمكان	▶ travel from place to place
go out يخرج	▶ leave your home to do something fun with other people
GPS (Global Positioning System) جهاز الملاحة (في السيارة)	the most useful invention if you don't know how to find a place

invention	a useful machine, tool, instrument, etc. that
lérida marigata	has been invented
navigateيقود	find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another
robot إنسان آلى	Na maghing at the state of the
the internet الإنترنت	the most useful invention if you need help with your schoolwork
vehicle مرکبة	▶ a machine with an engine that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck
hybrid vehicle مرکبة هجینة	a vehicle that has both a petrol or diesel engine and an electric motor

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word M	eaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
annoying	مزعج	disturbing/troublesome	pleasant سار
easily	بسهولة	simply/ smoothly	difficultly/ hard بصعوبة
entertainment	تسلية ا	amusement/enjoyment	boredom/ dissatisfaction مىں
exactly	بالضبط	absolutely	nearly تقریب
fail	يفشل	break down/ decline	succeed/ pass ينجح
familiar	مألوف	common/ usual	uncommon/ unfamiliar غیر شائع/غیر مألوف
stressful	مجھد	exhausting	relaxing
terrible .	فظيع/رهيب	horrible	wonderful رائع
useful	مفيد	beneficial	harmful مؤذر

Notes on Vocabulary



(position

location

position

ومنع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس)/مكانة/وظيفة/مركز في الملعب

- First, get yourself into a comfortable position.
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.

location

موقع/مكان (للتصوير)

- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices.
- Most of the movie was shot on a location in Africa.

air-conditioning

air-conditioner

air-conditioned

air-conditioning (n)

نظام تكييف الهواء

We all think that air-conditioning makes life easier.

air-conditioner (n)

جماز تكييف الهواء

- ▶ The seller told me that I should clean the filters of the air-conditioner regularly.
- air-conditioned (adj)

مكيف الهواء

▶ I prefer going to this restaurant as it is fully air-conditioned.

(journey

trip

voyage

flight

journey

رطة/سفر: السفر من مكان إلى آخر (وخاصة السفر الطويل)

It was a long and difficult journey across the mountains.

trip

رطة قصيرة لغرض معين

- My father came back from a business trip to China.
- ▶ He's just returned from a fishing trip to Aswan.

voyage

لطة بحرية

The ship *Titanic* sank on its first voyage.

flight

اطة جوية

▶ What was the direction of the flight when the plane crashed?

Robots

8

electrical electric electricity electrician electronic

electric (adj)

كهربائي: أي يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)

- I have a modern electric washing machine.
- ▶ Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries.

electrical (adj)

كهربائي: أي يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)

- The fire started with an electrical fault.
- My father works as an electrical engineer.

electricity (n)

الكهرباء

▶ We can't do without electricity.

electrician (n)

عامل فنى كهرباء

A company needs four electricians.

electronic (adj)

The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.

border abroad aboard broad board

abroad

الخارج (خارج حدود بلد ما)

He worked abroad for five years.

broad

فسيح/عريض

The room is broad.

board

لوحة (إعلانات)/سبورة

The exam results went up on the board.

aboard

على متن السفينة/ الطائرة/ القطار

▶ The plane had an accident, but luckily all the passengers aboard were safe.

border

حد بین دولتین

▶There is a national park on the border between Kenya and Tanzania.

memory

memorial

الذاكرة

memory

My mobile has a 1GB card memory.

ذكري

memory

We have good and bad memories.

تُصُب تذكاري

The wall was built as a memorial to soldiers who died in the Second World War.



(familiar (with / to)

familiar with

Are you familiar with this type of computer?

familiar to

يعروف لدى

This street was familiar to me when I was young.

(able to	capable	ability	enable
(be) able to + (inf.)			HI Co.

Birds are able to fly using their wings.

(be) capable of + (v-ing)

قادر على

▶ Birds are capable of flying using their wings.

(have) the ability to + (inf.)

لديه القدرة على

▶ Birds have the ability to fly using their wings.

..... من من من (someone / something) + enable + (someone / something) + to + (inf.)

▶ Wings enable birds to fly.

Language Notes

- 1. What would you do if you couldn't use the internet ever again?
 - تستخدم صيغة ever again للنفي المطلق بمعنى (لم/لن ... مرة أخرى على الإطلاق).
- 2. The internet also makes life easier in your free time.
 - كلمة internet دائما ما تسبق بكلمة the لأن الإنترنت اختراع ودائمًا ما تسبق الاختراعات بـ the.
- 3. You can buy anything you want online with a click of a button.
 - She had heard about an online course.
- تستخدم كلمة online كحال وصفة بنفس الصيغة.
- 4. It can lead to a lot of stress and it can stop people enjoying their free time.
 - It can lead to wasting our time.
- ُ لاحظ أن lead to من الممكن أن يأتي بعدها اسم أو (٧-ing).
- 5. The technology will tell you exactly where to go.
 - ً فَى الكلام غير المباشر من الممكن حذف الفاعل بعد أداة الاستفهام.
- 6. What is the benefit of having such an expensive car?
 - ُ تُستخدم such بمعنى مثل هذا قبل (صفة + موصوف)

Check Point 2

c) enable

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 My uncle, who's a businessman, makes about 30 business a year. a) trips b) journeys c) picnics d) voyages We can warm up the room quite quickly with thisfire. a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician 3 Scientists have to find cleaner ways of generating a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electronic a) abroad b) broad c) aboard d) board Because Ali has lived in many European countries, he'sspeaking different languages. b) capable of a) able to



d) ability

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct a	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1 If you want to watc	h the new film, just	on this link.	Manual of the second			
a) tick	b) visit	c) stick	d) click			
2 This smell is very	to everyone wh	o lives near a bakery.	They are used to it.			
a) familiar	b) useful	c) famous	d) stressful			
My wife said that th	e dishwasher is the mo	ost wonderful	as it helps her a lot			
a) navigation	b) invention	c) discovery	d) design			
A lot of birds fly at r	light andby ti	ne stars.				
a) control	b) notice	c) navigate	d) lead			
6 My father always u	ses to show t	the exact position of	a person or thing by			
using signals from s	atellites.		SALL CLED BOARD SALE			
a) CBC	b) GPR	c) GRC	d) GPS			
6 My father sold our o	ar, so we had to use pu	ublic transport to				
a) get around	b) get across	c) get better	d) get over			
7 The picks u	ip the bomb, carries it a	away from buildings, a	and blows it up.			
a) tool	b) robot	c) air-conditioning	d) equipment			
B The woman gave the	e police a full description	on of the thief and his	This helped			
arrest him			Dimogla (a			
a) face	b) vehicle	c) location	d) position			
If you want to know	more information abo	out the museum, you	can find information			
on the						
a) navigator	b) position	c) internet	d) location			
o If you don't keep the	windows closed, the	system can't	work properly.			
a) air-conditioned	b) air-conditioning	c) air-conditioner	d) air-condition			
They Mona	as the new director be	cause she is the suitak	ole person for the Job.			
a) navigated	b) realised	c) discovered	d) chose			
The magazine gives	lots of advice	on how to save mone	ey. It is fantastic.			
a) useful	b) horrible	c) conflicting	d) terrible			
lt was a successful ex	cheriment. It led us to	the right				
a) offocts	b) requirements	c) consequences	d) qualities			
The mostha	abit of my friend is spe	aking while eating. I	Lairt Starra			
a) usual	b) wonderful	c) annoying	d) useful			
My father's disease w	as a experier	nce for the whole fam	ily.			
a) stressed	h) ctroccful	c) personal	d) relaxing			
My father used to	a hicycle to wor	k every day.				
a) control	h) navigate	c) drive	d) ride			
My mobile phone is i	not working I don't th	ink the battery is				
		c) choosing	d) cycling			
a) charging	b) changing	Choosing				

			R	obots
18 A car is a	vehicle with an e	ngine that uses be	oth petrol and e	lectricity.
a) plant	D) nyprid	c) mixad	d\ h	vphened
W Y lot of beoble pe	elleve that crime is	s a direct	of noverty	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
a) consequence	(b) reason	c) purpo	se d) id	dea
The holiday chan	ged my mood. I hi	ave felt a	new man since	I came back.
a) look	b) same	c) like	d) s	ound
21 My uncle is very r	ich, so he stayed i	n a five-star	hotel in Lond	don.
a) luxurious	b) easy	c) norma	d) o	ordinary
(Expressions, idior	ns, prepositions, d	erivatives, synony	ms and antonym	s Exercises
22 A: Please, can you	me dire	ctions to the station	on? B: I don't kn	ow the way to it.
a) give	b) make	c) say	d) d	lo
a) giveMy best friend fel	t I was right, he ac	greed me	POPULATOR U	
a) to	b) for	c) at	usal indus : d) v	vith
24 In the king's proc	ession (مسيرة), the	knight rode	horses aroun	d the capital.
a) in	b) on	c) with	d) fo	or
25 Akram always	nervous wh	enever he has a fi	nal exam at scho	ool.
a) makes	b) has	c) gets	d) is	
26 Our teacher expla	ained the events t	hat ledth	e start of the Fir	St World Wal.
a) for		c) at		o O
27 Be quiet, please. l	_et me concentrat	e my nor	nework. d) o	n s
a) with	b) by	c) at	u) u to How about	ioining us?
a) With 28 We are going	tor a meal ar	nd then on to a mic	d) o	n
a) in 29 My neighbour wa	b) to	c) out	that his son faile	ed the exam.
🤒 My neighbour wa	is shocked when i	c) on	d) 0	out
a) in	b) at		Control of the contro	
Choose TWO correct The television wa	ct answers out or	of ontertainment	The synonym of	the word
30 The television wa	s his only source of	of efficitaliment.		
"entertainment"	IS	alamusement	d) discovery	e) enjoyment
"entertainment" a) navigation	b) dissatisfaction	The antonym of th	ne word "easily"	is
a) navigation 31 I can easily finish	my work tonight.	c) difficultly	d) simply	e) hard
a) absolutely32 Just as I stepped i	b) inexactly	c) afficulty	as so annoving.	The synonym of
32 Just as I stepped i	nto the snower th	e phone rang. it w	as so armoying.	attible
the word "annoyi	ng" is	. Lucant	d) troublesome	e) horrible
the word " annoyi a) relaxing	b) disturbing	c) pleasant	stonym of the W	ord "failed" is
33 He failed in his att	tempt to win the g	Join Medan Trie an	attended .	e) succeeded
a) passed	tempt to win the g	c) declined	m of the word "fi	miliar" is
34 The voice on the R	phone sounded fai	miliar. The antony	d) horrible	e) beneficial
a) uncommon	b) common	c) unfamiliar	a) Horrible	
				\



If Conditionals (zero - first - second)

If you heat ice, it melts. (It is a true fact.)

If you come early, you will meet the manager. (It is probable.)

If he arrived early, he would catch the bus. (It is not possible.)

منيقة (الحالة الصفرية) احتمال (الحالة الأولى)

يم احتمال (الحالة الثانية)

1

Zero conditional

الحالة الصفرية

If / When + present simple, present simple

We use it to talk about facts and things that are always true.

- تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتعبير عن الحقائق والأشياء التي دائمًا ما تكون صحيحة.

- If/When you heat water, it boils.
- If I need help with a school project, I search online.
- If/When wet wood is burnt, it gives off much smoke.





- عند وجود علامة من المضارع البسيط. ...always usually often في جملة جواب الشرط نستخدم الحالة الصفرية.
- If I feel hungry, I always eat anything till I arrive home.
 - من الممكن استخدام when بدلًا من if في الحالة الصفرية فقط.
- When there is heavy rain, I stay at home.

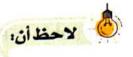
2

First conditional

الحالة الأولى

If + present simple, subject + (will - may - can) + inf.

- We use it to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future.
 - نستخدم الحالة الأولى للتعبير عن أحداث من الممكن والمحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.
 - If the bus arrives late, I'll take a taxi.
 - Dalia is ill. If she is better tomorrow, she'll come to school.
 - If I need help with our project, I will call you.



أمر - طلب ,lf + present simple

- في الحالة الأولى من الممكن أن نستخدم الأمر والطلب في جواب الشرط مع عدم وجود فاعل.
- If you meet Mona, tell her that I'm waiting.
- If there is a fire, call the fire department.
- If you see my father, don't tell him about my results.

If + present simple, subject + should + inf.

- في الحالة الأولى نستخدم .should + inf في جواب الشرط عند النصيحة.
- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you are tired, you should have some rest.
 - ومن الممكن أن نبدأ الجملة بكلمة Should بدلًا من If ويكون الشكل كالتالى:

> Should + subject + inf. subject + will + inf.

- Should Mona come early, I will tell her what happened.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 If water freezes, it to ice.
- a) will turn b) would turn
- c) turns
- d) would have turned
- 2 If I spend too long on the computer, I usuallya headache.
 - a) will get
- b) would get
- c) got
- d) get
- 3 If she hard, she will win next week's race.
 - a) train
- b) trains
- c) trained
- d) had trained
- 4 If Mona comes early, sheher boss before leaving.
 - a) is meeting
- b) will meet
- c) had to meet
- d) would meet

- 5 What will you do if you your keys?
- a) lose
- b) would lose
- c) will lose
- d) are losing

Second conditional

الحالة الثانية

If + past simple, subject + (would - might - could) + inf.

- We use it to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future.
 - نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن مواقف غير حقيقية أو غير محتملة في الحاضر أو المستقبل.
 - If he went faster, he would catch the bus.
 - = He doesn't go faster, so he won't catch the bus.
 - If I got a bad grade for this project, I would be really unhappy.
 - If he slept early, he could get up early.

▶ If + subject + (was - were), subject + (would + inf.)





استخدام الحالة الثانية مع Was – Were للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث الفعل في الحاضر (ومن الأفضل استخدام Were مع

- If she was/were a princess, she would be much happier.
 - = She isn't a princess, so she won't be much happier.
- = I am not rich, so I won't build a palace, - If I was/were rich, I would build a palace.

If I were you, I would + inf. = You should + inf.

و من الممكن استخدام الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن النصيحة.

- If I were you, I would study hard to get high marks.
 - = I advise you to study hard to get high marks.

و من الممكن أن نبدأ الجملة في الحالة الثانية بكلمة Should أو كلمة Were وتكون القاعدة كما يلي:

▶ Should + subject + inf., subject + would + inf.

- Should Sara sleep early, she would get up early.

▶ Were + subject + to + inf., subject + would + inf.

- Were Rania to run faster, she would catch the bus.
 - = If Rania ran faster, she would catch the bus.

• Were + subject + (منه وظيفة − صفة.), subject + would + inf.

- Were he clever, he would get high marks. = If he were clever, he would get high marks.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 If you had an invitation to the party, you to attend easily.
 - a) would allow

b) would have been allowed

c) would be allowed

- d) would have been allowing
- I would put on protective glasses if Iyou.
 - a) were
- b) will be
- c) had been
- d) am

- Mona to the party if we invited her.
 - a) will come
- b) might come
- c) might have come d) comes
- 4 Should we decide now, we to Alexandria.
 - a) would go b) went

- c) would have gone d) are going
- (5) Maha wouldn't come with us if her mother well.
 - a) didn't feel
- b) felt

- c) hadn't felt
- d) doesn't feel

Language Exercises

Choose the correct a	answer from a h cor	a. No the notice	
1 If you smo	king, you would proba	a:	
a) stop	b) stopped	bly feel healthier.	1995 CALL 1995
2 What will you do if	you by a snak	c) didn't stop	d) had stopped
a) bite	b) will bite		a programme and the second
(3) If you are hungry, .	another send	c) are bitten	d) were bitten
a) will take	b) take		D. 1. 1. 2. 2. 5 **
(4) If my sister has a ba	aby how sho	c) don't take	d) taking
a) calls	aby boy, sile [1		
c) will call		b) would call	llad
s If you add six to eig	aht you fourte	d) would have cal	ileu
a) would get	b) might get	c) get	d) got
6 If you the k	oill before Friday we w	vill take the comput	
a) paid	b) don't pay		d) pay
7 If Noha the			u, pu,
a) was winning		c) wins	d) has won
If they had another		The second secon	SCHIEF LONG
	b) would get		t d) get
9 If I they we	re honest. I would gla	dly lend them the r	noney.
a) had known	b) have known	c) know	d) knew
10he find a g	ood job, he will move	to a new flat.	
-) If	h) Were	c) Should	d) When
ff If you Ali, c	ould you tell him to co	ome for the weddin	g party?
alring	b) rang	c) had rung	d) rings
12 If she beat her frier	nd at chess, she	very happy.	1 1
alia (dutot de M	b) will be	C) Would be	d) would have been
13 angry if it	turns out that you are	wrong.	and the state of t
a) will be	b) will	c) would be	d) was
our -last ign't water	red. it		Deline
111	MOUIO DIE	c) die	d) dies
a) would have died When I work a lot in	n the garden, I	. tired at mg	d) would feel
\ C 1	b) tell	-,	d) would feel
1 1	rgoals very h	appy?	
a) you would be	to god and up (a		
c) would you have	been	d) would you be	

THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T			
👣 I wouldn't	reach this stage if she	me.	d) didnu
a) had helj	ped b) helped	c) hadn't helped	ce to most i
18 If he	at the meeting early,	he would have the chan	d) arrive the boss.
a) had arriv	ved b) has arrived	c) arrives	a) allived
19 If you go o	ut, please me th	ne newspaper.	d) bount
a) will buy	b) buy	c) would buy	maru?
	The second secon	n if she the sum	liary:
a) reads		c) had read	
, and a second s		hospital to be examined	
a) felt			d) are feeling
		I will try to look my best	
	b) have		d) have had
23 Were Ali	us, he would invit	e us to the party.	
a) see	b) to see	c) seen	d) had seen
24 If I	in my 70s and rather un	ıfit, I might consider takir	ng up squash.
a) were	b) hadn't beer	c) weren't	d) had been
25 he	a doctor, he could help	us.	
a) If	b) Should	c) Had	d) Were
26 If you want	t to be fit, youe	at healthy food.	
a) would	b) ought	c) would have	d) should
27 Ha	na be clever, she would	answer the question.	
		c) Should	d) If
28 If you	our teacher, rememb	per me to him.	
a) will visit		c) visits	d) visit
29 If anyone	a problem, they a	always feel nervous.	
a) have	b) has	c) had	d) will have
30 har	d, he would get high m	arks.	one contract to
a) If he stud		b) Should he to s	study
c) Were he	to study	d) Should he stu	dies
31 If you	the apples now, they	won't taste very sweet.	ares and are a
a) picked	b) will pick	c) pick	
32 If you	that stone, you would	d break the window.	u) Hau pickeu
a) has throv	vn b) threw	c) had thrown	d) throw
	eated, it	-, riad tillowij	u) tillow
a) will expan	nd b) expand	c) ovpanda	d) would ovnand
34 If you can't	dictate your conditions	younegotiate.	d) would expand
a) would	b) should		
	- Jonoulu	c) need	d) ought

Fill in the space:

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

		The state of the s	Land to the state of the control of	Publicate letters a successful
1	Choose the correct a	inswer from a, b, c or	d:	
	The voice which I h	eard on the phone wa	as I thougl	nt he was a man I had
	talked to before.		Principal Control of Line and	and the second of the second
	a) familiar	b) useful	c) helpful	d) stressful
	2 One day, I hope to	have a/an to h	ielp me clean my ro	oom.
	a) GPS	b) air-conditioner	c) robot	a) vehicle
	3 My brother always	buys his needs online	with a of a	button.
	a) hit	b) kick	c) control	d) click
	Because of the bad	economic situation, h	is income	down last year.
		b) made		d) did
		this new electric	car?	
	a) in	b) from	c) at	d) with
		ect the intern	et, just click here.	chte. A derivin de
	a) with	b) to		d) at
	7 If she a chil	d, she wouldn't have t	o adopt one.	
	a) has	b) had had	c) had	d) has had
	(8) If it went on raining	for much longer, the	river	
	a) would flood	b) will flood	c) floods	d) flooded
	If you mix yellow ar	nd blue, yougi	reen.	
	a) get	b) would get	c) got	d) would have got
	10 Water if the	temperature is zero o	r below.	a rā inci supra
	a) will freeze	b) would freeze	c) could freeze	d) freezes
	11 She won't mind if I.	early, will she?		
5 W	a) had left	b) will leave	c) would leave	d) leave
	12 you heat wa	ater, it evaporates.		
	a) Unless	b) Whether	c) Without	d) When
3)	You can't travel on t	his train you h	ave a reservation.	And the State of
	a) without	b) if	c) unless	
	🔫running ev	ery day is a good exer	cise, I will try to pra-	ctise it.
	a) In case of	b) Without	c) Unless	d) If
2	Fill in the space:			a metalficulation
	If you come to love	all people, all people v	vill love you. But in	case you insisted on
	loving yourself only, no	body[a)Ic	ve vou but vourself	It's strange enough
	that selfish people feel	surprised(b)	they feel ill and	nobody visits them
	and inquires after their	m. Selfish people	(c) be surpr	ised when they are
	deflied assistance from	n others and find nobe	dy ready to help the	hem therefore they
	accuse the whole worl	d of(d) un	kind to them, unav	vare of the fact that
	they should blame not	ody but themselves	11 11.76.3	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There is no longer any doubt that smoking is a fatal habit. Figures indicate that the number of victims of smoking is increasing. In fact the number of those epidemics, wars or accidents in our times.

When the World Health Organisation (W.H.O) in 1982, after a great deal of scientific research, announced that smoking is a primary cause of lung cancer, heart and chest diseases. Countries like Britain and the U.S.A. immediately took actions.

Media campaigns were launched explaining the dangers and encouraging smokers to stop smoking. They have succeeded and the percentage of smokers has gone down significantly among educated people in England.

However, the tobacco companies naturally were not very pleased with this and tried to make up for this loss by opening new markets in what is called the Third World Countries. So, they held festivals, had automobile races, gave out prizes for different kinds of competitions, thus raising the rate of consumption in these countries by eight percent annually in the last few years.

The war between the tobacco companies and health organisations could be considered a war between good and evil, a vital important war, a war to try and save our youth and our future. A war in which each person must take part for the sake of his own and his country's future.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

, choose the contest onswer monta,	w, cora.	
1 The tobacco companies were no	ot pleased with the W.H.O's announce	ment
because		
a) smoking is a fatal habit	b) the victims of smoking are incre	asing
c) smokers stopped smoking	d) it would cause a big loss of w	ealth
Smoking is a fatal habit. This mean	ns	
a) it is a habit of fate	b) fate is the way to smoking	
c) it is a habit that causes death	d) you mustn't avoid it	
3 The W.H.O		
a) encouraged a large number to s	stop smoking	
b) gave out prizes for different con	npetitions	
c) took part in the war between go	ood and evil	
d) tried to make up for its loss		

- The tobacco companies are to blame because
 - a) the percentage of smokers has gone down
 - b) media campaigns were launched
 - c) they opened new markets in the Third World Countries
 - d) smoking is a fatal habit

- 5 The numbers of victims of smoking the numbers of victims of epidemics and wars.
 - a) exceeded
- b) equalled
- c) increased
- d) decreased

B) Answer the following questions:

- 6 What action did advanced countries take when W.H.O. made its announcement?
- What shows that smoking is the most fatal thing nowadays?
- B What measures were taken by these tobacco companies to make up for their loss?

A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress as the immune system is less efficient when we are worried.
- 2. All religions respect democracy. They respect human rights, they respect all the values that all of us carry.
- **3.** Any country is in great need of persons of wisdom to modernise the educational system and achieve justice among people.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- إن مترو الأنفاق يعد واحدًا من الإنجازات الهامة للدولة المصرية في السنوات الأخيرة؛ لدوره الهام في حل مشكلة التكدس المروري وتقليل عدد الحوادث.
- ٢- يجب علينا جميعـًا أفرادًا وحكومات أن نبذل أقصى ما فى وسعنا؛ لكى نتمكن من تحسين جودة منتجاتنا المحلية وبالتالى
 تحقيق النمو الاقتصادى.
- ٣- الأم هي المدرسة الأولى للطفل فهي من تعلمه الأخلاق والقيم وكيفية التعامل مع من حوله قبل أن يتعلم القراءة والكتابة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

stress	الضغط	aimmune system هاز المناعة
human rights	حقوق الانسان	wisdom حكمة
justice	العدالة	traffic jam تكدس المرورى
morals	الأخلاق	values

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

- 1. The internet is one of the most important inventions.
- 2. Climate change and the problems that follow.



Lessons 3&4





Key Vocabulary

app (n)	تطبيق على التليفون المحمول
chat (v) – ted (n)	يدردش/دردشة
feedback (n)	التغذية الاسترجاعية (رد الفعل لشيء ما)

quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
translation (n)	ترجمة
A THE PARTY OF THE	ACTIVITY TOR

Vocabulary on Reading

advantages (n)	مزایا
comment (n)	تعليق
completely (adv)	تمامنا
cost (v)	يتكلف
disadvantages (n)	عيوب

device (n)	جهاز/أداة
negative (adj)	سلبى
positive (adj)	إيجابى
stress (n)	ضغط عصبی
understanding (n)	فهم

Vocabulary on Listening

exact (adj)	مضبوط
human being	إنسان
improve (v) – d	يتحسن
notebook (n)	ڡؙٛڣؙػٚڔؘۊ

remember (v) (ed)	يتذكر
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا



Workbook Vocabulary

يعترف سيعترف	
	admit (v) – ted
يجادل	argue (v) – d
حريص	careful (adj)
بعناية/بحرص	carefully (adv)
قرن (مائة عام)	century (n)
يجمع	collect (v) – ed
بیانات/تفاصیل	details (n)
فيلم/برنامج وثائقي	documentary (n)
يحمل/تحميل	download (v) – ed (n)
إلكترونى	electronic (adj)
مبالغ فيه/شديد	extreme (adj)
يخمن	guess (v) – ed
يتخيل	imagine (v) – d

memories (n)	تالىدن
offer (v) – ed	بعرض
personal (adj)	لنخصى
philosopher (n)	بأساف
positive (adj)	إيجابى
printing press (n)	آلة طباعة
progress (n)	ليقتا
seem (v) – ed	اندو
share (v) – d	يشارك
smile (v) – d	لسنة
studies (n)	دراسات
surprising (adj)	مدهش
worried (adj)	قلق

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

for or against	مع او ضد
change into	يتغير إلى
communicate with	يتواصل مع
effect on	تأثير على
feel about	يشعر بشأن
give to	یعطی لـ
in conclusion	في الختام
lead to	يؤدى إلى
summary of	ملخص اـــ

lose interest in	يفقد الاهتمام فى	
social network acco	unts حسابات الشبكة الاجتماعية	
turn on his phone	يشغل هاتفه	
think about	یفکر فی	
travel from to	يسافر من إلى	
type of	نوع من	
useful for	مفید ا	
worried about	قلق بشأن	

Derivatives

Verb		Noun	The second	Adjectiv	ve
admit	يعترف	admittance	اعتراف	* 14	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلی
care	يهتم	care	اهتمام	careful	حريص
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعی
comment	يعلق	comment commentary	تعلیق تعلیق		
complete	يكمل	completion	تكملة	complete	كامل
exact	ينتزع	exaction	انتزاع/ابتزاز	exact	مضبوط
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative	خيالى
surprise	يدهش	surprise	دهشة	surprising surprised	مدهش مندهش
understand	يفهم	understanding	فهم	understandable understanding	معقول/مفهوم متفهم/متجاوب
worry	يقلق	worry	قلق	worried	قلق



Pre-reading question: - What is your favourite technological device: computer, TV or something else?

I like technology a lot and I use it every day. It helps me find information for my school work and I can buy things easily online. But technology isn't always a good thing. It can lead to(1) a lot of stress(2) and it can stop people enjoying their free time.

- يؤدي إلى (1)
- ضغط/توتر (2)
- بدون (3)
- أسهل (4)

Karim

I don't know what I would do without(3) technology! It makes life easier(4) and you can do things so much faster. And how would we travel without technology? You can travel from Cairo to London in just five hours in a plane! Dina

Post-reading question: - Write two advantages and two disadvantages of technology.



Pre-listening question:

- How can technology help us to learn?

- *Amal : Technology is so useful when you're learning something, Hana! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading a text(1), you can find the translation(2) for it.
- Hana: You're right, Amal, but does that really help you to learn? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.
- ترجمة (2) يفضل (3)

نص القراءة (1)

- Amal: Well, not exactly, but if you use a language app, for example, you can do quizzes about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you feedback on your writing so you can do it better next time.
- **Hana**: I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer⁽³⁾ using a pen and paper and making notes⁽⁴⁾ in my notebook. I don't need a smartphone.
- *Amal : That's OK. Everyone's different. For me, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can chat to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own⁽⁵⁾. If you have questions, they'll help you.

Post listening question:

- In your opinion, how useful is technology when you are learning something?

Workbook Text

Is technology always a good thing?

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer?

On the one hand⁽¹⁾, there are always dangers with new technology. More than two thousand years ago, a Greek philosopher⁽²⁾ called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their memories⁽³⁾. In the 16th century⁽⁴⁾, following the invention of the printing press⁽⁵⁾, a Swiss philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information. And in the 20th century, many people thought that the radio would make it difficult for students to think about their studies⁽⁶⁾.

On the other hand, technology usually offers⁽⁷⁾ some advantages⁽⁸⁾. Books and writing are seen as positive⁽⁹⁾ things today and most people think that their advantages are more important than any disadvantages⁽¹⁰⁾.

In conclusion⁽¹¹⁾, perhaps it takes many years before we can see clearly whether new technology is good or bad.

(1)	ناحية	من
-----	-------	----

فيلسوف (2)

ذكريات (3)

قرن (مائة عام) (4)

آلة طابعة (5)

برنامج ترجمة (1)

يبتسم (4)

أجنبي (5)

مبرمج على (6)

Video Script

Will people need to learn foreign languages in the future? Or will technology speak them for us? Some people think that if apps and translation software⁽¹⁾ continue to improve⁽²⁾ over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become a thing of the past. But can an app or a piece of software really communicate like a person can?

They can definitely⁽³⁾ translate words, or even whole sentences, from one language to another. But they can't smile⁽⁴⁾ at the person you're talking to and show them that you really mean what you're saying.

0:00

When you speak in a foreign⁽⁵⁾ language, you speak to another human being and human beings find it difficult to become friends with smartphones or computers – we are programmed⁽⁶⁾ to prefer other human beings. That's why we can feel sure that learning languages still has a future.



Check Point 1

a) technology

1 If you are a stu	h) load	c or a: an app and start a ch c) argue they have a/an	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE
students are le	arning well. b) quiz	c) exam	d) feedback
3 All courses offe	h) argument	track your progress. c) admittance	d) feedback
a) chat	b) app	nartphone to learn fore c) link	a) Click
ln the future. W	e will have the	to travel to space fo	r our holidays.

Focus on Vocabulary

b) invention

c) possibility

d) invitation

quiz اختبار قصیر	p questions to find out how much you know
translation ترجمة	words changed into another language
an app تطبيق على التليفون المحمول	software on your smartphone/ electronic program
feedback التغذية الاسترجاعية (رد الفعل لشيء ما)	Information about how well or badly you did something
chat پدردش پیردش	▶ to communicate with other people online

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/ conceal ينكر
advantages	مزایا	merits/ pros	disadvantages/ demerits/ cons عيوب
argue	يجادل	discuss	agree يتفق
careful	حريص	cautious	careless مهمل
completely	تمامنا	totally	incompletely/ partially جزئیٹا/غیر کامل
extreme	مبالغ فيه/شديد	severe	moderate معتدل
personal	شخصی	private	public مام
surprising	مدهش	astonishing/ amazing	usual معتاد
understandir	فهم ng	grasping	misunderstanding إساءة الفهم
worried	قلق	anxious	calm/ relaxed هادئ/مريح

UNIT (8)

Notes on Vocabulary



(everyday

every day

everyday (adj.)

پومی (صفة)

▶ We all suffer from the problems of everyday life.

every day (adv.)

يومينًا (ظرف)

Ali travels to Alexandria to work every day.

(too much

too many

too much + (Uncountable Noun) اسم لا يعد

کٹی جدًا

There was too much work for one person.

on

too many + (Countable Noun) اسم يعد

کثیر جدًا

You've been reading too many novels.

(by

in

مع وسائل المواصلات

by

مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)

- I travelled abroad by plane.
- He went to work by car.

on

مع وسائل المواصلات (التي يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)

- I went to Tanta on a train.
- ▶I go to school on foot.

لاحظ استخدام كلمة on مع foot

in

مع وسائل المواصلات (التي لا يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)

- I go to school in my car.
- ▶ She goes to Luxor in a taxi.

Language Notes

- 1. But technology isn't always a good thing.
- كلمة technology اسم لا يعد يعامل معاملة المفرد.
- 2. On the one hand, there are always dangers with new technology.
 - On the other hand, technology usually offers some advantages.
 - يستخدم التعبيران on the one hand & on the other hand للتعبير عن الرأى والرأى المخالف.
- 3. In the 16th century, following the invention of the printing press,
 - كلمة following استخدمت هنا كحرف جر بمعنى بعد.
- 4. A Swiss philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that
 - كلمة called بمعنى يدعي/يسمي وقد حذف ضمير الوصل who بالإضافة إلى الفعل المساعد is.
- 5. More than two thousand years ago, a Greek philosopher.
 - لاحظ أن كلمة thousand لا تجمع إذا جاء قبلها عدد.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He travelled to Luxor and Aswan train.
 - a) in

b) on

c) by

- d) at
- I wasted time during the break.
 - a) too many

b) too much

c) much any

- d) any many
- 3 She went to universityher new car.
 - a) in

b) on

c) by

- d) at
- 4 Mona visits her mother in the hospital
 - a) every day

b) everyday

- d) every days
- 5 The writer's book has become successful as it is written in a simple
 - language.

b) everyday

a) every day

c) ever

d) every days

UNIT (8

Vocabulary Exercises)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 After reading a text, students take a short	reading comprehens	sion
	c) chat	d) feedback
 a) competition b) quiz 2 My brother is specialised in from 		
	b) writing	Little water with the
a) translation	d) rephrasing	
c) imagination	The state of the s	souther century.
3 Laila spends hours on the phone	chatting	d) penning
a) writing b) understanding	from our custom	
We need both positive and negative	b) advantages	C. S.
a) disadvantages		
c) pros	d) feedback	
Have you got a dictionary on you	ir pnone?	d) hardware
a) quiz b) app	c) chat	u) Haluwale
6 I didn't buy the new car because it	too much.	d) estimated
a) pricedb) valued	c) cost	The state of the s
7 The research may lead to a better	of how the disease of	ievelops.
a) understanding	b) comment	
c) agreement	d) imagination	
B Do you have any to make about to	the cause of the disast	ter?
a) reviews	b) chats	
c) commentaries	d) comments	
They made a TV about Mount Fuj	i volcano.	N. Jakaila
a) play b) documentary	c) admittance	d) details
10 A/Annumber of teenagers leave s	chool without being a	ible to read and write.
a) extreme b) personal	c) surprising	d) amazed
The scientist's family have left a very posit		
a) agreement	b) effect	
c) account	d) argument	
12 There have been major new development		
a) technology	b) sociology	
c) application	d) knowledge	
13 The police want to knowwhen yo	ou left the building.	
a) extremely	b) absolutely	
c) fairly	d) exactly	
https://www.youtube.com/channel	/UCiEvkl7HaNi R7dr	nahzzala

93

e) cautious

a) astonishing

d) anxious





Extra Notes

If (Third conditional)

Third conditional

الحالة الثالثة

If + past perfect, subject + (would - might - could) have + P.P.

- · We use it to talk about past situations or actions that didn't happen.
 - ـ نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن مواقف وأحداث في الماضي لم تحدث (أمنية في الماضي).
 - If you had gone to the cinema with us, you would have enjoyed your time.
 - = You didn't go to the cinema so you didn't enjoy the film.
 - If she hadn't passed the exam, she wouldn't have gone to university.
 - = She passed the exam, so she went to university.
 - لاحظ أن عند وجود كلمة تدل على الماضي لابد من استخدام الحالة الثالثة حتى وإن كانت الجملة فيها حقيقة.
- If you had put water in the freezer yesterday, it would have turned into ice.
- Without studying hard, he wouldn't have passed last year's exams.



If + subject + had + (object), subject (would - could - might) + inf.

- had هنا فعل أساسي وليس مساعدًا لذلك نستخدم الحالة الثانية.
- If I had enough money, I would buy this mobile phone.
 - من الممكن استخدام Had في بداية الجملة بدلًا من If ويكون الشكل كالتالي:

Had + subject + p.p., subject + would have + p.p.

- Had he told us early, I would have been able to help him.
 - = If he had told us early, I would have been able to help him.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 If he hadn't bought that car, he that accident.
 - a) wouldn't have

b) didn't have

c) wouldn't have had

- d) would have
- 2 If you earlier, you would have caught the train.
 - a) had left

b) leave

c) left

- d) would leave
-he missed the bus; he would have taken a taxi.
 - a) If

b) Were

c) Unless

- d) Had
- Whatif he had told them about our problems?
 - a) will happen

b) would happen

c) has happened

- d) would have happened
- (5) If he had the will, hehis problems easily.
 - a) would solve

b) will solve

c) solves

d) would have solved



Important Language Notes

جملة منفية + If = جملة مثبتة + Unless

Unless he ran fast, he would miss the bus. If he didn't run fast, he would miss the bus.

Without + noun/ v-ing = But for + noun

Without studying hard, you will fail.

Without / But for his cleverness, he wouldn't succeed.

In case of + noun/ v-ing

In case of emergency, call 122.

if = provided = provided that = providing = as long as في الحالة الأولى والثانية I will get high marks provided / as long as I study hard.

If it weren't for + noun, subject + would + inf.

If it hadn't been for + noun, subject + would have + p.p.

- If it weren't for doctors, many people would die.
 - = Without doctors, many people would die.
- If it hadn't been for his help, I would have failed the exam.
 - = Without his help, I would have failed the exam.

hoose the correct answer from a his or de



choose the c	officer anisme. If one	4/10/201 41	
1yo	u had finished the pr	roject, you wouldn'	t have been free to travel
a) If	b) Without	c) Unless	d) Provided that

- her courage, the kid wouldn't have been saved.
- a) Unless b) In case of c) If d) Without

 3 If itfor money, we wouldn't be able to buy anything.
- a) weren't b) didn't c) hadn't been d) doesn't
- 4 They will win the match they train hard.
- a) unless b) as long as c) without d) in case of
- Withoutour best, we wouldn't pass our exams with high marks.
 - a) do b) doing c) to do d) have done

85

Language Exercises)

C	hoose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	de	
6	If they had had and	other chance, they	u:	
	wy rround get	MIII UCT	OCIO-ORIGINAL DEL CONTRACTOR DE CONTRACTOR D	1)
2	If Ghada had walke	ed all the way, she	c) may get	d) would have got
	a) would be	way, sile	b) would have b	ACCOUNT COM
	c) will be		d) had been	een
3	Ramy would have	been better if he	his medicine re	agularly
	a) has taken		c) had taken	
4		and my wallet	he had helped me	2.
	a) if	b) without	c) in case	d) unless
5	If he at the	meeting early, he wo	ould have had the	chance to meet
	the boss.			
	a) had arrived	b) has arrived	c) arrives	d) arrived
6	I wouldn't have co	me if I that yo	u were busy.	
	a) know	b) have known	c) had known	d) knew
7	If he had frozen for	od, heit at th	e moment.	
	a) wouldn't be eat	ing	b) won't eat	
	c) wouldn't eat		d) would have e	aten
8	If I had known his a	address, Ihim	a letter.	i de
	a) would send	b) will send	c) can send	d) could have sent
9	If Ihim yes	terday, I would have	asked him to come	e with me.
	a) have seen	b) saw	c) was seeing	a) nad seen
10	If you at th	e time that these tre	es started growing	g, you would have seen
	people build some	of Egypt's ancient te	mpies.	3 (1) (1) (1) (2) (4)
	a) lived	b) live	c) nad lived	d) Would live
11	If people hadn't ha	d enough sleep, they	/ III.	nocome
	a) will become	- Land 1,129b.6.7	d) wouldn't have	ve hecome
	c) would become	dhed till to general		
12	Unless he had follo	wed my advice, he	b) wouldn't hav	e lost
	a) would have lost		d) won't lose	C 1001
	c) wouldn't lose	grating of the	yo broken the win	dow.
13	If you that	stone, you would ha	b) throw	France 1 Pag
	a) has thrown	DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF	the classical state of	
	a) had thrown		u) tillow	

(C)	ore crops if he had used	modern farming met	hods.
🔫 He m	ore crops if he had used	b) would grow	
a) would have		d) will grow	store administration
c) had grown	1 1the mosting if		
I would have	attended the meeting if	b) had had	Def Coll VSA 13
a) would have	e had	d) have had	TAD SINCE US 17
c) had	thinking	you would have gain	ed much more from:
	e project more thinking,	b) have given	1711.1000 18
a) would give		d) would have gi	ven
c) had given			Ther avenue
	if he had left the meetin	b) would happer	Telegraph (per
a) will happer		d) would have ha	nppened
c) had happer	ned	would have huilt a	new hospital
18 If the money I	ne had enough,	c) had been	d) had to
- 1 has been	h) had	C) Had been	a) Haa to
	elped me with some mor	ney, Iable to i	ouy a new nat.
a) wouldn't b		b) will be	heen
c) would have	been	d) wouldn't have	argupi na
20 I wouldn't hav	e found my wallet witho	out	d) he helped me
a) helping	b) being helped	c) helped	u) He Helped He
21 we go	one to the club, we would	d have been nappier.	d) Had
a) If	b) Unless	c) Hadn't	u) riau
22 If it fo	r your help, I wouldn't ha	ave succeeded.	d) weren't
a) hadn't	b) isn't	c) hadn't been	a) welent
Sara would ha	ve been fattersh	ne had eaten much.	d) in case of
a) if	b) unless		d) in case of
24 they h	ad the required qualities	s, they would get the	JOD.
a) Unless	b) Provide	c) As long as	d) Supposed
25 eating	healthy food is essentia		Nulses
a) If		c) In case of	d) Unless
26 for the	Nile, Egypt would be a	THE STATE OF THE S	
a) If it were		b) If it had been	
c) If it hadn't b	een) If it weren't	
27 If I had my hair	r cut, I to the par	ty.	
a) would have	gone	b) wouldn't have	gone
c) would go	Mr. W terrer in war	d) will go	ilove9
28 If I witl	n you yesterday, I would	have dismissed this r	ude employee.
a) were	b) had been	c) would be	d) am

OW are reject	Robots
 We are going to start painting the house a) unless b) provided 30	c) without d) when dhair catch the train. b) Were they to run
Fill in the space:	d) Unless they ran
	a)told that you could never return? are(b)to space in the future. d(c)the mission. They said that so immigrated before. They also know that
	footballers in the world. He(b)(b) if he(c) been so successful, the to one of the sports clubs. He retired from
on weight(a) you put on more There, you choose food rich(b)	re calories after having meals at restaurants calories and eat larger quantities. If you(c) eat homemade food instead ewer calories(d) make you lose erfect solution for solving weight problems
It is said that many people can be effect complicated and difficult than many people qualities for effective teachers. They are their class without screaming and don't know their students as individuals and to (c)	tive teachers but in fact it is more ople think. There are(a)

Life Skills

Asking for opinion

• What is your opinion about?

- Do you think that? Why?
- · What do you think about/of?

Expressing opinion

- In my opinion,
- I think

Discussing consequences

- The reason that we have is that
- The reason that we have a computer is that we can do our work.
- Although we need, it can lead to
- Although we need the internet, it can lead to some problems for kids.
- The problem with is that
- Perhaps we should/ shouldn't



Model Essay

How technology can improve learning

Technology has affected the different industries as a whole and education is one of them. From schools to colleges and universities, everyone can feel the impact of technology. Surely, there are advantages and some disadvantages for technology. Apart from the argument that technology has negatively affected students' learning, I think it has made the academic learning better.

Technology has also proved to be a helping hand for teachers who sometimes find it hard to explain certain things within normal classrooms. Teachers are able to prepare their lessons in a very good way by including different types of activities and interactive controls for students.

Also, communication is an essential part of any activity. And when it comes to education, it helps students and teachers to communicate easily whether at schools or from their homes. I think learning will be everywhere and at any time. In addition to that, technology could help students to do any kind of researches. As they can find any information they want on the internet.

The use of technology has made things a lot more fun than ever. We all know that a student learns more when he/she practices especially with having fun.

Finally, we can say that technology is going to stay and develop. There are more revolutions that are exposed in the industry, so we need to be ready for every new update.

Discussing consequences

Discussing consequences about technology

Imagine your friend and you are discussing the consequences about new technology.

You can visit the website https://tophat.com/blog/how-does-technology-impact-student-learning/ to get more information about this subject.

Prepare answers for the following questions:

Ali

1. In your opinion, how useful is technology when you are learning something?

Speaking

- 2. How do you use technology to help you learn English?
- 3. Will this technology have a positive or a negative effect on our lives?

Practice

Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Taher are talking about the consequences of technology in learning process.

proces	ss.
Ali	: Do you think modern technology helped us in the learning process?
Taher	: Of course, it helped us during the period of Coronavirus.
Ali	: How useful was it during that period of time?
Taher	•
Ali	: I agree with you. Distance learning helped us a lot.
Taher	: But do you think it will have positive or negative effects on our lives?
Ali	*
Taher	: How can it have negative effects?

General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
We were just.	about what we	did last weekend.	
a) looking	b) searching	c) cheating	d) chatting
2 I like watching	series more th	nan talk shows.	
a) ever day	b) everyday	c) ever	d) every days
3 What	of music do you like, m	y friend?	long with risky services.
a) effect	b) affection	c) result	d) type
Sorry, I can't ar	nswer questions about	my life.	
a) personnel	b) personal	c) individual	d) popular
s In this small to	wn, it was to fi	nd so many really god	od restaurants.
a) extreme	b) personal	c) private	d) general
6 Are you for or	using the mob	ile phone while drivin	g?
a) with	b) at	c) against	d) about
7 All the current	events may lead	the start of a war.	
a) to	b) at	c) for	d) with
If the farmer's f	fields had got very dry	last summer, he	them.
a) would irriga	te	b) will irrigate	
c) would have	irrigated	d) wouldn't have	e irrigated
If yout	he first prize, they wou	ıld have celebrated yo	ou.
a) won	b) had won	c) win	d) would win
n Rana would ha	ve been a doctor	she had studied ha	arder.
a) unless	b) without	c) in case of	d) if
👊 he four	nd the suitable place, h	e wouldn't have staye	ed in this city.
a) If	b) Had	c) Hadn't	d) Weren't
2 We would have	been able to catch the	thief we had	had the same speed
a) if	b) in case of	c) without	d) but for
Without calling	me yesterday, she	many problems.	Western Land
a) will have	b) would have	c) may have	d) would have had
44 Had they not rus	shed Mona to hospital	, she	
a) would have d	ied	b) would die	
c) will die		d) could die	
unless he had go	one to university, he	into the army.	
a) would go		b) would have go	ne
c) will go		d) had gone	
		2. 5 4/	

Fill in the space:

Read the following comprehension:

Helen has been a vegetarian for a year and a half. "It happened all of a sudden," she says. I just couldn't eat meat any more. It made me feel sick. I suddenly thought of it as eating an animal, like a piece of cow, instead of a piece of beef. I did have a few meat meals during the first few weeks, but I felt so incredibly guilty and ashamed afterwards that I soon stopped. I wouldn't eat meat now if you paid me.

When I told my mum I wanted to be a vegetarian, she went, "No, no." But I talked to dad and he said I could; I got round them by telling them I'd probably be sick if they gave me meat. Mum took me to the doctor who gave me loads of advice, and I've felt fine ever since. I've got thinner, but that's OK by me. I gave up meat because I think it's wrong to kill animals.

Some vegetarian foods annoy me, like when they're called vegetarian beef or something, because that's imitating meat which is nearly as bad as having the real thing. I don't find vegetarian food boring. School's no problem either because they always have a soya meal for the vegetarians. I do get a bit of stick from my friends about my belief. They say, "I'll get you a sheep's heart for your birthday." But I can be a bit annoying sometimes because I'm always trying to convert them. They don't want to and it's difficult.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 2 Helen has been a vegetarian for months.
- a) eight b) eighty c) eighteen d) eighty-one
- 3 The underlined words "to convert them" mean to
 - a) help them eat well b) persuade them to be vegetarians
 - c) offer them a lot of meat d) make them eat fish

Helen felt guilty after

- a) stopping eating beef
- c) eating a few meat meals

- b) becoming a vegetarian
- d) feeling sick

5 At first, Helen's motherher intention to become a vegetarian.

- a) agreed to
- b) refused to
- c) ignored
- d) admired

B) Answer the following questions:

- When did Helen become a vegetarian?
- What is your opinion of eating meat?
- 6 Give a suitable title to the passage.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. Smoking cigarettes and pollution represent two fearful enemies to man as they destroy health and bring about suffering and death.
- Unlike other means of transport, the bicycle does not use petrol. This means that it keeps the air clean and does not need a big space to park.
- 3. There are different types of tourism which attract tourists to our country. The most common type is travelling for pleasure and relaxation.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- لا توجد تفرقة في مصر مبنية على الدين أو النوع أو اللون أو المكانـــة الاجتماعيـــة أو الثروة. كلنا متســـاوون: الرجـل أو المرأة، المسيحي أو المسلم.
- ٢- تشـجع الحكومــة الصناعات المحلية حتى نســتغنى عن كثير من الواردات التى تحتاج إلــى الكثير من العملة الصعبة وفي نفس الوقت توفر فرص عمل للشباب.
- ٢- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام.

Enrich your Vocabulary

represent		يمثل	discrimination	تفرقة
fearful		مخيف/مرعب	social position	المكانة الاجتماعية
pleasure	igasalam.	سعادة/متعة	apart from	بمعزل عن
bring about	Lagree for	بسن	de without	
relaxation	5 5% seq	استرخاء المترخاء	do without	يستغنى

- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:
 - 1. From your own point of view, what the most influential invention is.
 - 2. Schools as we dream of.

8

Open General Exercises)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(1 The restaurant's perfect location by the lak	e is its over the other restaurants
	in the area.	(Edg. Fire
	a) advantage	b) disadvantage
,	c) drawback	d) advert
	Our company providessuch as he	and paid vacations. تأمين صحى alth insurance
	a) damages	b) benefits
	c) adventures	d) projects
3	We could hear the of her high-he	eled shoes on the pavement as she came
	toward us.	
	a) trick	b) bang
	c) click	d) strike
4	The disease is from one person to	another through the air.
	a) communicated	b) translated
	c) pumped	d) contacted
5	He could nothis anger any longer	, and he began shouting at the clerk.
	a) extend	b) control
	c) reflect	d) reject
6	The novel is written in an easystyle	so it is popular with ordinary people.
	a) average	b) familiar
	c) strange	d) hard
7	The captain managed to the ship	through the storm.
	a) investigate	b) mislead
	a) deviate	d) navigate
	Drawing, like writing, can be a/an	for expressing your feelings.
•	a) vehicle	b) miracle
	1 Later de	d) marvel
	News of the accident soon the coun	try through social media.
2)		b) revealed
	a) published	d) pressed
	c) got around The young woman has resigned from her	as secretary.
0		b) location
	a) position	d) profession
	al cituation	

17 The computer is of all inventions	of modern world.
a) the better	b) the most better
a) the best	d) better than
My son did his homework perfectly, so I w	as pleased with
	b) himself
a) him	d) me
c) he coming out of hospital, I have be	
	b) Before
a) Since	d) As soon as
c) By thinkwas responsible for damage	
	b) whichever
a) whatever	d) whoever
c) that	u) whoever
15 The password is only known by	b) a fow
a) many	b) a few
c) a little	d) much
Since the operation two months ago, Ali	to walk again. He can alleady tak
one or two steps unaided.	bisgring (a)
a) has learned	b) had learned
c) had been learning	d) learned
Tome of my mother's jewellery m	nissing and she is angry.
a) are	b) have been
c) were	d) is
18 The Days by our great writer Taha	Hussein.
a) were written	b) was written
c) had written	d) were writing
19 I always find chemistry and physics	etsieth in
a) interested	b) interest
c) interesting	d) interests
20 The house is for all of the three fa	milies to live in.
No. of the second	h) co large
manager and the second of the	d) large enough
c) enough large	10 mg 2 mg 20 mg (2)

85

Test 2 Based on Uni

Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1 It's quite easy to			A8073 - H-448
a) get around	b) get on	c) get better	d) get over
At work, we use a	n kettle to	make tea.	
a) electric	b) electrical		d) electrician
We are going on a	a to a strar	ige country by plane.	je i 💆 , y
a) picnic	b) voyage	c) journey	d) flight
4 She that t		asy as it might seem.	AR 24 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
a) invented	b) discovered	c) explored	d) covered
We never travelle			
a) board	b) broad	c) aboard	d) abroad
6 Do you want any	help the r	new laptop?	
a) with	b) at	c) for	d) up
7 If you me	your email addres	ss, I will send you what	you want.
a) sent	b) send	c) sends	d) had sent
🔞 I wouldn't be able	e to communicate v	with my family if they	the internet at home
		e c) can't have	
If you need to set	nd a message or at	n email,your si	martphone.
		c) can use	
🔞 Unless you had a	modern car, you	able to go to A	swan.
a) will be		b) wouldn't be	
c) wouldn't have	been	d) won't be	
		ge for a long time, it ro	ts.
	b) was put		d) is put
10 Noha would have			
a) would have in	vited	c) was invited	. 18
c) had been invit		d) has been invit	
		the FIVE options giv	
13 The words	andhav	e the same meaning a	is the word " annoying ".
	dobly is	مصنطور بيماناه احا	
I -		d) familiar	

e) troublesome

- The opposite of the word "useful" is
 - a) beneficial
 - c) harmful
 - e) useless

- b) horrible
- d) unfamiliar

Fill in the space:

Shopping in a big city is very tiring nowadays. First of all, if you
shopping if a big city is very the shopping, it will take you a long time to find a suitable place for parking. Then, you
shopping, it will take you a long time to the shoppers who
snopping, it will take you a rong the crowded shoppers who(c)scattere
everywhere in the mall. After a long and tiring Journey, you mid yoursell exhauste
and wishing to leave as(d) as possible.
5 To 1 5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Bringing up children is a complex process. The parents are the child's first educators. Every mistake they make in bringing up their children is a battle lost in the fight for a better future. Children should be armed with good qualities to become good citizens. The things that are most vital in the care of a child are a little bit different throughout the age periods. During the first year a baby needs a lot of motherly care. He has to be fed, he eats often, and his food is usually different from the adults. For his spirit to grow normally, he needs someone to dote on him., to think that he is the most wonderful baby in the world, to make noises and baby talk to him, to hug him and smile at him and to keep his company during wakeful periods.

In big families, children are not always given due care. A child is liable to be neglected by the mother because she is either busy or has many other children to care for. The infant whose mother can't take care of him during daytime needs individual care whether it is in his own home or someone else's who may be a relative, a neighbour or a friend whom the other knows and has confidence in. If a new maid or nurse is to come to the house; the mother should know her well before she leaves the baby in her care. Nearly all working mothers nowadays take their children to nurseries. Sometimes the nursery is no good for them. The care there is mechanical rather than warmhearted. There is too much risk of epidemics of colds and other infectious diseases.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 46 According to the passage, a child
 - a) his teachers at school
 - c) TV and Radio

- b) his friends in the street
- d) his parents at home
- $_{f 77}$ According to the passage, big families give to their children.
 - a) due care
 - c) care

- b) good care
- d) little care
- 18 Mothers nowadays feel that bringing up children is a very process.
 - a) easy
- b) difficult
- c) normal
- d) usual

- - a) an educator
- b) a baby
- c) a relative
- d) a neighbour
- - a) deceive
- b) support
- c) trust in
- d) be afraid of

B) Answer the following questions:

- In what way is the food of a baby different from that of an adult?
- 22 What are the disadvantages of taking children to nurseries?
- 23 How do you think we can show interest in our children?

24 Translate into English:

- يجب أن يتعاون الشعب مع الحكومة لزيادة الاستثمار؛ من أجل مواجهة مشكلة البطالة، وذلك عن طريق إنشاء المشروعات الصغيرة والتي تستوعب عددًا من العاملين.

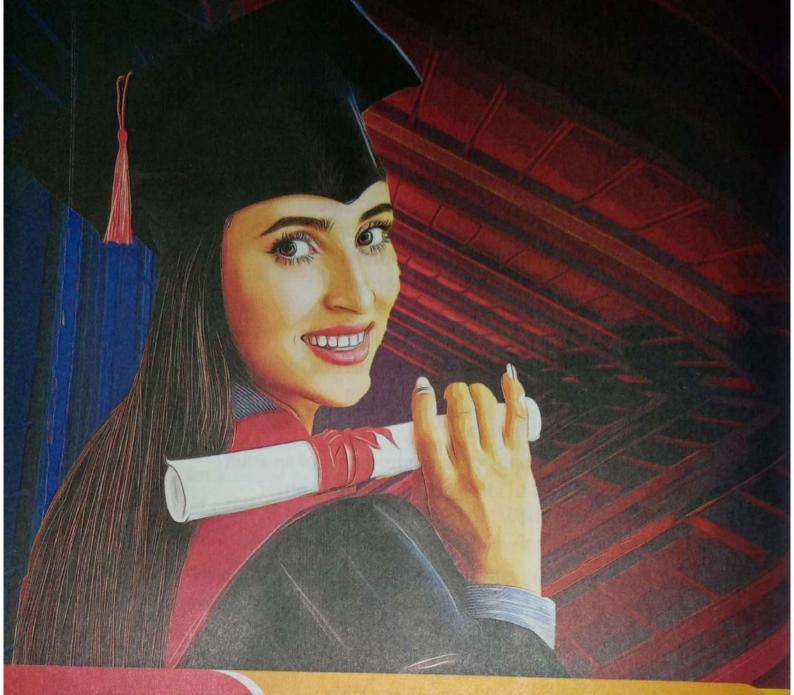
25 Translate into Arabic:

Communication has become easier and the chance for individuals to obtain mass information at a great speed has become available.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

How important is the internet in society?





Unit (9) A good education

(Objectives

: Text about Charlotte Brontë and her novel Jane Eyre

: A summary of Jane Eyre

: A discussion on changing schools; agreeing or disagreeing on

an opinion

Agreeing and disagreeing

Language : Past simple passive; Past simple and past perfect (Active) Communication

: Supporting your opinion with reasons

: Different ways of learning https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg





GOOD EDUCATION BAD EDUCATION Make them love learning Make the bad learning



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

cruel (adj)	قاسِ
governess (n)	مربية
housekeeper (n)	مدبرة المنزل

orphan (n)	
servant (n)	فادم/خادمة
Mary Survey Control	ادم رکادست

Vocabulary on Reading

advertise (v) – d	يعلن
author (n)	مؤلف
become (v)	يصبح
century (n)	قرن (۱۰۰ عام)
dead (adj)	میت
education (n)	تعليم
employ (v) – ed	يوظف
fire (n)	حريق
forget (v)	ينسى
honesty (n)	أمانة
hurt (v)	يؤذى
importance (n)	أهمية

kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة
later (adv)	فيما بعد
leave (v)	يغادر
nearby (adj)	قريب/مجاور
own (v) – ed	يمتلك
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما
relations (n)	أقارب
secret (n)	ш
teach (v)	يندرس/ينعنلُم
unkind (adj)	غير طيب أو عطوف
unusual (adj)	غیر عادی
wealthy (adj)	(ثری

Vocabulary on Listening

discuss (v) – ed	يناقش
extra (adj)	إضافي
fail (v) – ed	،
imagine (v) – d	يرخب ريان
helpful (adj)	
NOTE OF THE PARTY	مفید

improve (v) – d	يحسن
level (n)	مستوى
school term (n)	فصل دراسی
understand (v)	يفهم
upset (v)	ريضايق

Workbook Vocabulary

believe (v) – d	يصدق/يعتقد
bully (n)	بلطجي/متنمر
comfortable (adj)	مريح
continue (v) – d	يستمر
earn (v) – ed	یکسب مالًا 😘 🕬
energy (n)	طاقة
friendly (adj)	ودود

gardener (n)	جناینی/بستانی
headmaster (n)	ناظر
hope (v) – d	یامل ۱۹۱۰ و
huge (adj)	ضذم
previous (adj)	سابق
realise (v) – d	يدرك

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

become friends with	يصبح صديقنا مع
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
keep warm	يحافظ على دافئًا
do an online course	gle elle
رنت	يقوم بدورة تدريبية عبر الإنتر
apply for	يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)
chat with	يدردش مع
come round	يزور
copy of	نسخة من
cruel to	قاسِ مع المسالة 1940،
fight with	يحارب/يتقاتل مع
have lessons with	يحضر دروسـًا مع
hear about	يسمع عن
instead of	بدلًا من
keep under contro	يبقى تحت السيطرة
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع

lose job	يفقد وظيفة
make friends	يكوِّن صداقات/يصادق
received no replies	لم يتلق ردًا
live with	يعيش مع
lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال بــ
move to	ينتقل إلى
return to	يعود إلى
right <mark>for</mark>	مناسب ل
save from	ينقذ من
send <mark>away</mark>	يطرد
stay in/at	يبقى في
travel to	يسافر/يذهب إلى
work for	يعمل لدى
worried about	قلق بشأن



Derivatives

Verb)	Noun		Adjective
advertise	يعلن	advertisement advertising advertiser	إعلان إعلان مـُعلن	
believe	يعتقد/يصدق	belief	اعتقاد	believable قابل للتصديق
		cruelty	قسوة	cruel
discuss	يناقش	discussion	نق <mark>ا</mark> ش	
employ	يوظف	employment employer employee	توظيف صاحب العمل موظف	employable قابل للتوظيف
fail	يرسب/يفشل	failure	فش ل	failed
		honesty	أمانة	honest امین
own	يمتلك	owner ownership	مالك ملكية	
serve	يخدم	service	خدمة	serviceable منيد
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved منحسن/منعدل
help	يساعد	help	مساعدة	helpful معین/مساعد
upset	يضايق	upset	اضطراب	upsetting مزعج/مقلق



Pre-reading question:

- Why do some children have to live with relatives who are not their parents?

Jane Eyre

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous authors⁽¹⁾. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is *Jane Eyre*. It was written in 1847. Jane Eyre was an orphan⁽²⁾ who lived with her cousins and her wealthy⁽³⁾ aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was unkind and they did not want Jane to live with them.



- مؤلفون (1)
- طفلة يتيمة (2)
- ثری (3)
- مالك (4)
- قاس (5)
- يتقدم لوظيفة (6)
- مرىية (7)
- مديرة المنزل (8)
- خادمة (9)

Jane was sent away to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the owner⁽⁴⁾, Mr Brocklehurst, was very cruel⁽⁵⁾, so the students lived unhappy lives. Finally, Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After

two years, Jane decided to apply for⁽⁶⁾ a job as a governess⁽⁷⁾. Governesses were often employed by rich families. She started to teach a young French girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind housekeeper⁽⁸⁾.

One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall and Jane saved Mr Rochester. He said that the fire was started by a servant⁽⁹⁾ called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Jane left Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

Post-reading question:

- What does the story tell you about the character of Jane Eyre?





Pre-listening question:

- What do you know about boarding school?

Teacher: We don't know much about Jane's early school days, but I imagine she had gone to school before she moved(1) to her aunt's house, as we know she could read. We also know that she was sent to a boarding school(2) after she had upset(3) Mrs Reed and her cousin John.

أزعجت (3)

المربيات (4)

كسر (5)

زار (6)

: What's a boarding school? **Omar**

Teacher: It's a school where children live as well as study. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and

ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich.

And of course some rich children were taught at home. Governesses⁽⁴⁾,

like Jane, were employed to teach them.

: My cousin, Kamal, had lessons at home. Ali

Teacher: Did he, Ali? Why was that?

: He had to stay at home for six months because he'd broken(5) his back Ali when the school term started. He wanted to go to school, but he'd already made lots of friends and they came round to see him, so it wasn't too bad.

Teacher: Did a teacher come to his house every day?

: No. He was sent an email every day with the work that his friends Ali were doing in school, but my aunt helped him when he couldn't understand it.

Post-listening question:

- How were boarding schools in the past?

إضافي (1)

مستوى (2)

فشل (3)

يناقش (5)

يترك الأمور على حالها (4)



Pre-listening question:

- Do you think it is easy for a student to change schools? Why?

: Dad, I don't want to change schools. I want to go to Dareen school with my friends.

Father : It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lot of different schools before we came back to Egypt. You can make new friends at a different school.

: I like my friends at my school now. Dareen

Father : It is easy to keep in touch with your friends. I always see you on your phone. I lost touch with the people I'd gone to school with.

: If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online course. Some Mother extra(1) lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons. And they say some of these online courses are fantastic. They can understand what your level(2) is and give you work that's just right for you. In fact, you were given a new computer to help you study.

: And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school. Father

: Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from Mother her online teachers.

: But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only failed(3) the test because I'd Dareen been ill when I took it.

OK. OK. We'll leave things the way they are(4) for now and then we can Father discuss(5) it again after your exams at the end of the year.

: OK. Thank you. Dareen

Post-listening question:

- Do you think learning at home today helps students get a good education? Why?

Workbook Text

Dear Ellen,

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am glad(1) to say that I have found one as governess and I am quite happy.

The house is not very large but it is very comfortable(2) and the gardens are huge. Although I earn(3) less money than in my previous(4) job, I am working with kind, friendly people. I have two pupils: an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy.

My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so much energy(5). I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under control and make them happy.

Well, I must continue with my work. I hope to see you soon. Kind regards,

Charlotte

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 They no longercigarettes at sporting events to encourage young people to stop smoking.
 - a) let b) advertise
- c) announce
- d) forgive

مريح (2)

ركسب (3)

سابقة (4)

طاقة (5)

- 2 Thehas signed the book before giving it to me as a present.
 - a) reader
- b) actor

- c) author
- d) maker
- 3 The businessman was found in his car, so we called the police.
 - a) dead

b) died

- c) death
- d) dying
- (4) My friend is used to expensive cars as he was born into a family.
 - a) big

- b) wealthy
- c) comfortable
- d) huge
- **5** I think the internet was the most important invention in the 20th a) year
 - b) decade
- c) century
- d) millennium



cruel قاسِ	unkind and hurting others
governess مربية	a woman who teaches children in their home
housekeeper مدبرة المنزل	a servant who looks the whole house
orphan يتيم	a child whose parents are dead
servant خادم/خادمة	a person who works for people in their house

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرابف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
comfortable	مريح	relaxed/ relaxing	uncomfortable/ annoying	غير مريح و
cruel	قاس	unkind/ wicked	friendly/ gentle	ودود/لطيف
dead	میت	lifeless	alive	حی
employ	يوظف	hire	fire/ discharge	يفصل/يئقيِل
huge	ضخم	enormous/ giant	tiny	ضئيل الحجم
importance	اهمية	significance	insignificance/unimportar	عدم أهمية ١٥٥
nearby	قریب	close	far/ faraway	بعتد
previous	سابق	earlier/ former	later	فيما بعد
realise	يدرك	understand	misunderstand	يسىء الفهم
teach	يدرس/يـُعلُم	educate	learn	يتعلم
unusual	غیر عادی	uncommon	common/ conventional	شائع/تقلیدی
wealthy	ث ری چ	rich" (Stanier Len	poor/ destitute	فقير/معدم



Notes on Vocabulary



(be) born (in/on/into/with)

ولد في ٠٠٠٠٠

(be) born in + (مكان/سنة)

My sister was born in Alexandria.

Ali was born in 2002.

(be) born on + (عام/شهر/يوم)

▶ His mother was born on 21st August 1979.

(be) born into ...

Nora was born into a good family.

(be) born with + (disease)

Merna was born with a small hole in her heart.

Possessive ('s) + Superlative Adjective without (the)

لاتستخدم (the) قبل صفات التفضيل بعد (5) الملكية.

Ahmed Shawky was one of Egypt's most famous poets.

Ali is the world's fastest male swimmer in our team.

work (with/for/in/on/as)

work with يعمل مع

All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.

work for

بعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح (شخص/شركة)

My brother works for a big company in the city.

Egypt works for peace in the Middle East.

work in

يعمل في (مكان/مجال)

work on

▶ I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.

▶The writer said that he was working on a new novel.

▶ My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram newspaper.

بعمل ک (بوظیفة)

(later

latter

later

فيما بعد (ظرف)

I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.

latter

الأخير أو الثاني من اثنين (صفة)

This point is explained fully in the latter part of the chapter.

(quiet

quite

quit

quiet

هادئ (صفة)

We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby.

quite

إلى حد ما/تمامًا (ظرف)

The food in the canteen is usually quite good.

quit

يغادر (يترك العمل) (فعل)

He quit his job after an argument with a colleague.

(a six-year-old girl & six-year-old girls

a six-year-old girl

بنت عمرها ٦ سنوات

I will play a game with a six-year-old girl. She is my daughter's friend.

six-year-old girls

بنات عمر کل منهن ٦ سنوات

All the players in our team are six-year-old girls.

لأحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

second/ minute/ hour/ day/ week/ month/ year/ decade/ century

We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday.

Our company held five-hour meetings.

في حالة وجود كلمة (time) بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (عُ) في حالة المفرد و(ع) في حالة الجمع:

▶ He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.

(gain

earn

gain

یکتسب/یحصل علی شی، معنوی مفید

(خبـرة/معـرفة معلـومات/شهرة/الوزن/السرعة)

I gained a lot of weight while I was on holiday.

يكسب (قوتا أو رزقاً) مقابل عمل

How much do you earn if you don't mind me asking?

(make	force

make + (object) + inf.

I like him because he makes me laugh.

make + (someone/something) + adj.

▶ He wants to make the world a better place.

force + (object) + to + inf.

She forced her daughter to sleep early.

يجبرايجعل

(recognise realise

recognise (v) - d

يُعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته)

I didn't recognise you in your uniform.

realise (v) – d

بدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا)/يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)

- Do you realise you're an hour late?
- ▶ She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

Language Notes

- 1. Do you think learning at home today helps students get a good education?
- كلمة education لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولكن من الممكن أن يأتي قبلها (a/an) إذا قصد نوع معين من التعليم أو التدريب.
- 2. Many of the children from rich or important families had lessons with a teacher who came to their homes instead of them going to school.
 - تسـتخدم instead of کحرف جر ویأتی بعدها v-ing أو Noun ولکن هنا تم اسـتخدام ضمیر المفعول بعد instead of وقبل v-ing لتوضیح الفاعل المقصود.
- In some countries, students can learn at home instead.
 - تستخدم instead كظرف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.
- **3.** In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich.
 - · لاحظ استخدام كلمة like هنا بمعنى مثل لتشبيه شيء بأخر.
- 4. They didn't have it in my local bookshop, so I kept going back to check.
 - لاحظ استخدام ٧-ing بعد الفعل keep.
- My friends were lovely, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible.
 - وأيضًا keep on بمعنى يستمر وتتبع بالفعل مضافا إليه ing.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you go to America or Europe one day, you will the importance of learning foreign languages.
 - a) release

b) realise

c) improve

- d) rationalise
- One hundred pounds is what my uncle a day. He's a mechanic.
 - a) pays

b) wins

c) gains

- d) earns
- When you worka big company, you will have a good salary.
 - a) from

b) for

c) with

- d) as
- He had to go to hospital after an accident, but unfortunately he died
 - a) late

b) latter

c) later

- d) lately
- My father worked a pilot in Egypt Airline Company.
 - a) in
- b) for

c) at

d) as



UNIT 9

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1) She worked as a in the king's palace. She lived with the king's family and taught his children at home. c) governess d) nurse b) headmistress a) servant People who are to animals should be punished. d) kind c) keen b) cruel a) merciful 3 Tourism industry can millions of people such as workers, hotel staffs and travel agents. d) apply c) imply b) rent a) employ Rich people haveto do their housework such as cleaning the floors and washing clothes. d) servants c) lawyers **b)** guards a) gardeners 5 Thisuses long, complex sentences. That is his style of writing. d) composer c) author b) actor a) photographer c) employer d) client b) employee a) customer 7 Don't go near the because it is giving off a lot of heat. d) strength c) power b) energy a) fire 8 She applied for the job which was in Al-Ahram newspaper. d) informed c) broadcast b) advertised a) employedis an investment in the future of a country and its young people. b) Unemployment c) Cruelty d) Education a) Advertisement 1 visit my grandparents very often because they live in a village. d) far c) nearby b) strange a) remote وصية She left good wealth for her grandchild in the will d) dying c) dead b) passing a) orphan 12 My uncle is very, so he never has to worry about money. d) relaxed c) comfortable b) wealthy 13is one of the most important morals accepted by any society. d) Honesty b) Unkindness c) Cruelty a) Wealthy 14 The sharp knife my mother's hand while she was cooking. d) pressed c) hurt b) damaged a) killed 15 Her voice was full of sadness when she talked about her husband. d) wealthy c) rich b) kind a) dead 6 Most of theused nowadays comes from fossil fuels. d) food c) fire

a) strength

a) keep

c) stay

d) continue

b) energy

b) advertise

17 My elder brother chose tohis studies abroad.

_				a good educa	
20 21 22	a) prove b) ap l asked for a/antw	ng able to visit suid ething must have leased Mr Adel. He helpe raded my Englis oprove to weeks to finish	c) gardener uch remote villag c) toldher. c) failed ed me to becom c) taught sh was to live in c) improve the work.	d) pla ges. d) kep d) imp e the best st d) gra England. d) pro	ntar oroved udent I could. duated vide
		crease		d) ext	
(Expressions, idioms, prepo	sitions, derivative	es, synonyms and	antonyms	Ex ercises
24	My father asked me to	friends with	Ali again but Lo	ouldn't fora	ive him.
	a) lose b) m	niss	c) become		
25	We need to for the				1.50
ľ	a) supply b) st				v.
26	After moving to my new h			- 100 - 1 - CO C. 1 - C.	
	THE RESERVE TO THE PERSON OF T	rith			
27	How long have you worke	d Mr Nac	ler? I think he is	a kind emplo	oyer.
	a) with b) fo	or	c) at	d) in	
28	A huge factory like this isn	't rightsı	uch a small villag	je.	
7.	a) as b) at	or Brahmy	c) by	d) for	
Ch	oose TWO correct answe	rs out of the FIV	E options giver	1:	
	How many people did the				nploy" is
_	a) hire b) fire		nd d) leari	n en ske de ar	e) discharge
30	She was often cruel to her	sister. The synon	ym of the adject	ive "cruel " is	
	a) friendly b) gentle	c) lifeless	d) wick	ced	e) unkind
31	She used to wear loose, cor	nfortable clothin	g. The synonym o	of the word "	omfortable"
ī	is				
	a) fitting b) relaxing	g c) gentle	d) eno	rmous	e) close
32	It is unusual to find malls o	f this size in this v	illage. The anton	ym of the w	ord "unusual"
33	isb) former She has two children from is	a previous marri		m of the wo	rd " previous "
	a) earlier b) far	c) later	d) forn	ner	e) destitute
					3.0

UNIT



Past simple passive

المبنى للمجهول في الماضي البسيط

(Active مبنى للمعلوم

▶ Taha Hussein wrote many wonderful novels.

(Passive المجمول)

▶ Many wonderful novels were written by Taha Hussein. Obj. + v. to be + P.P. هم هو المبنى للمجمول بوجه عام هو .

Obj. + (was - were) + P.P. هو الماضى البسيط، هو Obj. + (was - were) + P.P.

المبنى للمعلوم Active

- A lot of tourists visited the Egyptian Museum last week.

Passive Interrogative الاستفهام

- When was the house cleaned?
- Was the house cleaned yesterday?

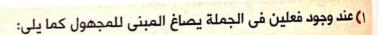
Passive المبنى للمجمول

- The Egyptian Museum was visited by a lot of tourists last week.

النفي Passive Negative

- The house wasn't cleaned yesterday.





- الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها المصدر في المعلوم يسبق المصدر بـ to في المجهول.
- I saw my friend play the game.
 - = My friend was seen to play the game.
 - الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها V+ing في المبنى للمعلوم يبقى كما هو في المجهول.
- I saw my friend playing the game.
 - = My friend was seen playing the game.

٢) في بعض الجمل يكون هناك أكثر من مفعول فيكون المبنى للمجهول كما يلي:

- My father gave me a present for my birthday.
 - = I was given a present for my birthday.
 - = A present was given to me for my birthday.
 - · إذا بدأنا بالمفعول غير المباشر (الشخص) نبنى للمجهول مع تكملة باقى الجملة.
 - ً إذا بدأنا بالمفعول المباشر (الشيء) نبني للمجهول ونضع قبل المفعول غير المباشر حرف جر to أو for.



۲) أى فعل يضاف إليه V+ing) ing يبنى للمجمول بـ (V+ing + P.P.).

I don't like people asking me about my age.

= I don't like being asked about my age.

٤) من الممكن استخدام get بدلًا من v. to be مع بعض الأفعال مثل:

(burnt - married - lost - used - arrested)

My little son was lost in the crowd.

= My little son got lost in the crowd.

ه) الأفعال التي تحول بطريقتين (say - think - report - claim - allege).

It + passive + that + sentence Subject + passive + to + inf./have + P.P.

Present

They think that he likes vegetables. (Active)

= He is thought to like vegetables. = It's thought that he likes vegetables.

They thought he went out alone.

= It was thought that he went out alone. = He was thought to have gone out alone.

٦) يتم تحويل الجملة الأمرية كما يلي .Let + obj. + be + P.P.

Open the gate.

(Active)

Let the gate be opened.

(Passive)

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The letter by post last month.
 - b) sent a) will send

- c) was sending
- d) was sent

- Ali is said to London 2 weeks ago.
 - b) to have travelled
- c) travelled
- d) was travelling
- a) to travel
 - b) were hurt a) could hurt
- c) was hurting
- d) got hurt
- This picture by a good photographer last week.
 - b) was taking

a) took

d) would be taken

- 6 He was asked the match by many of his supporters.

a) play

- b) playing
- d) to have played

Language Exercises)

Choose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or c	i ya nazata ili	
a lovely big	g cake on my last birth	day.	The second second
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	AVCD	U Was give.	d) had given
6 Students to	haln clean the darden	albuna the serios.	O'FWICHERING I
A COLUMN TO THE PARTY OF THE PA	h) were sending	C) Have serie	d) were sent
to the cl	ub to enjoy our time a	fter our exams.	
	Mere taking	C) WCIC taltal	d) have taken
The company	over by the governr	nent in 2007.	And the Lord Sq. II
- \ to alc	h) was taken	L) 13 taken	and secur rake
5 The meeting had to	because of the	e manager's iliness.	
a) postpone	· (5)	b) postponed	
c) been postponed		d) be postponed	57
After the robbery of	the bank, many suspe	ects	
a) were arrested	b) are arrested	c) arrested	d) got arresting
My house was broke	en into yesterday, but i	nothing	
a) wasn't stolen	b) stolen	c) was stolen	d) had stolen
My car didn't work y	well as it for a l	ong time.	
a) was checked	b) had checked	c) wasn't checked	d) dian't check
This road VP	ry often in the past bu	t now many people	e use it.
a) wasn't used	b) didn't use	c) isn't used	a) wash t using
10 I was given two hou	rs my decision	which was so impo	ortant.
a) to be made	b) made	c) to making	d) to make
1 hate when	I am speaking.	and the state of the state of	
a) to disturb		b) to be disturbed	
c) be disturbed	m d service	d) disturbed	
12 It that two p			the reported
a) is reporting	b) is reported	c) reports	d) has reported
The Lighthouse of Al	lexandriaby e	arthquakes in the f	ourteenin century
a) was damaged		b) is damaged	
c) has damaged		d) damages	
Our great football te	am in 1902.	The second secon	
a) formed		b) was formed	and the b
c) has been formed	and the state of t	d) had been forme	
15 It is known that Gust	tavo Eiffel the	Eiffel Tower in 1889).
a) was designed	b) was designing	c) had designed	d) designed
N 1992			

6 I prefer foo	d by my	mother. It is	erv delicious.	
a) to cook	b) cod	king	c) being cooked	d) cooks
7 Don't let yo	ourselfb	y other peopl	e. Try to be cautious	For January 1
a) deceive	b) to b	oe deceived	c) is deceived	d) be deceived
🔞 A good pie	ce of advice was	given	me by my father.	
a) to			c) by	d) of
19 I to	stay up late to 1	finish all my w	ork as a punishmen	t. 124 11 11 15 15 1
			c) was making	
20 My mother	is very proud of	f her new grar	ndson whoI	ast week.
a) had born	b) has	born	c) was born	d) born
21 I th	at we would ha	ve a training f	or using the new ma	chine.
a) has been	told b) told	1	c) was told	d) had told
22 You	to the party wi	th your friend	s. Why didn't you go)?
a) were invi	iting		b) were invited	
c) invited			d) have invited	
23 While I was	on holiday, my	camera	from my hotel roc	om.
a) was disap	ppearing		b) was disappeare	ed systematiles
c) disappea	red		d) had disappeare	ed
24 My husband	d to go	to a remote ar	ea to work there.	
a) had force			b) was forcing	
c) was force	ed	commit At sitte	d) have been forc	ed
25 The soldier	came secretly fo	or fear of	by anyone.	al) being soon
	la) cooi	na	c) had been seen	a) being seen
<u></u>	anyour a lot of	questions, bu	t many of them	as triey were
12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 1				the figure of the second of
100	nswered		b) didn't answer	de la company
			of figure answers	
	TOTAL TOTAL CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE P	~ MARKIN MITCH		
	111/A/ [cl	ne mvileu	C) IIIVICCO	u) was invited
28 The house	. 2011	adianas to iliv	Ulallullouici	
a) built	b) was	built	c) which built	enjoyed that.
29 I remember	to the z	oo when I wa	s young and I really	d) to be taken
a) taking	b) bein	ng taken	c) been taken fortunately no one	was hurt.
30 The bridge	during t	he floods but	fortunately no one b) has been collar	osed
a) was colla				
c) collapses	il ter		d) collapsed	

UNIT 9

2 Fill in the space:

1 For thousands of years, people had wanted to link the Mediterranean Seather the Red Sea to shorten the sea journey from the west to the east. The first the Red Sea to shorten the sea journey from the west to the east. The first the Red Sea to shorten the sea journey from the west to the east. The first the Red Sea to shorten the sea journey from the was not(b)	Canal Care Ernment the
The internet is used every day by millions of people all over the world, but its history is not often mentioned. The internet	n fact, some ider's
Nowadays paper is made from straw of rice, sticks of cotton, rags, linen as grass. First it	. Now
Advertising is a media message helps to sell products or ideas to a target a namely use the buyers. By(a) well informed, consumers can contrast, try and finally, choose the right product. However, some advertisement a false image(b) products. Advertisers promote these products (c) people feel the need to buy. In other words they advertise their people feel the need to buy a feel people feel peop	ents give to products n.
We all know that money is very important for all of us. But, it is also	en to

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

C	hoose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or c	and the company of the	
(1	It's to keep	an animal chained up	like that all the time	meny moth lot 1971,419.
	a) powerful	b) cruel	c) strong	d) kind
2		children will get a goo	d	
	a) development	b) unemployment	c) cruelty	d) education
3	The coach continue	d towith the r	eferee throughout	the match.
	a) accept	b) argue		d) agree
4	Ramy was a/an	, so a woman adop		nths.
	a) orphan	b) murderer	c) dead	d) honest
5	His father's family li	ved in a big house with	nThey we	re very rich.
	a) scientists	b) criminals	c) lawyers	d) servants
6	My father is the	of two books on E	gyptian history.	
ij.:	a) photographer	b) actor	c) author	d) developer
7	They discovered pa	intings dating to the 1	7 th They w	ere painted in 1690.
	a) vear	b) millennium	c) century	a) decade
8	When my neighbou	ır came out of prison, r	no one wanted to	nim.
	a) employ	b) rent	c) imply	d) apply
9	Preparations	by the time the gues	its arrived.	
1 17	a) was finished		was mishing	
	the finished	d and a second	d) had finished	Company of the compan
10	[사람이 보고 보고 보고 있다. 다리 바다 다른 기계	Dracident of the U	nited States in 1960	d) had elected
	a) was elected	b) elected	c) Has ciccios	u) Had elected
11	The wheel t	housands of years ago	b) was invented	
	The state of the s	enozotik so hang 5 ch	d) invented	
			wont out and drov	e my car to work.
12	The windows and th	ne door, then I b) had locked	were locked	d) was locked
13	While I was walking	through the lorest, I	a went lost	d) lost
	a) was losing	b) got lost	thorland of many n	eoples.
14	It that Egyp	t is considered the me	b) is donying	d) can't be denied
	a) can't deny	b) can't be denying was sentyeste	rday I was so happ	y when I received it.
15	An important letter	was sent	c) by me	d) at me
	a) to me	b) with me	elaxed in the exam.	grand a politica con
16	Havingin a	friendly way, I felt so re	c) been treated	d) have treated
in.	a) treated	b) had treated	-/ 2001.	(121)
	N70			

UNIT 9

2 Fill in the space:

I think Egypt is the most attractive country in the world. It is always(a)... by a lot of tourists to enjoy its fine weather. It(b)........... known that Egypt has third of the world's monuments. A lot of tourist sites have(c)............ developed recently to attract more visitors. In addition to that, some other sites are going to(d)........... developed in the near future. It is our role that we should encourage tourism as it is a source of hard currency.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

New fashions in clothing are not created only for the commercial exploitation of women. The change of fashion every year adds spice to life. Year after year, there is a change in colour, model and style. Ham-lines are taken up or let down, waist-lines are taken in or let out, neck-lines are lowered or raised and so on.

Women follow fashion to please themselves and also to please men. The world would be a dull place if women always wore the same clothes. There is no exploitation when designers decide one thing this year and next year another thing. No one is surprised because a huge demand for new styles always exists. Over and above, mass production makes clothes cheap and available to everyone.

These days nearly all men follow fashion. Their hair-style, shirts, suits and shoes cope with fashion. Men who resist fashion are becoming a minority. Changing fashion is not a waste. The clothing industry provides employment and gains for vast numbers who are connected with it such as sheep farmers, designers, textiles mills and stores. The clothing industry spends a lot on industrial research new materials such as nylon, rayon and terylene have been introduced. Also, it is a huge importexport business which is important to the world trade. To appear fashionable gives confidence to us. Fashion contributes a great deal to society.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Fashion adds spice to life because
 - a) it makes people look fashionable
- b) it gives a sweet flavor to our life
- c) it gives a tasteless flavor to our life
- d) it is not tasteful
- Men who resist fashion are becoming a minority". This means that
 - a) men who side with fashion are becoming a smaller number
 - b) men who side against fashion are becoming a smaller number
 - c) men who side against fashion are becoming a little in number
 - d) men who oppose fashion are the majority

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi RZdpqhzzqlg

A good education

- 3 The clothing industry is of great use because a) changing fashion is waste
 - b) men oppose fashion
 - c) it spends a lot on industrial research
 - d) it provides employment and gains for those connected with it
- (4) As a result of the industrial research,
 - a) nearly all men follow fashion
- b) there is no exploitation
- c) new materials have been introduced
- d) mass production makes clothes cheap
- What did the write mean by (vast numbers)?
 - a) few numbers

b) low numbers

c) medium numbers

d) large numbers

B) Answer the following questions:

- When do you think the world would be a dull place?
- In your opinion, what do the majority of men do?
- Why is the industrial research of great use?

A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. It has become clear that the most serious problem, which affects us at the moment, is the increasing number of people who actually inhabit this planet.
- 2. I love music as it is considered one of the most important and powerful things in my life. My life without melodies and harmonies would be totally empty.
- 3. The good morals and values of the Egyptian people appears in times of hardships and crises as we have seen in the crisis of Coronavirus.

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب علينا توفير بيئة آمنة لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة، وأن نهتم بالموهوبين ونوفر الأنظمة التعليمية التي تنمي مواهبهم. ٢- لقد قام الكثير من الكتاب المصريين بكتابة مقالات وكتب عديدة؛ للمطالبة بحقوق المرأة والمساواة بينها وبين الرجل. ٣- التعليم الجيد والمتطور والإبداعي هو حق لكل طفل مصرى؛ حتى ينمو مواطنـًا قادرًا على مساعدة بلاده على مواكبة

Enrich your Vocabulary

inhabit	يسكن	melodies	نغمات
	صعوبات	talents	الموهوبون
	حقوق المرأة	equality	المساواة
women's rights	ىواكب أ	creative	إبداعي
cope with	perm. J.	- 6,64	

- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:
 - A good country is the result of a good education.
 - 2. A meeting you attended and benefitted from it.



Lessons 3&4





Vocabulary on Reading

abilities (n)	قدرات
artist (n)	فنان
bridge (n)	جسر/کوبری
business (n)	عمل تجارى
change (n)/(v) – d	يغير/يتغير
critical (adj)	انتقادى
engine (n)	محرك/موتور
engineering (n)	هندسة
equipment (n)	معدات
experiment (n)	تجربة عملية
keen (adj)	حريص

knowledge (n)	معرفة	
mean (v)	يعنى	
musician (n)	موسيقار	
practise (v) – d	يمارس	
skill (n)	ممارة	
so-called (adj)	الفزعوم/ما يسمى بــ	
solver (n)	حلُال العشاكل	
subject (n)	هادة دراسية/موضوع	
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا	
thinking (n)	تفكير	
understanding (n)	فعم	

Vocabulary on Listening

age (n)	سن/عمر	
bookshop (n)	مكتبة لبيع الكتب	
break (n)	راحة/فاصل	
bullying (n)	البلطجة/التنمر	
check (v) – ed	يتاكد/يفحص	
completely (adv)	تمامئا ثقة	
confidence (n)		
copy (n) (v) (y-ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	
electrician <mark>(n)</mark>	فنى كهرباء	
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	
explain (v) – ed	يشرح	

home-schooled (adj)	المتعلم في المنزل
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
laugh (v) – ed	يضدك
lose (v)	يفقد
lucky (adj)	محظوظ
mind (v) – ed	يمانع
opposite (n)	عکس
otherwise (adv)	وإلا
practical (adj)	عملی
shelf (n)	رف
terrible (adj)	فظيع

Workbook Vocabulary

appreciate (v) – d	يقدِّر
brilliant (adj)	رائع/ذكي
conclusion (n)	استنتاج
description (n)	وصف ۱۹۹۹
discussion (n)	مناقشة ۱۰۰۱
especially (adv)	خصوصنا المدينة

exciting (adj)	مثير	
feelings (n)	مشاعر	
imagination (n)	خيال	
serious (adj)	جاد 🕾 🗀	
45 ch	, publ	
statements (n)	صیاغا <i>ت</i> ر	
	/	



Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a long way from	بعيدًا عن
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
bring success	يجلب النجاح
do sports	يمارس الرياضة
do things	يقوم بفعل أشياء
do well	يؤدى بشكل جيد
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
for a while	لبرهة من الزمن
for instance	على سبيل المثال
get an education	ينال تعليمنا
agree with	يتفق مع
carry on	يستمر
disagree with	لا يتفق مع
good at	جید فی
help with	يساعد في
keep on	يستمر في
kind of	نوع من
learn from	يتعلم من

get on well with	عه معسنيا مغلنتر	
give jobs	پوفر/يعطى وظائف	
give reasons	لابابسأ بهعو	
keep going back	بستمر في العودة	
make electricity	بولًد كهرباء	
make mistakes	برتكب أخطاء	
run open days	يعمل فى أيام مفتوحة	
start school	يبدأ الدراسة	
part <mark>of</mark>	جزء من	
pick up	يلتقط	
ready for	جاهز اــ	
sorry for	أسف على	
support with	يدعم ب	
take part in	یشارك فی	
thanks to	بفضل	
useful for	مفید ا	
way of	طريقة ا_	
way to + inf.	طريقة ا	

Derivatives

Verl	o	Nou	n	Adjective	
appreciate	يقدّر	appreciation	تقدير	appreciative	تقديرى
bully	يتنمر/يبلطج	bullying bully	التنمر/البلطجة متنمر/بلطجي		
complete	یکمل/یتمم	completion	إكمال/إتمام	complete	كامل
conclude	يستنتج	conclusion	استنتاج	conclusive	حاسم
confide	یثق	confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
criticise	ينتقد	critic criticism	ناقد نقد	critical	انتقادى
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
explain	يشرح	explanation	شرح	explanatory	تفسيري
home-school	يتعلم في المنزل	home-schoolin	g التعليم في المنزل	home-school عليم في المنزل	خاص بالن
mean	0 304	meaning	معنى	meaningful meaningless	ذو معنی بلا معنی
practise	يمارس/يتدرب	practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practised	ماهر
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	قابل للحل
succeed	ينجح ١٥٨٤٥١٥١	success	نجاح المحادث	successful	ناجح



Pre-reading question:

- What was the first time you heard about STEM schools?

STEM subjects

Science, technology, engineering(1) and maths were taught in schools long before the invention of the internet. However, we now live in a time when these subjects(2) are more important than ever. This does not mean that



music, history, languages and other subjects are not important. However, understanding(3) the so-called(4) STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future.

Many businesses do not have enough people with knowledge of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are keen to (5) give jobs to young people with these skills (6).

In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run(7) open days at which students can try building(8) car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise(9) maths.

Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects

can be both interesting and fun for boys and girls of all abilities (10). Schools might not have the equipment to build engines, but many now use different experiments(11) and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text. This also helps with critical thinking skills(12) which students can use in other subjects.

It is said that 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need artists, musicians, language teachers and other experts(13), but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem solvers(14) and inventors of the future.

Post-reading question:

- In your opinion, what is the most interesting thing about STEM subjects?

The state of the s
1814

- مندسة (1)
- مواد دراسية (2)
- فهم (3)
- ما یسمی بـ (4)
- يميل إلى (5)
- مهارات (6)
- تدير (7)
- صناعة (8)
- يتدرب على (9)
- قدرات (10)
- تجارب (11)
- مهارات التفكير الناقد (12)
- خبراء (13)
- حلالو المشاكل (14)



Pre-listening question:

- What is your dream job? Why?

- Girl 1: I don't think that everyone needs to go to university. In fact I think it's a waste(1) of time for some people.
- Girl 2: That's true. If you know you want a job doing something practical(2), like being an electrician(3), or if you have great idea for a business, why not start immediately?
- Girl 1 : Exactly.
- Boy 1: I know in some countries, children start school really early, but I think three is too young. I mean, at that age all children want to do is play!
- Boy 2: I'd say the opposite(4). The earlier you start the better. It will give you a good start(5) in life.
- Boy 3: They say that your school days are the best days of your life and I think that's probably (6) true. It's not just about learning, it's also about making friends and learning to help each other.

- مضيعة (1)
- عملي (2)
- ص يعمل بالكهرباء (3)
- النقيض (4)
- بداية (5)
- من المحتمل (6)
- توقف (7)
- عدا ذلك (8)
- مميزات (9)
- على سبيل المثال (10)
- Boy 4: You're right. My parents both loved school and made really good friends there.
- Girl 3: If you're really ill, then it's great that there are ways of learning at home so that there isn't a break(7) in your education. But, otherwise(8), you should go to school.
- Girl 4: I don't agree with you. There are lots of advantages (9) with learning at home. There isn't any bullying, for instance(10).
- Girl 5: I don't think people understand how important education really is for young people. I mean, what kind of a future can you have without a good education these days?
- Girl 6: A lot of people have good lives without doing well at school. I'm completely against this idea that education is the only way to do well.

Post-listening question:

- Do you think a good education can help in finding a good job? Give a reason.

Workbook Reading Text

	People say that it is impossible to succeed ⁽¹⁾ without failure ⁽²⁾ and even the most successful people make	ينجح (1)
	mistakes. As well as this, many people believe ⁽³⁾ in the importance of learning from your mistakes.	فشل (2)
	Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. As a consequence (4), they appreciate (5)	يعتقد (3)
	success more because it hasn't been easy for them. For	كنتيجة لذلك (4)
	instance, when football players lose a match, they are sad but they learn how to improve (6) and do better next time.	يقدر (5)
	On the other hand, success can make you feel positively (7)	يحسن (6)
	about what you are doing and it can give you a reason to keep trying. In addition, many people prefer to forget their	بصورة إيجابية (7)
Ë	mistakes so they can have good memories about the past	من وجهة نظرى (8)
onclusion	In conclusion, although it is possible to have success without failure, from my point of view ⁽⁸⁾ , it is better to fail sometimes in order to appreciate success more.	

Workbook Listening Text

THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA
ثقة (1)
جهد حقیقی (2)
فترة من الوقت (3)
أخطاء (4)
يستمر (5)
upsets me too
ick yourself up

Video Script

Most young people go to school every day and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home instead(1) and their teachers are usually their parents.

We call this way of learning "home-schooling (2)". Home-schooling is useful for young people who live a long way from a school, and it's becoming more popular⁽³⁾ today because students can easily use computers to learn wherever they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick(4) and cannot go to a school every day.

بدلًا من (1)

التعليم بالبيت (2)

معروف (3)

مريض (4)

جدول (5)

يشعر بالوحدة (6)

يمارس الرياضة (7)

A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, rather than following a school timetable(5). But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't right for everyone. Home-schooled children might feel lonely⁽⁶⁾ because it can be harder for them to make friends. They may not be able to do sports⁽⁷⁾ with other young people either.







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The government that taxes must be increased to pay for public services.
 - a) argued

b) guessed

c) told

d) imagined

Ahmed Ezz that his last film had been very difficult to make.

a) chose

b) explained

d) lost

c) bullied

"Studying at home" means a) learn housing

b) teach schooling

d) homeschooling

c) educate schooling

(4) The young actor's last film was absolutely

d) proud

a) keen

b) interested

c) brilliant

6 My teacher is very as he doesn't like jokes.

d) difficult

a) serious

b) trivial

c) easy

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
change	يغير/يتغير	alter	remain
completely	تمامًا	totally	partially جزئيًا
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly/absolutely	indefinitely بشکل غیر محدد
especially	خصوصنا	particularly	generally عمومنا
exactly	بالضبط	accurately	inexactly بصورة غير دقيقة
exciting	مثير	thrilling	ممل boring/ dull
explain	يشرح/يفسر	clarify	distract/ complicate یشتت/یعقد
realise	يدرك	grasp	misunderstand يسىء نھم
terrible	فظيع	horrible	beautiful جميل

Notes on Vocabulary



(success	successful	is one is disasted and second?
(be) a success = (b	e) successful	ناجح/موفق
▶ His first novel wa	s a success.	
▶ His first novel wa	s successful.	test alboration

HIS HIST HOVEL WA	s successiui.	P. A. 1811	7 : p : c 1
(argue for	argue against	argue with	a selled of
argue for		and the process of the page of the second	^{يناض} ل من أجل/يؤيد
My daughter alw argue against	rays <mark>argues for</mark> women's	rights.	يناضل ضد/يعارض
▶ He argued powe argue with	rfully <mark>against</mark> animal exp	periments.	^{یجادل} مع شخص فی الرأی
Don't argue with	me. Just do what I tell y	ou.	A.(118 4)

(miss

lose

miss

يفوته (شيء)/يفتقد (شخصيًا/شيئًا)

- She missed her family badly when she travelled to London.
- I overslept and missed the train.

lose

يفقد/يخسر

- I've lost the tickets for tonight's show.
- ▶ They played so badly they deserved to lose.

the more ... the more ...

the more the more

كلما ... كلما ...

The more qualities you have, the more jobs you will find.

(bookshop

library

bookshop

مكتبة لبيع الكتب

I'm going to the bookshop to buy books.

library

مكتبة لغرض القراءة أو الاستعارة

You can borrow this book from the library for only 2 days.

Language Notes

- 1. A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them.
 - لا تستخدم the قبل صفات التفضيل بعد 5 الملكية.
- 2. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick and cannot go to a school every day. - كلمة schooling اسم لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- 3. Not all schools have the equipment to do experiments.
 - كلمة equipment اسم لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- 4. In addition, many people prefer to forget their mistakes so they can have good memories about the past.
 - لاحظ استخدام In addition بمعنى بالإضافة إلى ذلك، وتتبع بـ (فاعل+فعل).





-									
Choose	- 1			from	2	2 6	Or	a	•
Chanca	the	COPPECT	answer	ITOIII		U, -	VI	•	
CHOOSE	CIIC	COLLECT	CHILDRA CT						

(1	At home, we are always arguing	each other about which channel t_0
	watch.	

b) against a) for

d) from c) with

I always argue the rights of teachers in Egypt. b) with

a) at d) from c) for

If you want more information about this subject, you can borrow some books from the nearby

b) library a) bookshop

d) embassy c) store

(4) Ithe start of the exam because my bus was late.

b) missed a) lost

d) wasted c) won

5 |my brother a lot. He works in Saudi Arabia.

ALADWA

b) missed a) lost

d) heard c) knew



تواصل مع أصدقائك واستمتعوا معًا بتجربة التعلّم

الترفيهم مع مجتمع الأضواء،

حمَل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال

www.aladwaa.com

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d:
A She always	for a more position 1 c

a) bullies	a more positive r	ole for women in the s	ociety.
c) encourages		b) argues	1808ANI-18
	Nothing W	d) beats	
a) take	. Nothing will make n	ne my decisio	n.
c) reach		b) explain	
AND BUTCH TO	ambalatina in Politici Sal	d) change	The second state of
3 You don't need any	special for t	his sport, just a pair of	running shoes.
a) equipment		b) information	
c) knowledge	The second of the second	d) description	ness had an officer of
4 Could you	your reasons for cho	1700	
a) extract		b) explain	
c) inquire	The second second	d) decline	
5 My daughter is	at writing exciti	ng stories.	
a) keen		b) interested	
c) brilliant		d) proud	
I told the police offi	icer the of th	ne thief who broke into	my house.
a) prescription		b) description	
c) formation		d) dimension	
7 Although hockey is	a fast ands	port to watch, it seems	s violent.
a) clear		b) famous	
c) exciting		d) known	
Overnopulation is a	a/anprobler	n that we face nowada	ays.
a) serious	JANES WEST	b) hard	
<u> </u>		d) agreement	
After a long	with her father, she	was convinced not to	take the job.
And the second s	4.44	b) fight	
a) struggle		d) agreement	
c) discussion	ovovriaht's	nasterpiece but I was v	ery disappointed by it.
	aywright's	b) miscalled	
a) so cold	a spanocol	d) so-called	
c) manacled	is soon as a/an	between sch	ool and work.
f This training progra	amme is seen as a/an	c) argument	d) match
a) bridge	b) agreement	-, a. gairie	

UNIT (9)			
The state of the s	in my students b) explanation oney willall	C/ Dullying	d) doubt
a) bring # If you can't attend	b) solve the wedding, I could g	go	d) lose
a) install 15 Their son had been	b) instill	c) instead	d) instead of
a) terrible	b) terrific	c) pleasant	
(Expressions, idioms	s, prepositions, derivat	tives, synonyms and an	tonyms Exercises
6 We're all very	on sports especial	ly football as we supp	ort Al-Ahly team.
a) lucky	b) keen		
		Modern German. For	, the nouns,
adjectives, and vers	os were highly inflecte b) instead		d) instable
18 What's the best way			
a) of	b) at	c) on	d) to
9 Our book should be	readypubli	cation soon.	
a) at	b) in	c) by	d) for
20 Mariam felt very	when she first a	rrived in New York. Sh	e had no friends.
a) alone	b) loneliness	c) lone	d) lonely
Choose TWO correct a			
21 Can you explain wha	it the poem means? T		rd "explain " is
a) grasp		b) distract	
c) remain		d) change	
e) complicate	ng wan balan alay tanka		
According to the data of the word "definite		ay that pollution is inc	reasing. The syllollyll
a) certainly		b) particularly	
c) generally		d) absolutely	
e) accurately	Internal land		
l've got some very ex	citing news for you. 1	The antonym of the w	ord "exciting" is
a) boring		b) dull	
c) thrilling		d) horrible	
e) accurate	Эцэканры (э	Medical Property	



Past Simple

زمن الماضى البسيط

-Alabania		مراجعة سريعة على الماضي البسيط.
Form	 He played footb They took many 	يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل. vall <mark>yesterday.</mark> v photographs <mark>last week</mark> .
Usage	 We went to the She always visit She used to v 	يستخدم للتعبير عن: ١- حدث تم وانتمى فى الماضى. ٢- عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث الآن. ed her aunt when she was ill. visit her aunt when she was ill. ٢- ترتيب الأحداث وتتابعها فى الماضى. ١b and met my friends.
Negation	didn't + inf.	•They didn't take many photos last week.
Interrogative	 (Wh-word) + did + subj. + inf.? = What did he play yesterday? Did + subj. + inf.? (Yes, or no question) = Did you finish your homework last night? 	
Key words	yesterday – last – ago – once – one day – in the past – in ancient times – in + year in the past	

Check Point

a) did

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 Two days ago, I on a picnic with my family. d) was going b) had been c) went a) go 2 He usuallyhis grandfather when he was on holiday. c) was visiting d) visited b) visit a) visits 3 My football team won the match and I a goal. d) was scoring c) have scored b) score a) scored (4) Our brave soldiers the 1973 war against Israel. d) were wining c) have won b) won a) win How longhe stay in Luxor last month? d) done

b) do

c) does

Past Perfect

زمن الماضي التام

Form	Subject + had + P.P.
Form	 I/He/They had attended the match before going to the party.
Alec of Garage Mile	Subject + hadn't + P.P.
Negation	 I/He/They hadn't studied the lessons well so the teacher was very angry.
art or son	(Wh-word) + had + subject + P.P.?
Interrogative	• What had you done before sleeping?
Interrogative	Had + subject + P.P.?
- Lipina II (77)	• Had they watched the film by last night?
	Object + (had) + been + P.P.
Passive	 The police had arrested the criminal. (Active) The criminal had been arrested. (Passive)

We use the past perfect to say that an action was completed by an exact past time reference.

١- نستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل بحلول وقت محدد في الماضي.

By last Monday, the painter had painted my whole flat.

We use the past perfect to say that an action was completed before another action.

٢- نستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل قبل فعل آخر.

▶ I found the wallet and the money after I had looked for them

for a long time.

٣- إذا وقع حدثان في الماضي فإن الحدث الذي تم أولًا يكون زمنه ماضيـًا تامـًا والحدث الذي تم ثانيئًا يكون زمنه ماضيئًا بسيطًا.

I sold the house which I had bought last year.



Usage

الاستخدام



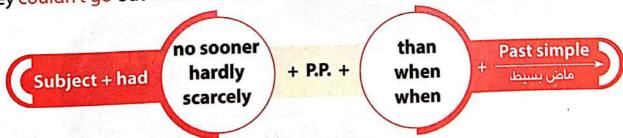
- After he had finished his homework, he slept.
 - عند عدم وجود فارق زمني بين الحدثين يأتي بعد after ماض بسيط.
- After they finished their talk, they immediately went their homes.
 - = As soon as my father called me, I answered him at once.



- ▶ Before we watched TV, we had done our homework.
- ▶ He had finished his work by the time he helped his brother.

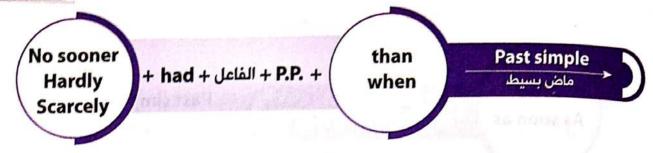


- We didn't watch TV until we had done our homework.
- The house wasn't cleaned until I had done it myself.
- ▶ Hany refused to come until I had phoned him.
- ▶ They couldn't go out until their father had arrived.



- He had no sooner completed his studies than he travelled abroad.
- I had hardly/scarcely bought my needs when I went home.

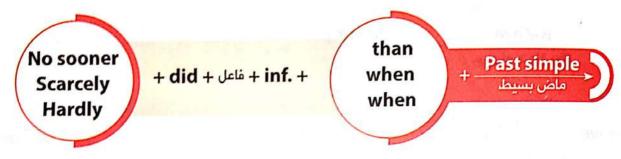




- No sooner had Mido come home than he began to do his homework.
- Hardly/Scarcely had he watched TV when he went to bed.



من الممكن استخدام الماضى البسيط بدلًا من الماضى التام كما يلى:



No sooner did I see the accident than I called the police.

- After he had played the game, he went home.
 - · It was only when he had played the game that he went home.
 - It was not until he had played the game that he went home.

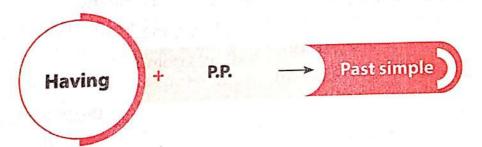


Note the following



past perfect, past simple past simple, past simple past simple, past perfect

- ♦ يستخدم الماضي التام قبل أو بعد when وذلك حسب ترتيب الأحداث.
- When he arrived, we had finished our dinner.
 - = We had finished our dinner before he arrived.
- When we had finished our dinner, he arrived.
 - = He arrived after we had finished our dinner.
- When I had reached the station, the train left. I caught it
- When I reached the station, the train had left. I missed it.
 - نستخدم (V-ing) بعد (After) أو (Before) إذا لم يأت بعدهما فاعل.
- After doing the housework, Menna watched TV.
- Yasser completed his studies before joining the army.
 - 😙 نستخدم (Having) بدون فاعل بدلًا من (After) لكن يأتي بعدها التصريف الثالث.



- Having done my homework, I watched TV.
- 🕄 يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط فقط مع أدوات الربط الزمنية خاصة إذا كان ترتيب الحدثين منطقيًا أو الفارق الزمني بينهما بسيطًا.
- After it got dark, we came back inside.
- ▶ He arrived before we sat down to eat.
 - ◙ إذا جاء في الجملة ثلاثة أحداث (أفعال)، فلا بد أن يوضع الحدث الأقدم في زمن الماضي التام.
- ▶When I returned home, I found out that someone had stolen my money.
 - 🕤 كلمة 🕥 من الممكن استخدامها بدلًا من when كالتالي:
- ▶ When + past simple = On + (v-ing)
- ▶ When I met my friend, I knew what had happened.
 - = On meeting my friend, I knew what had happened.

UNIT 9



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Before the High Dam, some temples had been moved to safer places.
 - a) had built

b) building

c) built

- d) build
- 2 I the exam until I had read it carefully.
 - a) don't answer

b) didn't answer

c) hadn't answered

- d) won't answer
- The bus when I arrived at the station. I didn't catch it.
 - a) left

b) was left

c) had left

- d) has left
- As soon as we the Nile Police, we started our journey.
 - a) was telling

b) tell

c) had told

- d) were telling
- 6 After Ali had left school, he to work in a company.
 - a) goes

b) had gone

c) went

d) was going



Language Exercises

C	hoose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or d	register to entry a	
		difficult to use soc		rila a la f
	a) is	b) has been		d) had been
2	They didn't come to	the cinema with us be		ready seen the film.
	a) have	b) were	c) had	d) are
3	finished my	work, I began to watch	n TV.	
	a) After	b) Before		d) Having
4	When he went to th	e party, his friend	, so he didn't me	et him.
	a) has left	b) had left	c) was leaving	d) leaves
5	I didn't watch the m	ovieI had alre	ady read the story o	of the film.
	a) before	b) because	c) by the time	d) unless
6	By the age of ten, Yo	omnahow to u	ise the internet.	
	a) was learning	b) had learnt	c) had been learnt	d) has learnt
7		home than he heard a		
		b) No sooner		d) After
8	As soon as I met hin	n, I knew Ihim	somewhere before	Towns 187
	a) has seen	b) have seen	c) had seen	d) was seeing
9	They said that the d	river's speedt	he accident.	
	a) had been caused		b) was caused	
	c) had caused			Property and the
10	meeting my	brother, I asked him t	o come with me to	the dentist's.
	a) On	b) When	c) As soon as	a) During
11	When I lived in Lond	lon, I through	the park every day.	aging the griph of
	a) was walking	b) had walked	c) walked	d) was walked
40	Amany was really hu	ungry because she	all day.	(15 p/2 a)
	hasn't gaten	b) hadn't eaten	c) doesn t eat	d) wasn't eating
40	When she saw the fi	re coming out of the f	factory, she	print the S
	\ seroaming	b) had screamed	c) screamed	d) will scream
	My daily shonning	till I had finished	d the housework.	day
		b) doesn't do	c) hadn't done	d) wasn't done
	a) didn't do	voutube com/channe	/IICiEvkl7HaNi D7	dpahzzala (153)

The same of the sa			
15 As soon as she	the book, she w	vanted to see the film.	
	b) had finished		d) finishes
16 Having the	e shopping, mother s	started to prepare lun	
a) do	b) she did	c) done	d) she had done
😙 By the time Nada a	arrived, welu	unch, so there was not	thing for her to eat.
a) had had	b) were having	c) have had	d) had
18 She was late becau	use she to se	t her alarm clock.	
a) had forgotten	b) has forgotten	c) was forgetting	d) forget
19 The football season	na month ag	go.	
a) began	b) was beginning	c) had begun	d) was begun
20 They many	y hours before we ar	rived.	and the same of th
a) had left	b) have left	c) are leaving	d) were leaving
21 He admitted that h	ehis brothe	r's watch.	
a) was breaking	b) would break	c) has	d) had broken
22 The children collec	ted the fruit that	from the tree.	
a) had fallen	b) will fall	c) falls	d) have fallen
23 The house was dirt	y. We it for w	reeks.	Marita g.
a) haven't cleaned		b) hadn't cleaned	
c) weren't cleaning		d) don't clean	
24 The house was quie	et when I got home.	Everyone to b	ed.
a) had gone		c) had been	
25 I had scarcely seen	my daughter	. I asked her to tell me	all about the exam.
a) than	b) that	c) when	d) where
26 It was only	I had found my book	that I felt relaxed.	Jagon
a) while	b) until	c) before	d) when
27 When I visited my n	nother, shen	ne to have lunch with	her.
a) had invited	b) invited		d) has invited
28 Hardlyhom	e, I took off my cloth	es and slept.	
a) I had arrived	b) have I arrived	c) I arrived	d) did I arrive
🤢 Magda denied takir	ng the remote contro	olI threatened	l her.
a) until		c) by the time	d) when
30 washing my	car, I took my family	y out for a drive.	n After
a) While		c) As	d) After

Fill in the space:

Life Skills

Agreeing to opinions

Disagreeing to opinions

- · I agree with you.
- · I couldn't agree more.
- · That is what I think.
- You are completely right.
- I don't agree with you because
- I disagree with you. I think
- I don't think you are right. In my opinion,



STEM Subjects

We know that science, technology, engineering and mathematics are the subjects of what we call "STEM". They are the foundations of the industrial and corporate world.

Through these subjects, students gain technical skills that they will need for a lifelong career. They also can develop their abilities in real-world situations.

STEM is very important because it influences every part of our lives. Science is everywhere in the world around us. Technology is expanding into every aspect of our lives. Engineering is the basic designs of roads and bridges. Mathematics is in every occupation, every activity we do in our lives.

How can STEM help students? We can say that STEM teaching and learning goes beyond the mere transfer of knowledge. It engages students and equips them with critical thinking, problem solving, creative and collaborative skills. It helps them to establish a link between the school, workplace, community and the global economy.

Agreeing and disagreeing about experiences of education:

Imagine your friend and you are discussing experiences of education.



Speaking

Prepare answers for the following questions:

- 1. Do you think that a good education always brings success in a student's later life? Why?
- 2. How do you think new technology has made it easier to learn at home?

Practice

Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Arwa are talking about education.

Mona: I think education is something necessary in the life of a person.

Arwa: I agree with you. I think a good education always brings success in a student's later life.

wona:	
Arwa: Do you think modern technology helps edu	ucation to be more effective?
Mana	da a childigas



UNIT 9

General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	or d:	
1 The king marrie	d his son to a woman	who comes from a	family. They
a lot of money.			are a do o
a) cruel	b) wealthy	c) comfortable	d) huge
My employer wa	as a good man. He'd n	ever anyone.	
	b) helped		d) hoped
3 Despite all the w	arnings, many peopl	e to smoke.	aria-lands only or
a) stop	b) stay	c) leave	d) continue
Vitamins can giv	e you moreif	you're always feeling t	ired.
a) waste		c) fire	
		idents live as well as st	
a) boarding	b) brooding	c) breeding	d) burdening
		ccording to their impo	rtance. The word
	as the same meaning		d) ovolajnina
The state of the s		c) significance	56
		s means that it is c) a success	
		nd about the club of ce	
		c) against	
		ght but now she does.	
a) doesn't		c) wasn't	d) didn't
	the USA 199		Will fall the
a) for		c) since	d) by
	d, heabroad.		
a) travelled	b) had travelled	c) has travelled	d) travels
He had no soone	r bought a car	he sold it again.	
a) when	b) that	c) than	d) then
	cover that the money	/? \rightarrow !!!!	THE PARTY.
a) had disappeare	127	b) had been disap	peared
c) was disappeare	ed	d) was disappeari	ng
44 She wore the sho	es she the pre	evious day.	giller
a) was buying	b) 'd bought	c) has bought	d) 'd buy
15 They me a	at yesterday's meeting	g as we hadn't met for	long.
a) weren't recogn		b) haven't recogni	sea
c) didn't recognise	e	d) don't recognise	n to London.
16 My sister	in Canada for two yea	ars before she moved o	d) had lived
a) has lived	b) was living	c) is living	u) Huu II

2 Fill in the space:

Mohammed Salah is a famous Egyptian player. He(a)........... well-known as a player as well as a kind man. He does a lot of good things to help the poor, so many people love him all over Egypt and also he(b).......... respected all over the world. he played well, his team could win matches and he scored many goals. He is able(d)..... make people happy.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The increasing number of working mothers led to problems like that of "Latchkey" children. A latch is a type of door fastening, or lock, which used to be very common. "Latchkey" children wore keys around their necks to unlock the house when they returned from school, since neither of their parents was at home.

It still happens today, and the old word is still used to mean children whose parents both work. Obviously, this has all kinds of wages of both parents. The children, however, may feel lonely or frightened as a result, and not want to come

home to an empty house.

They may get into trouble in the streets or they may get into dangerous situations at home, when playing with matches, or while preparing something to eat. But the problem goes beyond that of school children. Some mothers go back to work three months after having babies and leave them all day in the care of relations or paid child-minders. Some firms have nurseries, which will look after the children of their staff. These can be very expensive. Some mothers spend most of their wages on paying other people, so that all their work seems pointless.

When parents return home, they are too tired to play with their children. Children feel unloved parental care. Members of the family eat at different times and family entertainment depends on TV. The word "latchkey" may be an old one,

but the "latchkey" child is still very much a problem today, isn't it?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 "Latchkey" children

a) are sometimes frightened to go home

- b) always stay at school after the others have gone home
- c) stay at home and don't go to school
- d) never go home and stay at school
- Even when the mother and father both work, there still seems to be no extra money because
 - a) the parents spend it on their entertainment
 - b) nurseries and child-minders cost a lot
 - c) the mother does not earn much
 - d) children spend a lot of money

UNIT 9

- 3 Child-minders
 - a) are mothers who do not work
 - b) always work in nurseries
 - c) look after children whose parents both work
 - d) are employed to play with the children
- When both parents work, parental care
 - a) is usually bad

b) is not affected

c) is usually better

- d) is always the same
- **6** The opposite of the word "common" is
 - a) known
- b) famous
- c) rare
- d) spread

B) Answer the following questions:

- What kinds of trouble can latchkey children get into?
- How do you think we can solve this problem?
- What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. Technology is a double-edged weapon as it's the ladder by which humanity promotes and develops but it can also be a tool for destruction.
- 2. Happiness and peace of mind depend on the power of controlling one's thoughts and directing them. One has to avoid what is painful.
- 3. Everyone's personality is as different and unique as everyone's fingerprints. We can usually see people's personality in how they behave with other people.

B) Translate into English:

١- تحتفل مصر كل عام باليوم العالمى للطفل فى نوفمبر، حيث يتم إعطاء الجوائز للأطفال الذين ساهموا بنجاح فى الأنشطة المختلفة.
 ٢- فى معظم الدول عادة ما يصاب الرجال بأمراض القلب أكثر من النساء، ويقول الأطباء إن مرض القلب مرتبط بضغوط الحياة اليومية ونظام المعيشة ونوع الأكل.

٢- لقد قامت الحكومة بإعداد خطة طموحة للنهوض بالتعليم ورفع مستوى المعلم وكذلك جذب الطلاب للحضور إلى المدرسة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

double-edged weapon	سلاح ذو حدین	life pressures	ضغوط الحياة
motivate	يدفع/يحث	upgrade	ينهض بـ
fingerprints	البصمات	unique	فرید من نوعه

- 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:
 - 1. The pros and cons of home-schooling.
 - 2. A review of a short story you read.



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

9	ne wara great number of children	who lost their families.
	a) orpnaned	b) organised
	c) recognised	d) reformed
2	The boy tried tohis older brother in	all sorts of ways to be like him.
	a) measure	b) refer
	c) copy	d) avoid
3	Many parents in favour of expandir	ng the arts programme.
	a) arranged	b) rejected
	c) performed	d) argued
4	The manager asked foradvice to h	elp them promote their goods.
	a) exert	b) expert
	c) exist	d) extract
5	Students are under a great deal of pressure	near the of the semester.
	a) conclusion	b) confusion
	c) directions	d) attention
5	Weher gentle and kind actions at f	first, but soon we could see that she had a
	cruel heart.	
	a) believed	b) denied
	c) suspected	d) affected
	Many people lost their life's savings due to	theseconditions.
	a) gentle	b) marvel
	a) kind	d) cruel
0	He hadn't grown up on the island and was	still considered a by many people.
	a) stranger	b) familiar
	c) popular	d) proper
6	Thesunshine blinded us for a mon	nent.
,	a) brilliant	b) dull
		d) hidden
	c) dark Scientists have often observed this phenor	menon, but they cannotit.
9		b) explain
	a) retrain	d) prepare
	c) refer	

a) yourselves b) myself	
c) herself d) themselves	may see a
2 Everyone respects you,?	
a) don't they b) do they	
c) does he d) doesn't he	
13 Our plane leaves from Cairo airport at six o'clock.	
a) a b) an	
c) the d) no article	
11's no goodabout the new system. You will get used to it.	
a) complain b) complained	
c) to complain d) complaining	
15 It's such nice weather - I'd prefer in the garden rather than w	atch TV.
a) to sitting b) sitting	
c) sit	
6 She didn't come on timeshe was held up in a traffic jam.	
a) so b) on account of	
c) because d) although	
17 Hany Hussein is a new star. He has a beautiful singing voicea	talent for
dancing and acting.	115
a) as long as b) as well as	
c) soon d) so that	
B They ate all the food being tasteless.	
a) because of b) in spite of	
c) because d) although	
My trousersvery old. I must buy a new pair.	
a) is b) are	
c) has been d) was	
Besides in a factory, he works as a taxi driver in the evening.	
a) working b) works	

Test 3

Based on Unit 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

c) were cleaned

1 You should check	all your electrical	regularly.		
a) equipment		b) requirements		
c) settlements		d) statements		
2 He needs to have	more practice to be	come a/anin r	nedicine.	
a) trader	b) user	c) practical	d) expert	
This disease mostl	y affects women,	women who are	over 50.	
		c) accordingly		
Football is one of	the most popular	sport in the wor	ld.	
a) team	b) individual	c) group	d) collective	
ธ I think poetry is ve	ery effective at expre	essingand idea	as.	
a) feelings	b) conclusions	c) mistakes	d) failings	
💪 If she felt he was r	ight, she would agre	ee him.	41.	
a) for		1 T 1 1 E T 2	d) with	
7 No sooner	. the noise than we	rushed to the spot.		
a) we did hear				
c) we had heard		d) we heard		
8 We weren't hungr	y because we		2002	
a) were already ea	ting	b) have already eat	en	
	. n	d) already eaten	aliday with us	
c) had already eatMy aunt bought n	ne a lovely gift after	the summer r	ioliday with us.	
a) have spent		D) Sheric		
•		d) had spent		
c) spending Mr Maher	in a bank for 15 yea	rs. Then he gave it up.		
a) has worked		D) Worker		
		d) works		
c) can work A lot of crimes	in this neighbo	ourhood last month.	1	
a) are committed	grayin as a factor of the		5 5 5	
	a	d) committed		
c) were committing. My sister's teeth	by the dentis	t at the moment.		
My sister's teetin	ed	b) are cleaned		
a) are being clean		d) will be cleaned		

UNIT (9)

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options give	Choose T	TWO correct	answers out	of the	FIVE o	ptions	given
---------------------------------------------------------	----------	-------------	-------------	--------	---------------	--------	-------

- 13 He comes from a wealthy family. The antonym of the word "wealthy" is
 - a) conventional

b) giant

c) rich

d) poor

e) destitute

- W Your room is huge compared to mine. The synonym of the word "huge" is
 - a) enormous

b) tiny

c) minor

d) wicked

e) giant

15 Fill in the space:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People have been writing about strange worlds and travelling to space for thousands of years. Parts of the famous Arabic story *One Thousand and One Nights* might be described as a kind of science fiction. But science reality started to influence how we all lived in the nineteenth century. This was a time when many exciting new things were invented: steam trains, the telephone, electricity, photographs and much more. The writer Jules Verne looked at nineteenth century technology and imagined how it could be improved to do amazing things. He wrote about people travelling to the centre of the earth, to the moon or deep under the sea. Many people consider Verne to be the first true science fiction writer. In 1895, the writer HG Wells saw technology differently. He wrote about the possible dangers of technology. His book includes *The Time Machine*, in which the hero travels into a dangerous and unpleasant future. Other writers also thought that technology could be bad. Aldous Huxley's Brave New World is about a future in which people are produced in factories. But not all science fiction writers saw technology as bad. Authors such as Isaac Asimov often wrote about a future in which science can solve our problems.

Science fiction has evolved with technology. In the 1960s, space was being explored for the first time. This gave science fiction writers ideas for what explorers might find in space. strange worlds and unexplained mysteries, such as in the novels of Arthur C. Clarke. More recently, many science fiction stories have been about robots. Could they become more intelligent than people? Should we use them or could they start to take over and rule the world? In science fiction, anything is possible.

A)	Choose	the correct	answer	from a,	b,	cor	d:
----	--------	-------------	--------	---------	----	-----	----

- In what way was Isaac Asimov different to many science fiction writers?
 - a) He was optimistic about science.
 - b) He was pessimistic about science.
 - c) He only wrote about space.
 - d) He only wrote about robots.
- - a) technology is good
 - b) technology is bad
 - c) anything might happen
 - d) there are never any problems
- What does the underlined word "This" refer to?
 - a) Changes in science fiction.
- b) Changes in technology.

c) The new year.

- d) Space exploration.
- What does the phrasal verb "take over" mean?
 - a) To become people.

b) To steal things.

c) To get control of.

- d) To hide.
- 20 Through his writing, the writer Isaac Asimov imagined that science canour problems.
 - a) put solutions to

b) put hinders to

c) prevent

d) enlarge

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21 How did HG Wells describe technology in his book The Time Machine?
- 22 Why has science fiction changed over time?
- 28 Do you think that science fiction will always be popular? Why/Why not?
- 🙉 Translate into English:

- إن ارتفاع معدل ارتكاب الجرائم بين الشباب يعتبر من أخطر المشكلات التي تواجه الدولة والتي يجب علينا جميعـُــا أن نتصدي لها بكل حزم حتى نستطيع أن نحيا في مجتمع آمن.

😘 Translate into Arabic:

A job should not just be a source of money. It should also be a path for selfdevelopment. A very important factor is to find a job in a field you enjoy.

86 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Has technology improved our world and our lives?





Revision (3) Units 7, 8 & 9





Vocabulary on Reading

alarm clock (n)		منبه
apps (n)	40	تطبيقات
at least (adv)	210	على الأقل
blog (n)		مدونة
button (n)		ن <i>ر</i>
click (v) – ed		ينقر على
correctly (adv)		بشكل صحيح
damage (v) – d – (n)	يدمر/ يتلف/تلف
decide (v) – d		يقرر
driverless (adj)	ahek	بدون قائد
engine (n)		مدرك/موتور
expert (n)		خبير
extra (adj)		إضافي
familiar (adj)		مألوف/معتاد
feedback (n)		تغذية راجعة
finally (adv)	OX.	فى النهاية
forms (n)	an again	أشكال/أنماط
fortunately (adv)		لحسن الحظا

frighten (v) – ed	يخيف
hands (n)	عقارب الساعة
immediately (adv)	في الحال/فورًا
loud (adj)	مرتفع الصوت
pollution (n)	تلوث
popular (adj)	محبوب/شعبی
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
recognise (v) – d	يتعرف على
relaxed (adj)	مسترخ
respond (v) – ed	يرد/يجيب
result (n)	نتيجة
special (adj)	خاص
test (v) – ed	يختبر
traffic (n)	المرور
understand (v)	بنحم
vehicle (n)	مركبة
warn (v) – ed	يحذر



Vocabulary on Listening

believe (v)	يعتقد/يؤمن
caller (n)	متصل
carefully (adv)	بعناية
fall (v)	يسقط
freeze (v)	يجمد عود الكامران بداده
guest (n)	ضيف ۱۹۵۱ میلاد د

heat (v) – ed	يسخن
kill (v) – ed	يقتل
pick up (v)	يلتقط
research (n)	بحث
right (adv)	على صواب
rule (n)	قاعدة

Expressions, Phrases 🚷 Prepositions

be a lot easier to do	يصبح أكثر سهولة لكى
be able to	قادر على
be free to text	يمكنه إرسال رسائل نصية
be fun to use	من الممتع استخدامه
born in	و'لد في
bring in	بخات المجانعة
cause less pollution	يحدث تلوثًا أقل
choose the best way	يختار أفضل طريقة
decide not to	يقرر ألا ٢٠٠٠ ١٠٠٠
do all the work for	يقوم بكل العمل من أجل
	يعرف كيف
forms of	أشكال لـ
	فكرة ان
idea of	أمام
in front of	

يتعلم كيف learn how to		
make a loud noise عالية		
make it faster to	يسرع من	
pay for	يدفع ثمنا لـ	
put inside	يضع بداخل	
respond to	يجيب عن	
slow down	يبطئ	
take a long time	يستغرق وقتنا طويلا	
take to	يأذذ إلى	
حدث في الهاتف talk on phones		
يستغرق منا بعض الوقت لكى take us some time to		
بسافر حول travel around		
wait for	ينتظر	
worried by the idea of	قلق من فكرة أن	



dalia's blog.hello.org

In today's lesson, my teacher brought in different forms of technology from the past. He said, "Find out how these things work, and then give me your feedback."

First, my group were given an old alarm clock. Clocks usually have two or three hands, but this one had an extra red hand. "If you use it correctly, it will make a loud noise," the teacher said. "You must move the red hand to the time that you want to wake up." It took us some time to understand how to move it, but finally the alarm worked. It was very loud. If I heard that noise in the morning, I would wake up immediately!

Next, we were asked to find our school on an old map of the city. "You should look for the name of our street in the list on the back of the map," the teacher said. "If you find square G5 on the map, you can see where our school is."

After that, my group were given an old camera and a film. "You must put the film inside the camera," my teacher said. That was really difficult. If we did it wrong, it would damage the film. Fortunately, Hana in my group had helped her father use an old camera and so she knew what to do. Then we clicked the button on the camera lots of times and asked the teacher if we could see the results. "If you take the camera to a special shop, they will show you the photos," said the teacher. "But you must pay for that, and you must wait for some time until you can see them." We decided not to do this!

In my opinion, some old technology is fun to use, but I'm pleased we have apps on our phones today. I think that most things are a lot easier to do these days!

Dalia

Units (7, 8 & 9)





Driverless cars

People born in ten years from now will probably never learn how to drive. Why? Because our cars won't need drivers and computers will do all the work for us. There are already driverless cars in many places, but at the moment, they are only being tested. The computers they use must be able to recognise other vehicles, respond to people and things in the road, and know when the car must slow down or stop.

For some people, the idea of a car without a driver is a frightening thought. However, experts say that 90% of accidents are because of mistakes made by people. Often it is because people are talking on their phones or feeling tired. With driverless cars, people are free to text, or even sleep, without danger. The computers in driverless cars should also make it faster to travel around cities because they will choose the best way. They will also cause less pollution because there will be less traffic. But how safe are these cars? Some people say that they do not work well in bad weather. So far, there have been at least 12 accidents with driverless cars in America (although 11 of these were caused by other cars). So, it might take a long time for people to feel relaxed enough to read a book while they travel.

In the near future, driverless cars will probably become as familiar as the cars of today. In the past, people were also very worried by the idea of cars with engines. In the nineteenth century in England, when cars became popular in England, the law said that a man had to walk in front of them with a red flag to warn people. The law didn't change until 1896.

Listening Text

Presenter: Hello, welcome to Stay Healthy, our weekly look at health and hygiene. In today's programme, we're taking calls from students. They have questions

about hygiene in the house for our guest expert. This week we're pleased to have with us Dr Amal El-Aziz from the Cairo University Hospital. So, our

first caller is Lamia from Tanta. Hello, Lamia.

Lamia: Hello, doctor. Sometimes when I eat, my food falls on the ground. But my

friends say there is a five second rule: "the food will be OK to eat if you pick

it up before five seconds". Is that true?

: I'd say the opposite, Lamia. You mustn't eat any food if it has fallen on the Dr Amal

ground. Bacteria will already be on it. So I'd advise you to put that piece of

food in the bin immediately.

Presenter: OK, now our next callers are Hamid and Leila from Hurghada. They're

brother and sister.

: Hi, I'm Hamid. I always tell my sister that she doesn't wash her hands very Hamid

well, but she doesn't believe me.

:Yes, because he says I have to wash my hands really carefully. But if I use Leila

soap, it will kill the bacteria on my hands, won't it? So soap and water

should be enough.

Dr Amal : OK, so there are two points here. Firstly, it's very easy to wash your hands,

> but research shows that 95% of people do not wash their hands correctly. Secondly, soap doesn't kill bacteria. The reason we have soap is that it helps to take the bacteria from your hands. So your brother is right, Leila. Remember, you should always wash your hands very carefully with soap

and a lot of water.

Presenter: Now we have Maya from Cairo.

Maya: Hello. My mother says I must always clean the table before we eat. But if

the table looks clean, it won't have bacteria on it, so I don't understand

why. Can the doctor tell me?

Dr Amal :Your mother is right, Maya. You can't see bacteria, so you should clean

your table even if it looks clean.

Presenter: Finally here's Omar from Alexandria.

Omar : Hello doctor, is it true that if you freeze food, it kills the bacteria on it?

Dr Amal : I don't think so, Omar. Bacteria do not always die when you freeze things.

When you cook frozen food, you must always heat it to about 75°C or

more. Then you know the bacteria have gone.

Presenter: Thank you, that's all we have time for, but I think we have all learned a lot

about how to stay healthy today.

Workbook Exercises

Choose the corre	ect words to complete	e the sentences:	
1 Omar has a new	W on his smart	phone to understand f	oreign languages.
u/ cirac	D) app	c) internet	d) click
The students an	swered all the question	sin the and ther	checked their scores.
a) ICCUDACK	D) Invention	c) quiz	d) computer
wy dad uses	if he doesn't kno	ow which road to take.	record in secret
a) venicie	b) app	c) translation	d) GPS
4 In the future, w	e will have the	to travel to space for ϵ	our holidays.
a) technology	b) invention	c) internet	d) robot
5 Kamal	his homework when h	ne went to the cinema.	
a) had finished	b) finished	c) was finishing	d) would finish
6 You ma	ake a loud noise in the	library. We will get into	trouble.
a) can	b) should	c) mustn't	
7 If Magda	a language course,	she would be able to s	peak to foreigners.
a) do	b) will do	c) did	d) would do
What would yo	ou do if your friend	an accident?	
a) have	b) would have	c) has	d) had
When the alarr	n rings, we th	e building.	
a) would leave		c) leaving	d) leave
10 I have a bad co	ld, so it is difficult for	me to	
a) breathe	b) research	c) wash	d) respond
We should alw	ays put our plastic rub	bish in a separate	
a) wrap	b) bin	c) dust	d) floor
A new school	in our village	last year.	
Visite -		DI Was Duilt	
مسالمانييا	그리고 왜 그렇게 그리고 얼마나 없다.	d) had been buil	t
Fortunately, th	e police could	, the mystery and catci	i tile Cililliai.
	- \ ma a // 0		u/ uo
a) solve	around in th	at city because the pu	blic transport is cheap
and efficient.			42
The second second second	b) find	c) be	d) say
a) get	margancy so the scho	ool was	1
15 There was an e	h) navigated	c) evacuated	d) injured
a) serviced	help the injured mar	b) first aid	rnt about
a) danger	and the same a british	d) emergency s	ervices
c) hygiene			

6	Complete the text with the past simple or past perfect form of the verbs in bracket
-	Yesterday, Sayed and Waleed(1)(go) to school by bus, but the back (2)(break) down. When they finally(3)(arrive) at school, the lessons(4)(start). They(5)
3	Complete the sentences with the past simple (active or passive) form of the verbs in brackets:
	 Treasure Island
	8. We (take) Ayman to nospital because he northis arm.

A) Translate into Arabic:

GPS, which stands for Global Positioning System, is a radio navigation system. This system helps land, sea and airline users determine their exact location.

B) Translate into English:

- بلعب التعليم دورًا فعالًا في بناء المواطن القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر؛ لذا يعد استثمارًا بشريـًا في جميع المجالات.

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

Getting good quality information from the internet

How often do you use the internet for school projects and to help with your homework? Some students don't think about where information comes from online. This can be risky because there is a lot of information on the internet which is false. It is important to remember to use websites that you can trust. You should also think about when the information on the website was written. When you are researching history, the information can be old but it can still be accurate. However, if you are looking for something about science and technology or the latest news, you should check the date on the website. It is important to look for the most recent information. Paying attention to the website address is also helpful. If the site is from a government or somewhere like a university, the address finishes gov. or .edu. You can trust these sites. Finally, good websites usually include links to other sites on similar topics. This means you can check the information in more than one place. The most important thing to remember is to think critically. Don't believe everything you read, don't stop at the first website you find and always ask questions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
6	According to the text, a lot of information on the internet is
	a) always trusted b) sometimes trusted
	c) never trusted
2	It's very important to check the date of writing the information because
	a) it tells you about the accuracy of the information
	b) It tells you about the quality of the author
	c) It tells you about the security of the website
	a) it nelps you avoid internet scams
3	Trusted websites do not
	a) provide links to related sites
	b) include the symbol of an organisation
	c) ask you to provide personal information
	d) provide information from different sources
4	Why are links to other sites helpful?
	a) You can find more information.
	b) Other sites are usually better.
	c) Comparing the information is a good way to check.
	d) Both a and c.
5	A lot of information on the internet can be So you shouldn't trust it easily.
	a) legal b) important c) meaningful d) fake
	Answer the following questions:
	Why is it important to check the information you find on the internet?
	How do you think we can have less false information on the internet?
-	How do you think students in the future will find information for school projects?
ir	nd and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:
1.	The children was allowed to play basketball at lunchtime.
2.	You don't look well. I think you shouldn't go to the doctor.
3.	What will you do if you got a bad grade in the test?
4.	You mustn't always respect the school rules.
5.	Jane Eyre was wrote by Charlotte Brontë in 1847.
5.	If my mum will give me some money, I will come to the cinema on Saturday.
7.	Nawal had done CPR before the ambulance was arriving.
3.	I went to university in the US if I had enough money.
h	oose one of the topics. Write an essay of about 150 words. Include reasons
_	your ideas and oninions:
١.	"New technology has made it easier for people to make new friends". Do you
	agree or disagree?
	agree of disagree.

2. "The most important skill we learn at school is how to interact with other people".

Do you agree or disagree?

REVISION 3

The Novel Revision Chapters (7-9) SB Exercises

1 Choose the corre	ect answer from a, l	b, c or d:	Control of the Country of the
There was a/ar	that stoppe	ed us from opening the	gate
a) chain		c) mast	
2 Here's my	I'll buy the old b	ike from you for L.E. 10	0.
a) presentation		c) offer	d) affair
The bird made	a loud and t	hen flew from the trees	
a) voice	b) song	c) cry	d) laugh
There was a thi	ckin the mo	orning and I could not se	e the road
a) sun	b) mist	c) air	d) sound
My uncle lives	near a busy road and	thefrom the c	ars is terrible
a) talk	b) shout	noico	The state of the s
3	ave gotin th	eir shoes because they	were on the beach al
a) rain	b) rock	c) sand	of the same
7 They put a/an	around the c	ar and pulled it from the	d) stone
-,pc	(D) String	el mact	
When there is a	, a judge de	cides if someone did or	d) anchor
	LI CI CI I	e tru	
ne taxi driver	the car arour	nd some holes in the roa	ad ad
w/ Julieu	Disterred		
ne nurse put a	on the boy'	s head because he had	a cut on it
	MINULE		
m the police will	the criminals	soon.	d) cloth
a) reward	b) win	"The Article of the standard of the sec	d) preise
ine tourists cam	ne on to the	when the ship arrived i	d) arrive
a) cabin	b) deck	c) sail	
was not easy t	o swim because the	sea was very	d) mast
			al) la lada
we used a	so that we could	c) flat see in the darkness.	d) high
			A) for so
n. riease can yo	u close that window	c) gun /? B: I can'tit.	d) fence
a) get	b) arrive	c) go	d) reach
		-/ go	OTTESCH .

The sea is very			Jnits (7, 6 & 3)
a) cold My sister played a a) game	b) dangerous	for small children. c) shallow	d) deep
a) game	me and a	everyone laughed.	
Your is bet head	b) sport	c) task	d) trick
a) head	ween your neck and	your arm.	
	III COOLIIA	the same of the sa	d) hand
19 Lina had a/an	on her leg after	the accident.	
/ 11015C	O) Cifficulty		d) illness
People have found a) crash	lots of treasure in a	n oldunde	er the sea.
a) crash	b) wreck	c) trash	d) waste
THAT IS A SECOND OF THE SECOND			

Match and complete the sentences:

1. Captain Flint	a) was hurt in the battle.
2. The fort	b) left the fort with a map and a gun.
3. Captain Smollett	c) made the fort.
4. Ben Gun	d) showed that the pirates wanted a truce.
5. A white flag	e) was full of sand and smoke.
6. Dr Livesy	f) was a little crazy.

3 Answer these questions:

- 1 How did Ben Gun know there were good men inside the fort?
 - a) He knew that the pirates were on the ship.
 - b) He could see the flag.
- Why does Silver get angry with Captain Smollett?
 - a) Smollett didn't want Silver's offer.
 - b) Smollett didn't give him the treasure.
- Why did Gray kill Anderson?
 - a) He was going to hurt Captain Smollett.
 - b) He was going to hurt Jim.
- Who died in the battle?
 - a) Joyce and Hunter.
 - b) Trelawney and Gray.

- 6 How did Jim get to the Hispaniola?
 - a) He swam through some big waves.
 - b) He sailed in Ben Gun's boat.
- **6** Where did Hands and Jim sail the Hispaniola to?
 - a) The north of the island.
 - b) The Cape of Woods.
- How did Jim escape from Hands?
 - a) Jim climbed up the mast.
 - b) Jim fell into the sea.

Read the quotations and answer the questions:

- a) "If you were an honest man, you could come inside. But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after well, or Captain Silver, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand.
 - 1. What do you think Captain Smollett thinks of Silver at this point of the story?
 - 2. What does Silver's reply tell us about him?
- b) "I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship."
 - 1. Who put the boat into the water? What boat did he talk about?
 - 2. Why did he want to go to the Hispaniola?
 - 3. Why was he surprised when he reached the Hispaniola?
- c) "I don't think you can sail this ship. So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you."
 - 1. Who said this?
 - 2. Did Jim help him?
 - 3. Did he really help Jim? What happened to both characters at the end of chapter 9?
- 5 Imagine that you are Captain Smollett. While you are resting in the fort after the attack, write a letter to your wife telling her about what has happened on the island and what you plan to do next.

S REVISION

Test on Revision 3

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1 The room was not	clean, so the dust wa	or d: as making me cough an	d
	≥ 31CGD	-\ la + l	d) sneeze
2 He sat on the chai	r to take his boots		a "ag nada
a) from	b) of	c) off	d) up
3 You may wish to c	onsult a food	specialist for help in pl	anning your diet.
u) chief geney	u) industry	c) allorav	d) cook
4) None of us	the danger we are i	n except Amira.	off Newscaudity
a) releases		b) realises	
c) improvises		d) rationalises	
🔋 I work at a multi-n	national corporation	with 140,000 wo	orldwide.
a) employers		b) owners	
c) employees		d) partners	
The concert was	in all the nation	onal newspapers.	
a) published		b) advertised	
c) sprayed		d) pressed	
If our company of	fered us training, I	to be more emplo	oyable.
a) will go		b) would go	
c) would have go	ne	d) go	
My students didn'	't start to answer the	testI had told t	hem.
a) when	b) after	c) until	d) before
) You smok	e in petrol stations. I	t is very dangerous.	
a) mustn't	b) shouldn't	c) needn't	d) may not
Mona didn't say "h	Hello" when she saw	me. She me.	
a) must have seen		b) must see	
c) can't have seen	ville aut Lucies	d) can't see	
The exam papers	immediately	after the exam.	
a) marked		b) was marked	
c) were marked	in the second of	d) had marked	
2 It is to cor	me with me to the pa	ark. It will be a good tim	ne.
a) forbidden		b) necessity	
c) not allowed		d) advisable	
-, not unovica			

REVISION 3

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given: 18 It was only later that I realized my mistake. The synonym of the word "realized" is

- b) misunderstood
 - a) understood e) generalized
- 49 All drivers should really know how to change a flat tire. The antonym of the word
- "change" is c) clarify
 - b) stay a) alter
 - e) remain d) grasp

Fill in the space:

What about the future? It(a)..... thought that the population will be growing even faster in the next 100 years. Ten billion people may(b).....(b) living on our planet in the year 2100. However, the population of some countries is going down. There(c)..... probably be enough space for everybody, but your grandchildren will be living on an even busier planet(d).....the one we live on today.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was believed that being overweight was healthy but nowadays few people agree to this viewpoint. While many people are fighting the battle to reduce weight, studies are being performed concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of the conclusions of these studies may give us the ability to understand how to deal with weight problems. For example, when several people were asked about their eating, habits in times of stress, 44% said they reacted to stressful situations by eating. Further investigations of both humans and animals indicated that it is not food which relieves tension, but rather the act of chewing. A test showed that extremely fat people have a high sense of taste, and love more flavoured food than thin people. When deprived of the variety of tastes, extremely fat people are not satisfied and consequently eat more to fulfil this need. Exercise has been recommended as an important part of weight-loss programmes. However, it has been found out that mild exercise is a way of losing weight because using the stairs instead of the lift is better in the long run than taking on a severe programme such as running slowly (jogging). Many people find jogging difficult to continue over long periods of time, it also increases appetite.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Compared to fat people, thin people would rather havefood.
 - b) less flavoured c) flavoured
- d) flavourless Mild exercise is a form of exercise.
 - a) violent b) severe
- c) extreme ne downside of jogging is that it

 - a) increases fitness b) increases appetite c) increases health d) decreases appetite
- 19 The word "Further" in the passage means
 - a) more b) super
- c) greater
- d) extreme

d) moderate

- 20 Using the stairs according to a point of view can help inin the long run.
 - a) gaining some weigh

b) losing some weight

c) being fat

d) being satisfied

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- 22 What do you think the best treatment for overweight?
- How does eating relieve tension?

Translate into Arabic:

Parents have an important role to play in shaping their children's characters and modifying their manners.

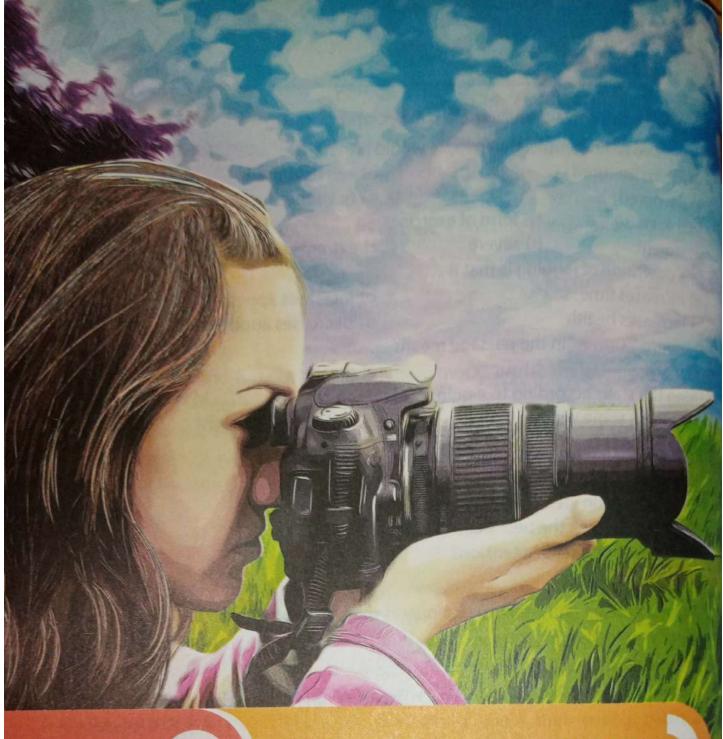
25 Translate into English:

- إن التواصل هو من أكبر التحديات في العلاقات بين الرجال والنساء، والباحثون يقولون إن المشكلة الرئيسية هي اختلاف أساليب التواصل للرجال والنساء.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

How good education changes our life.





Unit 10

What's your job?

(Objectives

Reading : Article about jobs

Writing : An email asking for advice; a personal CV

Listening : Students at a job fair

Speaking: Talking about job opportunities

Language: Reported speech: Statement and questions

Life skills : Self-management: Planning for the world of work



https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg

Warm up

Your Dream Job

Choose one of these jobs and then write why you choose it.











	to three reasons.
Why do you choose this job? Wri	CALL CONTROL OF THE PARTY OF TH
Willy do you cite of	
	WALLEY A PERSON AND A PERSON AN

	The same of the sa
	59000 - 1-0000000000000000000000000000000
No. 2 Sept. 18 Sept.	
Mark Mark	

	VIOVIDA I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I

	(9/OO)2 1 A
900	Internal and the second
	4.44.41.41.41.41.41.41.41.41.41.41.41.41
10.155/e-4: 1012	

	22 Lat 12 Lat 2 La
The state of the s	



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

apply (v) (y-ied)	يقدم (طلبًا)
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب في المهنة
attendant (n)	مئرافق
casualty department (n)	قسم الطوارئ
construction (n)	البناء
contract (n)	عقد
degree (n)	درجة جامعية

industry (n)	قدائس
practical (adj)	Ulac
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
rewarding (adj)	ىئۆ
skill (n)	يدارة
stressful (adj)	مرهق
training (n)	تىرىب

Vocabulary on Reading

challenges (n)	تحديات
chemist (n)	کیمیائی
college (n)	كُلِيَّة
communicator (n)	مُحَاور/متواصل/لبق في الحديث
compassion (n)	تعاطف
deadline (n)	الميعاد النهائى
despite (prep)	على الرغم من
develop (v) – ed	يطور
eligible (adj)	مؤهل/جدير بـ

explaining (n)	شرح
frightened (adj)	خالف
frustrating (adj)	محبط
graduate (v) – d	بتخرج
improve (v) – d	بدسن
incredibly (adv)	بشكل لا يصدق
involve (v) – d	يتضعن
knowledge (n)	معرفة
medical (adj)	طبی

natural (adj)	طبيعى
nursing (n)	تمريض
obviously (adv)	بوضوح
particular (adj)	خاص
products (n)	منتجات
reassure (v) – d	يطمئن

successful (adj)	ناجح
the public (n)	العامة/الجمهور
tiring (adj)	متعبب
university (n)	جامعة
ward (n)	جناح (فی مستشفی)

Vocabulary on Listening

airline (n)	شركة طيران
career (n)	حياة مهنية
caring (adj)	مهتم
certain (adj)	מברר
challenges (n)	تحدیات
characteristics (n)	خصائص/سمات
compassionate (adj)	رحيم
construction (n)	بناء/تعمير
expect (v) – ed	يتوقع
hold (v)	يقيم ورائ المالية
industries (n)	صناعات
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
interesting (adj)	شيق

international (adj)	دولی
non-biased (adj)	غير متحيز
option (n)	اختيار
progressing (n)	التقدم
pursue (v) – d	يواصل
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات موهلات
reward (n)	مكافأة الأخد تأديينا
route (n)	طريق
so far	حتى الآن
trade (n)	تجارة
vast (adj)	واسع/عريض
worry (v) – (y-ied)	يقلق

Workbook Vocabulary

around (adv) (prep)	حول
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية
cycle (v) – d	يقود دراجة
interact (v) – (ed)	يتفاعل

flight attendant	مضيفة طيران
relax (v) – ed	بستريح/يسترخي
weather (n)	سقاسا

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a period of time	فترة من الوقت
at times	فى بعض الأحيان
do training	يۇدى تدريبًا
do a degree	يذاكر للحصول على درجة
do something well	يؤدى شيئًا جيدًا
make furniture	يصنع الأثاث
meet the deadline	تلبية الموعد النهائى
not really	لیس صحیکا
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
break down	يتعطل
care for	یعتنی ب
have a talk with	يتحدث مع
communicate to	يوصتُل إلى

drive to	يقود إلى
essential for	ضروری ∟
good about	جيد بشان
good at	جيد في
interact with	يتفاعل مع
kind of	نوع من
late for	متأذر على
look for	يبحث عن
part of	جزء من
popular with	محبوب لدى
talk to	يتحدث إلى
variety of	تنوع من
work on	يعمل على

Derivatives

	Verb	Noun vision	Adjective Adjective
apply	يطبق	application و applicant للوظيفة	applicable مناسب/قابل للتطبيق
develop	يطور	- تنمية development	متطور developed تطور- نام developing
frighten	يخيف و إومون	fright	خائف frightened خوف مخیف frightening
graduate	يتخرج وور المدا	graduation	متعلق بالدراسات العليا graduate تخرج
		obviousness	واضح obvious وضوح
qualify	يحصل على مؤهل/يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل qualified مؤهل
reassure	يطمئن	reassurance	مُطَمِئن reassuring طمانة
reward	يكافئ	reward	مُخِزِ rewarding مكافئة
stress	يرهق	عصبی stress	مرهق stressful ضغط



Pre-reading question:

- What kind of jobs are popular with young people in Egypt today?

In this week's article called What's your job? We're talking to two young professionals about their work.

Ali works in the casualty department(1) at a busy hospital. He says that, despite(2) the long hours and hard work, the job is incredibly rewarding(3).

Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed caring(4) for people, so it seemed a natural thing to do. I decided to apply to nursing college, did my training(5) and then got a job here.



- قسم الطوارئ (1)
- على الرغم من (2)
- جزية بشكل لا يصدق (3)
- رعاية (4)
- تدريب (5)

וואט 10

Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very stressful⁽⁶⁾ at times. People are sometimes frightened so part of my job is to reassure(7) them, which can be hard.

Is there anything you don't enjoy?

Not really, although I work from 7 a.m. till 6 p.m. every day, which is very tiring(8).

What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?

You need to be a good communicator (9) - a lot of nursing is about listening to people's worries(10) and explaining what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good medical knowledge too, but compassion⁽¹¹⁾ is really important.

Nadia is a scientist and works in a laboratory as a chemist⁽¹²⁾. Why did you choose to become a scientist?

My best subject at school was chemistry so I decided to study it at university. After I graduated(13), I got a two-year contract(14) to work here.

What do you like best about your job?

I'm a very practical(15) person and a lot of my job is looking at trying to improve products (16) or develop new ones. I enjoy the challenges(17) and the variety(18) of my work.

Are there any challenges in your job?

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on several(19) products and each one has a deadline(20) to meet.

What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?

Obviously, you need a degree(21) in science, but you also have to be good at problem solving. It's important to be able to communicate (22) your ideas to other people too and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.

Post-reading question:

- Which job do you think is the most difficult?

مجهد (6)

بطمئن (7)

متعبب (8)

معاور (9)

مخاوف (10)

شفقة (11)

كيميائي (12)

تخرج (13)

عقد (14)

عملی (15)

منتجات (16)

تحديات (17)

تنوع (18)

عديدة (19)

لموعد النهائي (20)

يوصل (22)

Listening Text (1)

pre-listening question:

What are the important qualities that may help you to get a good job?

Narrator Ahmed

tight be useful and that I : Did you find out about any job Man

opportunities(1) at the job fair(2), Ahmed?

Ahmed: I had a talk(3) with a man from an IT company and he said that there were lots

of jobs for young people in his company.

He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a degree (4) in Information Technology and he said 'no'.



Woman: Hello, Sarah. Was the job fair interesting?

: Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.

Woman: Oh, what's that?

: I want to be a flight attendant (5) for an international Sarah

> airline. I talked to a woman from an airline company(6) and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak at least two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French.

> I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that so far she'd been to over 40 - imagine(7)

that!

Narrator Omar

Fatima: Did you get any useful information about work at the fair, Omar?

: Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a trade (8). **Omar**

I spoke to a man who owns a construction company⁽⁹⁾ and I told him that I didn't really like studying and that I wanted to do something

practical(10).



- فرص (1)
- معرض توظیف (2)
- محادثة (3)
- مؤهل علمي (4)
- مضيفة طيران (5)
- شركة طيران (6)
- تخيل (7)
- حرفة (8)
- شركة بناء (9)
- عملی (10)

Fatima: Well, you've always been really good at making and

fixing things. Mum and dad agree, too.

Omar : I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether

I had had any work experience⁽¹¹⁾ and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture⁽¹²⁾ for a few

خبرة (11)

(12) 企計

تعطل (1)

يقلق (2)

مثير (4)

فترة تدريب (13)

years. He said that would be useful and that I should

try and get an apprenticeship(13) in a local company.

Post-listening question:

- How do people find suitable jobs?



Woman: It's a really interesting job.

Ahmed: Do I need to do a degree in Information Technology?

Man 1: There are lots of jobs for young people in my company.

Omar: I'm interested in doing a practical job.

Man 2: Do you have any work experience?

Workbook Listening Text

Samir: Hello, this is Samir. The bus has broken down (1) so I'll be

late for the meeting.

Hassan: Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online

and I really like it.

Dalia: Hi Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't

come to school today, but you don't need to worry(2)

there isn't much homework to do.

Mum : Hi Laila, mum here. I'm working late this evening. There

is some fish and rice in the fridge(3) so you can cook it yourself if you're

hungry.

Tarek : Ahmed, it's Tarek. Have you seen the news? Turn on the TV, because it's

very exciting(4).

Video Script

The world of work is vast(1). There are routes(2) into employment(3) for everyone, with options to study at university, through apprenticeships or progressing through work experience.

Job fairs are often held(4) to give non-biased information about many industries(5).

They can tell you about what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has its challenges⁽⁶⁾ and rewards⁽⁷⁾ which can affect a person's decision(8) about whether to pursue(9) a career. Equally, some characteristics(10) are essential for certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be compassionate(11), caring and have excellent communication skills.

(1)	ضخم

طرق (2)

توظيف (3)

تُعقد (4)

صناعات (5)

تحدیات (6)

مكافآت (7)

قرار (8)

يسعى (9)

سمات (10)

رحيم/عطوف (11)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My brother will for a passport next week as he wants to travel abroad.
 - a) apply
- b) supply
- c) look
- d) employ
- 4 He was in the second year of hisas a carpenter.
- a) attendant
- b) construction
- c) apprenticeship
- d) degree
- Teachers' salaries are not very, but they have a great role in the society.
 - a) stressful
- b) rewarding
- c) practical
- d) qualified
- b) rewarding
- c) stressful
- d) qualified

- The footballer twisted an ankle duringand will miss tomorrow's match.

- a) tiring
- b) experiment
- c) learning

Focus on Vocabulary

apply يتقدم (بطلب)	to make a formal request, usually in writing
apprenticeship فترة التدريب في المهنة	a period of time working in order to learn skills needed to do
attendant مُرافق	a person whose job involves helping the public
casualty department قسم الطوارئ	emergency room in a hospital
construction	the work of building something
contract عقد	a legal agreement
degree مؤهل/درجة علمية	a qualification you receive when you finish university
industry صناعة	 a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services
practical عملی	relating to real activities and events more than ideas
qualifications مؤھلات	skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or wor
rewarding مـُجْزِ	doing something that makes you feel good
skill مهارة	the ability to do something well
stressful مرهـِق	something which causes worry
training تدریب	learning skills you need for a job

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
compassion	تعاطف/شفعة	sympathy/ mercy	cruelty قسوة
construction	ولنباء	building	destruction الهدم
develop	يطور/يتطور	advance/ progress	يتدمور decline
explain	يشرح	analyze/ clarify	یربك confuse
frightened	خائف	afraid/scared	unafraid غير خائف
improve	يحسن	enhance	deteriorate يتدهور
incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق	amazingly/ astonishingly	commonly بشکل عادی أو شائع
involve	يتضمن	include	exclude لا يتضمن
reassure	يطمئن	assure	annoy/ worry يضايق/يقلق
rewarding	مجزٍ	fruitful	unfruitful غیر مثمر



(care

care for = look after

یرعی/یعتنی بـ (بشخص)

▶ He thanked the nurses who had cared for him.

care for/to = want

يريد

Would you care for another drink?

If you'd care to follow me, I'll show you his office.

بهتم بشيء

care about + (something)

The only thing he seems to care about is money.

(although but	despite	so and
although على الرغم من (Subject) + (verb) +	although	ويستخدم كالآتى التناقض ويستخدم كالآتى الاربط يعبر عن التناقض ويستخدم كالآتى + (subject) + (verb) +
unexpected result: نتيجة غير متوقعة	although	main idea: الفكرة الأساسية
► He refused to eat although he was but لكن	but	ورابط يعبر عن التناقض ويستخدم كالآتى + (subject) + (verb) +
(Subject) + (verb) + الفكرة الأساسية :main idea	but	unexpected result: نتيجة غير متوقعة
He was hungry, but he refused to على الرغم من despite Despite + (nou	n) OR (v + ing),	ورابط يعبر عن التناقض ويستخدم كالآتى + (subject) + (verb) +
2 <mark>0 </mark>		ورابط لبيان النتيجة ويستخدم كالآتى:
(Subject) + (verb) +	so	+ (subject) + (verb) +
reason: سبب	SO	result: نتيجة

ande

ورابط لبيان الفكرة الواحدة ... ويستخدم كالآتي:

This woman is very clever and rich.

My sister got up late, so she missed the bus.

My father bought a new car and travelled to Alexandria to meet his friends.

(either

as well & too

أيضًا either

لستنم في الجملة المنفية (في حالة الاتفاق مع شخص في شيء لا يفعله أو لا يحبه)

- A: I don't like cheese.
 - B: I don't like it either.

as well & too أيضًا

بستندمان في الجملة المثبتة (في حالة الاتفاق مع شخص في شيء يفعله أو يحبه)

- A: I love ice cream.
 - B: I love it too/as well.

(apply (for/to/in writing)

apply for + (وظيفة)

She applied for a job as a secretary.

(شركة/شخص/مؤسسة) + apply to

La direction

يتقدم بطلب للحصول على وظيفة

يتقدم بطلب لشركة أو شخص أو مؤسسة

He applied to three universities and was accepted by all of them.

apply in writing

يتقدم بطلب كتابي

You should apply in writing to get the job.

(feel/ seem/ become/ look/ sound

تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال التالية:

يبدو sound /يبدو look /يصبح become /يبدو seem /يشعر feel

- My father seems happy.
- The situation has become serious.

(qualify (in/as/to)

(تخصص معین) + qualify in

يحصل على مؤهل في

My brother qualified in English literature last year.

(وظيفة) + qualify as

یتأهل کـ

My sister qualified as a teacher five years ago.

(be) qualified to

يصبح مؤهلًا لــ

He is qualified to teach English.

Language Notes

- 1. He says that, despite the long hours and hard work, the job is incredibly rewarding.
 او (v-ing) أو (Noun)
- 2. Yes, I love it, although it is very stressful at times.
 اما although نهو أيضنا رابط للتعبير عن التناقض بنفس المعنى ولكن يتبع بـ (subject + verb).
- 3. I've always enjoyed caring for people, so it seemed a natural thing to do.
 الرابط ٥٥ هو رابط لبيان النتيجة بمعنى لذلك ويتبع بـ (subject + verb).
- 4. It's important to be able to communicate your ideas to other people too. تاتى too بمعنى أيضًا في نهاية الجملة المثبتة.
- 5. Part of my job is to make them feel calm, which can be hard. It seemed natural to do. تاتى الصفة بعد الفعل feel و seem مباشرة.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) The car's old, it still runs well.

a) although

d) and c) but

She felt when her team won the championship.

b) happily a) happy

d) happiest c) happiness

My brother decided to apply Alexandria University.

b) at a) with

d) to c) from

When I've finished painting the bathroom, I'm going to paint the kitchen

b) so

b) too a) either

d) so c) neither

She moved back home to careher elderly parents.

b) that a) of

d) with

c) for



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or c	. haddelesych	trotted official and the
Swimming pool	kent a		vheals to
			rs.
2 The of the	new road has now bee	c) engineers	d) designers
a) industry	b) instruction	in completed.	m.K-95-54-54-5211-29
1110	or have legal	n this same	
a) agreements	O) Contracts	_1	d) ideas
y lyly lacifer was well	LO GO The ich	of a hoad toachor offici	ionthy
a) gradated	M 2DECISIIZEU	c) qualified	d) educated
It's a/anlit	tle car. It is ideal for thi	s very crowded city	u) caucatea
a) practical	b) stressful	c) frustrating	d) obvious
The government tr	ies to develop new	in order to reduc	e unemployment.
a) connections	b) communicators	c) degrees	d) industries
Applicants must ha	ave at least air	n architecture.	V-18 1
a) reward	b) degree	c) prize	d) medal
	ager requires highly sp		
a) contracts	b) constructions	c) skills	d) compassion
Looking after small	l children can be very	1-9 10	
a) stressful	b) qualified	c) applied	d) obvious
Employees should	he given extra	before promoting.	
- \ Il antion	la ovnlaining	c) learning	d) training
MAL fullered left school	ol with no formal	so it isn't easy for	nim to find a job.
■ 100 mm = 100 mm	la) auglifications	Contracts	u) Illuustiles
an I I and	raant treatment should	1 do to the uel	pai tillent at nospitais.
	1		W I Cassarance
Many employees c	omplain that their ma	nagers are poor	and bad at giving
clear instructions.			
	b) contractors	c) communicators	u) developers
4) It's that yo	ou should worry about	your children.	d) successful
a) abnormal	b) natural	c) frustrating	one year
The new airport is	currently under)	d) contradiction
a) construction	b) destruction	c) connection	a/an
If you want to travel	b) destruction to different places by p	lane, you should go to	ion adt kan elden 158
. fi+		The state of the s	A TUANT UNE
a) fly line	b) air flyer	c) airline	iolence and poverty.
Showers	who wanted t	O save children from (d) violent
one was a	b) cruel	c) vulgai	(105)
			= 10E

			Path.
UNIT		0	9
	V		الروسا

18 I'm, but I th	nought my d	aughter's	oaintings were	the best.	
a) hiased	b) non-bia	ased	c) based	d) no	on-based
19 This is the hottest d	ay we've had	†t	his summer.	to maine all co	2 00 1
a) already	b) yet		c) so much	d) so	rar
(Expressions, idioms	, preposition	s, derivativ	es, synonyms	and antonyms	Exercises
20 Their work can be st					
a) meet	b) give	c) 5	c) make	d) do) Transfer
2 Marwan should	footbal	ll training a	t least once a	week.	
a) make	b) give	i in a	c) do	d) ta	ke
22 She drove her daug	hters	school e	very day.		
a) for	b) to		c) at	d) fro	om
23 Mohamed Salah is v	ery popular	Li	verpool fans.		
a) for			c) in	d) wi	th
24 McDonald's offers a	wide	of delici	ous sandwiche	es.	
a) various	b) varied		c) vary	d) va	
25 My brother	a degree in	chemical e	ngineering. N	ow, he is a pro	ofessor.
a) did	b) made		c) won	a) ea	rned
26 At, it will tal	ke you 60 m	inutes to re	each the new t	actory.	
a) last	b) lest		c) list	d) lea	
27 The printing machin	es are alway	'S	down. I need	to buy a new	one.
a) sitting	b) breaking	g	c) feeling	d) res	straining
28 Marwan is always lat	e so	chool. He s	hould be pun	ished.	
a) at	b) from		c) for	a) Wi	th
Choose TWO correct a	nswers out	of the FIV	E options giv	en:	
The noun "compassi	on" has the	same mea	ning as		
a) cruelty b) d	estruction	c) worry	d) sympa	athy e) merc	y
The synonym of the	word "incred	dibly" is			Indiana Anna Maria
a) amazingly		b) comm	only	c) fruitfull	y - 12 (1) 15 - 4 (
d) appreciatively		e) astoni	shingly		
The antonym of the v	word "reassu	 is			
The state of the s		The second secon		e) confuse	e the word
a) annoy b) as 2 I was frightened of	being left b	y myself i	n the house.	The synonyn	1 Of the Wes
"trightened" is	Control of the Contro				
		c) afraid	d) cruel	e) scared	The synonym
a) fruitful b) ar B I explained the situat	ion to the b	ank manag	ger and he arr	anged a loan.	1116 37.
of the word explain	eu 13	•		, l. s. mio	rated
a) analysed	of tend t	b) confus	ed	c) deterior	.pprivi73 1
d) excluded	tap!	e) clarifie	d last	hd 6/5/00	



Reported Speech

هناك نوعان من الكلام:

Direct Speech

الكلام المباشر

▶ He said, "I have studied English with my friends."

- هو نص الكلام كما قاله صاحبه دون أي تعديل أو تغيير، ويوضع بين علامات اقتباس.

Indirect Speech

الكلام غيرالمباشر

He said that he had studied English with his friends.

- هو الكلام المنقول عن شخص على لسان شخص آخر.

Use reported speech to talk about what someone says without using their words.

نستخدم الكلام غير المباشر للتحدث عما قاله شخص.

- She said (that) it was a really interesting job.

Statement

الحملة الخدية

لتحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

أُولًا: تحويلات خارج علامات الاقتباس وهي التي ترتبط بفعل القول:

say say

say to tell

said said

says says

says to tells

said to told

- نحذف علامات الاقتباس ونربط بكلمة that ومن الممكن حذفها.

- He said to me, "I have seen an accident in the street."
- = He told me (that) he had seen an accident in the street.

إن الفرق بين said وtold هو وجود المفعول بعد told.

- She said that she had left the house early.
- She told me that she had left the house early. He said his father would travel the next day.

He told me his father would travel the next day.

- من الممكن استخدام كلمات أخرى بدلًا من said مثل: (informed – explained – promised – illustrated, etc.)

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg



الله الله علامات الاقتباس وتشمل الآتى:

ر. تحويلات الضمائر: تحول الضمائر داخل الأقواس حسب الضمائر خارج الأقواس.

---ضمائر المتكلم حسب الشخص المتكلم خارج الأقواس:

mehim/her mine his/hers we they

us them

our their I he/she

my his/her

ضمائر المخاطب حسب المخاطب خارج الأقواس:

you فاعلI - he - she - we - they

you مفعول me – him – her – us – them

your my - his - her - our - their

he – she – it – they – her – him – their – them هي ضمائر الغائب فتبقى كما هي

- Mona said, "I will travel with my family."
 - = Mona said (that) she would travel with her family.

٢- الأزمنة تتحول من المضارع إلى الماضي إذا كان فعل القول ماضيـًا.

Direct	Indirect
play/plays	played
played	had played
am/is/are playing	was/were playing
has/have played	had played
has/have been playing	had been playing
was/were playing	had been playing
will play	would play
shall play	should play
may play	might play
can play	could play
play إلزام must	had to play/must play
play تاكيد must	must play
will have to play	had to/would have to play

٣- تحول الظروف المكانية والزمانية كالآتى:

	T		
yesterday	the day before/the previous day	today	that day
tomorrow	the next (following) day	ago/last	before/the previous
now	then	here	there
tonight	that night	these	those
next	the following	this	that

Examples:

- He said to me, "I will travel to Alexandria tomorrow."
 - = He told me that he would travel to Alexandria the next day.
- She said to her mother, "I phoned you yesterday."
 - = She told her mother that she had phoned her the day before.
- Mona said, "I must study my lessons today."
 - = Mona said that she had to study her lessons that day.
- He said, "I didn't attend the party. I must apologise."
- = He said that he hadn't attended the party and added that he had to apologise.





في الجملة السابقة عند وجود جملتين داخل علامات الاقتباس نربط بينهما بـ and that/and added that.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

100	Moctafa	that he lived near A	Alexandria.	
	W105tara		c) asked	d) wondered
,		h) told	C) askeu	T, Wouldeled

b) told a) said

2 He said that his father him to make bread.

c) had taught b) has taught

a) teach 3 My son told me that he with his friends the next day.

c) had travelled b) would travel a) will travel

4 Hehis mother that he was going out.

c) asked b) said

a) told

5 Hani said that he a new flat yet.

b) hasn't found a) didn't find

d) wasn't found c) hadn't found

Important Notes

الأزمنة داخل علامات الاقتباس لا يتم تغييرها في الحالات الآتية:

١- إذا كان فعل القول مضارعـًا.

d) teaches

d) travels

d) wondered

▶ Hana says, "I am watching TV now."

= Hana says that she is watching TV now.

٢- إذا كان ما بداخل الأقواس حقيقة علمية ثابتة.

Ali said to Hani, "The sun rises in the morning."

= Ali told Hani that the sun rises in the morning.

٢- فعل القول (ماض) مع وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل في الحال أو قبل فترة بسيطة.

▶ He said just now, "No one is allowed to leave."

= He said just now that no one is allowed to leave.

أ- الحالة الصفرية والثانية والثالثة من الحالات الشرطية لـ <mark>f|</mark>.

▶ He said to me, "If you boil water, it turns into steam."

= He told me that if I boil water, it turns into steam.

Eman said to me, "If you had played well, you would have won the game."

= Eman told me that if I had played well, I would have own the game.



لاحــط الحالة الأولى من If تتحول إلى الحالة الثانية.





Ali said, "If I study hard, I will pass the test easily."

= Ali said that if he studied hard, he would pass the test easily.

ه- الماضي البسيط يتحول إلى ماض تام عند وجود the before أو

- و لكن يبقى الماضي البسيط كما هو عند وجود yesterday – last – ago كما هي دون تحويل.

Nadia said that she had finished her work the week before.

= Nadia said that she finished her work last week.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) Ali says that he very tired at the moment.

a) had

b) has

c) is

d) was

2 All the doctors there is nothing wrong with my stomach.

a) were saying

b) tell

c) told

d) say

3 He said that water if we heat it.

a) boiled

b) had boiled

c) would boil

d) boils

4 He said that the moonits light from the sun.

a) got

b) had got

d) gets

5 They told us we worked hard, we would reach our goals easily.

b) if

a) unless

d) so

c) that

UNIT (10)

Language Exercises

Choos	e the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or d	Frankrich (1987) in Louis	
1 Mor	na said that if we	water, it turns	s into steam.	
a) b		b) will boil	c) boils	d) had boiled
2 My	mother	me that she would like	to go out for shop	ping.
a) to		b) asked		d) advised
3 Mar	wa said that Ale	xandria bigge	r than Aswan.	
a) h	as been	b) had been	c) is	d) was being
Tare	k tells me that h	nehis new job.	He doesn't think of	leaving it.
	enjoying		b) enjoy	
c) h	ad enjoyed		d) was enjoying	
Our	teacher	. all of us about the res	ults of the final exa	ms.
a) s			b) wanted to know	
c) ir	nquired		d) told	
6 He	said that it was a	a busy day and that he	visit his frie	nds.
a) d	loesn't	b) hadn't	c) couldn't	d) won't
7 The	doctor told me	that heable to	treat me until the i	next day.
a) v	von't be	b) wasn't	c) wouldn't be	d) hadn't been
8 My	parents promise	ed me that they	me a phone if I suc	cceeded.
a) v	vill buy	b) would buy	c) bought	d) had bought
9 Nol	na explained tha	at they to Turke	y the year before.	
a) h	nave been	b) have gone	c) went	d) had been
10 My	uncle has just sa	aid that heus a	t home.	3.19
a) \	will meet	b) was meeting	c) had met	d) would meet
11 He	said that he had	done all his work		
a) t	the following we	eek	b) the week after	
c) t	he previous wee	ek	d) the next week	1,547 21
12 Mo	naher f	riend Huda was ill and	couldn't go to schoo	
a) 1	told	b) tells	c) asked	d) said
13 Far	ida me i	f she had won the com	petition, she would	d) inquired
a)	asked	b) said	c) told	a) Iliquites

			What's yo	ur Job!
14	My friend told me	a terrible accide	ent on the way hom	ie.
	a) if he saw	and the second	b) what he had se	en .
	c) that he had seen		d) if he coes	Phillips And Also
15	My sister told me th	at sheher hon	nework then	
	a) is doing	b) had done	c) did	d) was doing
16	I informed my teach	er that I wouldn't be a	ble to attend	
	a) the last lesson	and it be a	b) the following le	
	c) the previous lesso	on	d) the lesson befo	
17	He said that the first	t thing hewhe		
1 81	a) does	b) is doing	c) has done	d) did
18	Noha said that her f	avourite drink		
	a) has been	b) will be	c) was	d) would be
19	My mother	when she visited her fa	ather, she found hir	n very ill.
	a) said		b) told	
	c) asked		d) wanted to know	W
20	He said that one of	their ovensthe	e day before.	
	a) was repairing		b) had repaired	
	c) is renaired		d) had been repai	red
21	The tour guide expl	ained that the Nile	the longest riv	er in the world.
	-1	h) had been	C) IS	u) will be
22	Ali told his father a	moment ago that he	to buy a nev	v bay.
		I lead wanted	() vviii vvaiit	
23	She her frie	nd had an accident, b	ut I don't know wh	etner sne was name
30 1	or not.			d) tells
		b) told	c) say	u) tells
<u>ou</u>	Amina said that she	b) told look for a me	chanic when her ca	d) have to
Ť	a) must	b) had to	c) has to	wook
25	I told Akram that I	b) had to to the countrys	ide the following v	veek.
-	a) am travelling		b) will travel	
in in		ulant wo obey	d) had travelled	
00				
20	a) had to			Jugan Barok India A
	c) must have been	zinnat.	d) has to	
	Ahmad said that he	h) have met	c) was meeting	d) met
21	Allineu sala alla	b) have met	c) was meeting	203
	a) has met https://www.	youtube.com/chann <mark>el</mark> /	UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZ	dpqhzzqlg

UNIT (10)
2 Fill in the space: 1 My thirty-year-old brother, Osama, has an excellent job at a bank. He
2 A friend of mine always gives me useful advice. He tells me
One morning, when I got up, I could not find the phone. I had put it in the pocket of my trousers the night
Are people still fond of reading? We wonder
There are different uses of mobiles according to people's opinions. Many young people

just for showing off. https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

Choose the correct at	iswer from a, b, c or d	Add the manner of the second	
1 The noun of the ver	b "reassure" is	• er i gg rengrigazioni svet il taleacurato Joan	
a) assurance	Thread mad become	h) roaccurance	and the property of the
C) I Cassararice III CIII		1 1	
2 Her father is always	angry, so she was alwa	d) reassurancy	
a) frustrating	b) reassuring	c) relayed	d) frightened
3 If there are injured p	eople, they should go t	othe denartm	ent at any hospital.
a) Casualty	intensive	c) fire	d) reassurance
4 Herhair col	our is black, but she dy	ed it brown.	rating 1 - 77
a) human	b) natural	c) usual	d) common
5 The new hotel is cur	rently under	The minister will op	en it next month.
a) damage	b) structure		
6 After, docto			
a) explaining	b) teaching	c) qualifying	d) developing
7 The antonym of the	word "develop" is	the period of	
a) improve	b) progress	c) decline	d) confuse
8 My new car is fast an	nd comfortable. It's eco	onomical,	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
a) either	b) too	c) neither	d) so
9 Hussein said that he	ea special cake	the following day.	7774 1 50 981
a) is making	b) will make	c) was making	d) had made
10 He said that he reall	y his job.		D. I I area
a) loves	b) was loving	c) is loving	d) being love
MAA . = i-tor told moth	at shea new n	novie on TV then.	The state of the state of
a) watched	b) was watching	c) nad wateried	d) watching
A	working for a compu	ter repair company	* . N () The contract of the
	W .	LI VV do	
a) will be 13 Maher said he	flown to London th	C WCCI ~ C. C.	
2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	h h a d		d) was
a) has He said that he	tho	previous Week.	N doing
The Salu that he	b) would do	c) did	d) was doing
a) had doneMy teacher agreed t	hat ita good i	dea to revise every	day.
The second secon	MIII DC		a) was being
a) was 6 I told my friends	to my house easi	ly.	d) that they get
a) if they got	b) where they got	c) how to get	d) that they get
a) if they got	D) Wile.		(205

UNIT (10

2 Fill in the space:

People have different opinions about inventions. Some people(a) most important invention of the last hundred years(b)............ the telephone Other people think air travel is the......(c).....important. They say(d).... you can get on a plane at Cairo Airport and be in London in about four hours,

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people say that women always shout louder asking for equality with men because they have weaker case. They insist that it's nonsense to claim that men and women are equal and have the same abilities. Women are physically weaker and never think intellectually. It is impossible for them to be wives, mothers and successful career women. They go on to say they are unreliable and employers can't trust them. They leave jobs to get married or have children. There is a great deal of truth in the jokes about women drivers. They insist on the fact that women are less practical and less mechanically-minded.

Over and above most women are glad to let men look after important affairs. They know that bearing and rearing children are more important. That's why there are few women in politics and world affairs. They are not excluded; they exclude themselves. The best place for them is the home. Who is the real boss in the household? Certainly not father.

These claims are groundless. In the U.S.A. and Western Europe, people live in woman-dominated societies. There, men are second-class citizens and women should grant men equal status! This proves that women can stand on the same footing with men and can do the most important tasks.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 In the U.S.A. and Western Europe
 - a) societies are dominated by men only b) women are superior to men
 - c) women are second-class citizens
- d) men should grant women status
- 2 According to the passage,
 - a) women are skillful drivers
 - b) women have proved ability in politics
 - c) women are less practical and less mechanically-minded
 - d) women are the boss in every branch
- 3 prevents them from becoming successful career women. a) Proving ability in politics
 b) Being the boss in every branch

- c) Being second-class citizens d) Being wives and mothers

What's your job?

A 100	The jokes about	
4	The jokes about women drivers showed	46-4
	Nomen have present it	triat

- a) women have proved their ability as drivers
- b) women are second-class citizens
- c) women are skillful drivers
- d) women are bad drivers
- The opposite of the word "unreliable" is
 - a) responsible
- b) irresponsible c) untrusted
- d) disloyal

B) Answer the following questions:

- 6 Why do, according to the passage, women shout louder?
- What is considered nonsense according to narrow-minded men?
- 8 What is meant by "They are not excluded; they exclude themselves."?

A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. Sinai is a dear part of our country. It isn't a mere desert in the north east of Egypt. It is a symbol of our struggle against enemies along the history.
- 2. Man is sociable by nature. Because of such a fact, he should pay full attention to everything he does as it affects society around him either positively or negatively.
- 3. Candidates for the jobs must have knowledge of at least one foreign language and also they should have computer skills.

B) Translate into English:

١- يتم بناء السدود لتخزين كميات إضافية من المياه خلفها والتي يتم استخدامها فيما بعد، مثل السد العالي في مصر والذي تم بناؤه لمواجهة أي نقص في المياه.

٢- يجب علينا أن نقلل نسبة التلوث في البيئة عن طريق التوسع في زراعة الأشجار وكذلك الاقتصاد في استخدام الطاقة سواء

٣- لكل فرد في المجتمع حلم يتمنى تحقيقه في المستقبل ويجب عليه العمل بجد والمثابرة لكي يتمكن من تحقيقه.

Enrich your Vocabulary

Racky		رمز
	symbol مجرد	
mere		انتباه/اهتمام
***************************************	attention صراع/كفاح	
struggle		بشكل إيجابي
······································	positively على الأقل	
at least		

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

- 1. Do you have the skills to have your favourite job?
- Saving energy is very useful for our country.



Lessons 3&4





Vocabulary on Reading

career (n)	مهنة
community (n)	مجتمع
confident (adj)	واثق
exciting (adj)	مثير
experience (n)	خبرة
fancy (v) (y-ied)	يتخيل
fire engines (n)	سيارة مطافئ
firefighter (n)	رجل مطافئ
flexible (adj)	مرن
hard-working (adj)	مجتهد
honest (adj)	أمين/صادق
job opportunities	فرص عمل

jobs fair	معرض الوظائف
loyal (adj)	The state of the s
main (adj)	مظلم
necessary (adj)	رئيسى ضرورى
punctual (adj)	منضبط
reliable (adj)	موثوق به
require (v) – d	بللمتر
sirens (n)	مفارات الإنذار
situation (n)	موقف
teammate (n)	عضو الفريق
toy (n)	لعبة أطفال
variety (n)	ر تنوع

Workbook Vocabulary

aged (adj)	فی سن
availability (n)	التوافر
cuisine (n)	فن الطبخ
immediate (adj)	فورى المالية المالية
interests (n)	اهتمامات
office worker	عامل في مكتب

patient (adj)	صبور
pay (n)	اجر
plumber (n)	سباك ه
professional (adj)	محترف
shop assistant (n)	بائع فی محل
vet (n)	طبيب بيطرى



Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

attention to detail	منتبه للتفاصيل
Bachelors Degree in Er	nglish
لغة الإنجليزية	درجة البكالوريوس في الا
Egyptian cuisine	المطبخ المصرى
free-time activities	أنشطة وقت الفراغ
adapt to	يتأقلم مع
find out about	يكتشف/يعرف عن
Kilowicage	معرفة عن
on training course	في دورة تدريبية المست

personal qualities	صفات شخصية
Post Graduate Certific التربية	ate in Education شهادة الدراسات العليا في
take course at	یاخذ دورة فی
plenty of	الكثير من
sit at	يجلس على
suitable for	مناسب ا
work in	يعمل في
work with	يعمل مع

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
A A STATE OF CONTRACT AND A CONTRACT CONTRACT OF THE ACTION OF THE ACTIO	Collingence	واثق confident
	experience جياتية	فوخبرة experienced
схренене	مرن flexible	ا flexibility
	honesty	honest نمین
يعتمد على	1:-000	reliable موثوق
•		various



Pre-reading question:

- Have you got a dream job? What is it?

My Dream Job

Name : Mohammed

Age : 23

Dream job : Firefighter

Skills: You should be:

· a team-player

- reliable(1)
- · a good communicator
- flexible(2)

Workplace: Central Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter⁽³⁾. When I was a little, I played with toy fire engines⁽⁴⁾ and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their sirens⁽⁵⁾ sounding. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was outside, exciting and had a lot of variety.

Firefighting⁽⁶⁾ can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates⁽⁷⁾ and also be happy to adapt⁽⁸⁾ to different situations when necessary.

Do you fancy⁽⁹⁾ a career⁽¹⁰⁾ as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the community come and visit me on Stand 21 at the Jobs Fair⁽¹¹⁾.

Date: 23 May

Time: 9.00 - 14.00

If you're not interested in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what career is out there for you!

جدير بالثقة (1)

- مرن (2)
- رجل الإطفاء (3)
- سيارات الإطفاء (4)
- صفارات الإنذار (5)
- مكافحة الحرائق (6)
- أعضاء الفريق (7)
- تتكيف (8)
- مولع بـ (9)
- مهنة (10)
- معرض الوظائف (11)

Post-reading question:

- Why is the job of a firefighter dangerous?





Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1) I've heard fromsources that the company is in trouble.
 - a) flexible
 - b) confident c) necessary d) reliable
- Many people have left their rural to find work in the city.
 - a) communities b) companies c) families d) states
- (3) Ais someone who belongs to the same team as you.
 - a) college b) teammate c) comrade d) follower
- 4) It was his skill as awhich made his television programme so successful.
 - a) teacher b) connector
 - c) communicator d) caller
- We can offer you working hours to make your work easier.
 - b) confident a) flexible d) fixed c) exciting

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	111025
	مثير	thrilling	boring/ dull	ممل
exciting		adjustable	inflexible/ rigid	غیر مرن
flexible	مرن	trustful/ candid	dishonest	غير امين
honest			disloyal/ unfaithful	غير مخلص
loyal	مخلص	faithful	secondary	ثانوی
main	رئیسی	major/ leading	additional	إضافي
necessary	ضروري	essential	AND RESIDENCE AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY OF TH	غير موثوق
reliable	موثوق فیه	dependable	Tulliende.	0

UNIT (10)

Notes on Vocabulary



aged/at the age of/ in the age of

at the age of = aged

Ùw,

My son could read (at the age of/aged) four.

in the age of

ששנ.

We are living in the age of technology.

(pay

pay for

بدفع مقابل

Mum paid for my driving lessons.

pay somebody for something

لفع لشخص مقابل شي

He didn't even offer to pay me for the ticket.

pay somebody something

سفع لشخص (مبلغنًا من المال)

I paid him \$5 to cut the grass.

pay (in) cash

يدفع (نقدًا)

You'd get a discount for paying in cash.

pay by (cheque/credit card)

بدفع بشيك أو بكارت ائتمان

▶ Can I pay by credit card?

pay somebody to + inf.

بدفع شخصنا لفعل شيء

Rana paid some kids to sweep the floor.

(experience

experiences

experiment

experience

النبرة: ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين (لا تُعد)

Do you have any previous experience of this type of work?

experience(s)

^{مواقف أو} تجارب أو خبرات في الحياة (تُـعد)

▶ I had a bad experience with fireworks once.

experiment(s)

تجربة علمية داخل المعمل (تُعد)

Many people do not like the idea of experiments on animals.

(work job profession career work It is difficult to find work in the present economic climate. عمـل/مكـان العمـل (اسم لا يعـد) وظيفة (اسم يعـد) I'm thinking of applying for a new job. career الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد What made you decide on a career as a vet? profession مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة) He left the teaching profession in 2002 to start his own business.

Language Notes

- 1. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates and also be happy to adapt to different situations when necessary.
 - لاحظ أن adapt to تأتي بمعنى يتأقلم على أو يتكيف مع وتتبع بـ (Noun) أو (V-ing).
- 2. Obviously, you need a degree in science, but you also have to be good at problem solving.
 - هناك بعض الظروف مثل obviously تأتى في أول الجملة غالبًا وتتبع بجملة كاملة (subject + verb).

Check Point (2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Did she pay you taking care of her kids?
 - a) with
- b) in

c) for

- d) to
- 2 She always pays cash. She never uses a credit card.
 - a) in

b) for

c) with

- d) by
- After he retired, he wrote a book about hisas a war reporter.
 - a) experience

b) experimentation

c) experiments

- d) experts
- - b) experiments

a) experts

c) experiences

- d) experience

a) job

- b) work
- c) career
- d) profession

UNIT (10)

Vocabulary Exercises)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	5004 MI - 1000 MI	·II - in the champions	nip tomorrow/
1 A: Do you think	your favourite team	will win the champions	iip tomonow;
B: Sure! I'm very	of this.		
a) exciting		b) loyal	
c) proud		d) confident	on about different
2 A jobis	an event where peo	ople go to get informati	on about different kind
of jobs.		er in au \$5005 mendade - Lei	and the second second
a) fair	b) fare	c) store	d) festival
3 It took	over two hours to pu	ıt out the fire.	
a) fireguards		b) fire alarms	
c) firefighters		d) firearms	
My father has al	ways remained	to his old employer.	
a) confident	b) loyal	c) trusty	d) royal
5 Do you	having a career as a	pilot?	
a) get		b) adapt	
c) know		d) fancy	
Eman has worke	ed with me for two ye	ears and has always been	l
a) punctual		b) necessary	
c) various		d) immediate	
The police took	action wher	n they received the bomb	o alert.
a) hard-working	A	b) flexible	
c) immediate		d) main	
The play is very	popular, so we shoul	d check the of t	he tickets before going
to the theatre.			
a) availability		b) value	
c) loyalty		d) pricing	
ة جوية The air-raid 🧐	sounded غارة	to warn everyone in the	city that an attack was
coming.		A I I	
a) bellows		b) sirens	
c) cries		d) bombs	
10 My parents boos	sted my in so	cience.	
a) loyalty		b) confidence	
c) flexibility	VIII-160	d) interest	
214 https:/	/www.youtube.com/c	hannel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZ	dpqhzzqlg

		What's your Job!
Ali has a little bit of	Working in a hotel	
a) experiences	b) expert	
c) experience	d) avnorimo	nt
Attention to is esse	ential in the job of a scientist.	
a) detail	b) confidence	
c) sound	d) voice	
18 He asked me about the per	rsonalnecessary to b	e a successful lawyer.
a) quantities	b) habits	
c) qualifications	d) customs	
To keep healthy, you should	d make sure you drink	of water.
a) variety	b) quality	
c) plenty	d) penalty	
f The popular desserts in Eg	yptianinclude baqla	wa, basbousa and kunafa.
a) cook	b) cooking	
c) cooker	d) cuisine	
Expressions, idioms, prepo	sitions, derivatives, synonyms	and antonyms Exercises
6 When I moved to a new to	own, the children found it ha	rd to adapt the new
school.	Section 1. Continue de la contratación de la contra	
a) with b) of	c) to	d) on
7 This house would be suital	blea large family.	D 244
b) fo	or c) at	d) with
8 I like your new car. How m	uch did you payit?	d) at
-) f - v	ith Sy	
1	rs out of the FIVE options g	jiven:
Choose TWO correct answe Give me your honest opini	ion. The synonym of the wor	d "honest" is
	b) dishonest	c) inspiring
a) trustful		of the word "exciting"
a) faithful	g exciting to happen. The ar	ntonym of the word "exciting"
	g de outre 1d ≥e	c) bored
is	b) thrilling	
a) inspiring	e) dull	e antonym of the word "loyal"
a) boring	val friend of the Princess. In	e antonym or the
a sue was described as a re-		c) unfaithful
is	b) faithful	
a) disloyal	e) exciting	(215
d) horing		213





Reported Questions

ين تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتى:

asked – wondered – wanted to know – inquired إلى: said إلى: asked – wondered

- ▶ Ali said, "When will you travel?"
- Ali asked (wondered wanted to know inquired) when I would travel.
- ▶ She said to me, "How long have you stayed in Luxor?"
- She asked me how long I had stayed in Luxor.

يهظ أنه عند وجود مفعول لا يمكن استخدام inquired – wanted to know – wondered ونستخدم asked فقط.

٢) إذا بدأ السؤال بفعـل مساعـد أو ناقـص تحـذف علامات الاقتباس ونربـط بـ if أو whether.

- ▶ She said, "Have you enjoyed the journey?"
- She wanted to know if/whether I had enjoyed the journey.

٢) إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام نربط بنفس الأداة.

- The teacher said to us, "Why are you making so much noise?"
- -The teacher asked us why we were making so much noise.

إيحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية (نقدم الفاعل على الفعل) مع ملاحظة حــذف do – does ويصبح الفعـل (ماضيـًا بسيطـًا)
 وتحــذف did ويصبــح الفعــل (ماضيـًا تــامـًا).

- Nour said, "How did you go out in such bad weather?"
- Nour wondered how I had gone out in such bad weather.
 - الضمائر داخل علامات الاقتباس تتحول حسب الضمائر خارجها كما سبق ذكره.
 - ٦) يتغير الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضى داخل علامات الاقتباس إذا كان فعل القول ماضيئا.
- ۷) مع ملاحظة أن الأزمنة داخل علامات الاقتباس تبقى كما هى إذا كان فعل القول مضارعـُــا (ask asks) أو عند وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل منذ فترة قصيرة جدًّا (just now) أو كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة.
 - ٨) تحــول الكلمات الدالة على الزمان والمكان كما سبق ذكره.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) He asked ifhelp hir	m
------------------------	---

a) can he

b) could I

c) I can

d) I could

She asked meshe could help me with my homework.

a) whether

b) weather

c) that

d) what

My father me when I had posted the letter to my sister.

a) wanted to know

b) asked

c) told

d) said

(4) He asked me I had travelled by train to Alexandria.

a) if

b) how

c) where

d) weather

B He wants to know ifher lessons now.

a) she was studying

b) was she studying

c) she is studying

d) is she studying

Important Notes

من الممكن أن يتحول فعل القول said إلى بعض الكلمات حسب معنى الجملة كما يلى:

🐠 في جملة العرض تتحول said إلى .offered to + inf كما يلي:

Subject + offered to + inf.

He said, "Can I help you?"

= He offered to help me.

🐿 في جملة الاقتراح تتحول said إلى suggested كما يلي:

Subject + suggest + (v-ing)

Subject + suggest + that + subject + (should) + inf.

He said, "What about playing football today?"

= He suggested playing football that day.

= He suggested that we (should) play football that day.

😙 في جملة الاتهام تتحول said إلى accused كما يلي:

of + (v-ing)/noun مفعول Subject + accused

The police said to the criminal, "You have killed the woman on purpose."

= The police accused the criminal of killing the woman on purpose.

UNIT (10)

الى denied كما يلى: عن الإنكار تتحول said إلى denied كما يلى:

Subject + denied + (v-ing) Subject + denied that + جملة

- The thief said, "I didn't steal the money."
- = The thief denied stealing the money.
- = The thief denied that he had stolen the money.

ه في جملة الاعتدار تتحول said إلى apologised كما يلي:

Subject + apologised for + (v-ing)
Subject + apologised to + object + for + (v-ing)
Subject + apologised that + جملة

- · Amal said, "I'm sorry I didn't do my homework."
- = Amal apologised for not doing her homework.
- = Amal apologised that she hadn't done her homework.
- He said to his teacher, "I'm sorry for coming late."
- = He apologised to his teacher for coming late.

€ في جملة النصيحة تتحول said إلى advised كما يلي:

Subject + advised (مفعول) + to + inf.

- · My mother said to me, "You should study hard."
- = My mother advised me to study hard.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hend promised me if I needed any help.
 - a) helping b) to help
- c) not to help
- d) helped
- Ali suggested that hego to the theatre that night.
 - a) can
- b) shall
- c) should
- d) must

- Ramy denied the new vase.
 - a) broke
- b) breaking
- c) break
- d) to break

- I apologised to my teacher late.
 - a) that come
- b) for coming
- c) to coming
- d) that had come
- 6 He tried to make me play the match, but I to play it.
 - a) denied
- b) agreed
- c) told
- d) refused

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or	to of wed on beder, (in our shift in
1 wondered if he many points.	The profit of the State of the
a) will score b) could score	c) has scored d) scores
2 She asked me I scored a good go	oal.
a) that b) not to	c) if d) to
3 He told me just now that hea ho	oliday next week.
a) would have b) was having	c) had had d) will have
4 He asked me if to the cinema the	
a) had I goneb) I had gone	c) did I go d) I will go
6 He asked if I knew that	
a) had she been ill	b) she has been ill
c) she had been ill	d) has she been ill
6 Huda asked Halashe was doing	
a) unless b) whether	c) without d) what
7 My grandfather asked me whether I	ice cream or cola.
a) am preferring	b) have preferred
c) preferred	ATTACHER OF THE CONTROL OF THE CONTR
8 Mr Ashraf me if my parents kne	w where I was.
a) wanted to know	(b) Wondered
a) to suited	d) asked
9 He said that hehis grandparent	
10 He told me that he the match to	The state of the s
11 asked Yousra if she was enjoying the s	
12 He wonders why I them all abo	ut our plan. c) was telling d) were telling
a) have told	

1 want to know if at school	ol now.
a) does he b) has he	c) he is d) is he
Nora has just asked me how long	to finish my work.
a) will I take b) I had take	n c) did I take d) I will take
6 Can you please tell me where	
a) is the station	b) the station is
c) has the station	d) was the station
6 The policeman said, " park	your car in this area."
a) Not to b) To	c) Don't d) Mustn't
77 She me to have some rest	to be able to continue my work.
a) said b) advised	c) inquired d) denied
My wife suggested that our son	foreign languages.
a) had studied	b) studying
c) has studied	d) should study
19 Ahmed usually asks me if I	English or French.
a) prefers	b) prefer
c) had preferred	d) could prefer
Mahastealing the money.	She said she didn't steal it.
a) suggested	b) accused
c) refused	d) denied
🛂 He wanted to know the cau	use of the accident was.
a) why b) what	c) which d) how
2 Can you me why your broth	ner left us?
a) ask	b) say
c) tell	d) want to know
When the teacher met us, he	about our exam results.
a) wanted to know	b) told
c) inquired	d) wandered
Eman me about my recent s	salary.
a) said	b) asked
c) inquired	d) explained
Ali suggested that he with u	s to the meeting.
a) go b) goes	c) going d) to go

Pill in the space:

- 1 Our teacher asked us to do research on some birds and animals. He(a).....(a) us some questions to help us. He(b)..... to know if all birds have feathers. Also, he asked(c)..... the bird has the ability to lay eggs or not. He advised us(d)..... read books about animals and birds in the library and on the internet.
- 2 I had an interview for a job last week. The interviewer(a)....... me that he would contact me two days after. I phoned the company and they.....(b).....(b) that they hadn't contacted anybody. I told them that I(c)...... waiting for their call for a long time. They said that the manager had travelled abroad and they(d)..... to contact candidates as soon as he came back.
- When I told my teacher that my family and I were going for our holiday, he asked me some questions. He wanted to know when we(a).............. leave. He asked me(c)..... if we were staying for long. At last, he asked me how we(d)..... travelling.
- 4 From time to time we should have some rest and some exercise. Many people(a)..... that we cannot go on working without stopping. If we did not, we(b)..... make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse. The person(c)...... works a lot may lose the ability to think clearly and won't have the energy to go on working.(d)..... forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed.

Life Skills

Asking about someone's dream job

- What would you like to be in the future?
- Can you tell us about your dream job?
- Could you tell me what your dream job is?
- Why would you like to be a/an?

Answer

- I would like to be in the future.
- My dream job is
- I dream of being because



When you write your CV to apply for a job, you should write the information that makes you acceptable for the job:

1. Your personal information; (name - place of birth - date of birth - address marital statue)

2. List your skills and personal qualities.

3. Write about your experience and the things you have done.

4. Personal statement where you have to describe yourself by including your skills in sentences.

5. List your hobbies, interests and free time activities.



An essay about my dream job

Everyone of us surely has a dream to be achieved in his/her life. As for me, I always dream of becoming a doctor. This is my dream job and I am trying hard to achieve my dream. I would like to be a doctor as I want to help ill people to become healthier. Also, I can help my parents when they are sick. I would really like to be a surgeon like Dr. Magdi Yacoub who has made great achievements in the field of heart surgery.

To become a successful doctor, I think that I have to read a lot of books because doctors are required to know well about the human body. Also, I have to study English and many other languages very hard because most of the medical terms are in English. Above all,

I have to make a constant effort in my secondary study to get into the Faculty of Medicine as it is the first step to be a doctor.

I think I have the qualities to be a successful doctor. I am patient with people and I will be patient with the sick. I am working hard as I like my work and I always want to be better. I also have the ability to love and serve those who are sick or in need.

Talking about job opportunities:

- . What job do you like to join?
- Imagine your friend and you are discussing about the job you would like to join.
- You can visit the website https://www.kaplaninternational.com/blog/how-to-talk about-jobs-and-careers to get more advice about this subject.

Speaking

- Prepare answers for the following questions:
- 1. What would you like to be? Why?
- 2. What qualities do you need to join the job you would like to join?
- 3. How important are qualifications when looking for work?

Practice

• Now	you are ready to complete the following dialogue:
Jack	: Hi, Peter. Can you tell me a little bit about your current job?
Peter	: Certainly. What would you like to know?
Jack	: First of all,?
Peter	: I work as a teacher of English.
Jack	: What sort of problems do you deal with daily?
Peter Jack	: What else does your job involve?
Jack	Do you ever attend meetings?
Peter Jack	Thanks for all the information, Peter. It sounds like you have an interesting job.





General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 If you're looking for a job, you need to bein order to find one quickly. d) learner c) fixed b) fast a) flexible 2 A lot of patience is to look after a child. c) required d) seemed b) explained a) sounded 3 A/Anis someone whose job is to repair water pipes, baths, toilets, etc. d) plumber b) shop assistant c) officer a) worker 4 My son failed the same exam twice. He can't be c) hardworking d) annoyed **b)** careless a) loyal 5 The synonym of the word "main" is d) secondary b) ordinary c) additional a) major 6 She is a new graduate. She doesn't have any experience. d) tiring c) flexible a) practical b) loyal 7 My father paid my new car as he promised me. c) in d) by b) in a) for 8 This shop has a great of shirts. c) variety d) hostility **b)** fidelity a) ability 9 Ali is very rich he has a miserable life. d) and c) but **b**) so a) although 10 They me whether I was ill. b) told a) said d) asked c) wanted to know 11 Our teacher that we would write all those questions. d) asked c) said to b) said a) told 2 She asked me ifan apple. d) getting c) she could get b) she can get a) can she get 13 He didn't me how he would get to London. d) inquire c) say b) tell Sheher father to get the full mark in the next exams. d) promised c) expected b) said a) asked I didn't know the shop was shut or not. d) whether c) unless b) that a) why 66 Huda askedour mother had made for dinner. d) when

a) how

b) why

c) what

Fill in the space:

Satellites are important in modern life. They have(a)...... it easier to forecast the weather. People can(b).....warned about forest fires or floods. Farmers can plan(c)..... they know a storm is coming. Communication satellites transmit television and telephone signals. Up-to-date maps can be produced from satellite photographs. Our life todayd)..... be very different without satellites.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A small crowd had gathered round the entrance to the park. His curiosity aroused, Robert crossed the road to see what was happening. He found that the centre of attraction was an old man with a performing monkey. The monkey's tricks, he soon discovered, were in no way remarkable so, after throwing a few pennies in the dirty hat which the man had placed on the pavement. Robert began to move off, along with other members of the crowd. At this point the man suddenly let out a loud cry.

Everyone turned to see what had happened. The man was bending over his monkey, which now lay quite still on the pavement. He picked up the apparently lifeless body and, holding it close to him, began to weep. A young man stepped forward from the crowd and, taking some money from his pocket, dropped it into the hat. Robert and several other people did likewise, until the pennies in the hat were covered with silver coins. Meanwhile, the man continued to hold the dead monkey in his arms and seemed to take no notice of what was going on around him. A few months later, Robert came across the old man again in another part of the city. The man had a monkey, bought no doubt with the money which the crowd had given him. It did not, however, seem any better at its tricks than the previous one. Robert was pleased to see that the old man was still able to earn a living, though on this occasion, having partly paid for the monkey out of his own pocket, he did not feel inclined to throw any money into the hat.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The mankey's	wner was		
Itle House's a		c) sincere	d) honourable
	h) honest	C) Siriccic	The state of the s

d) one time c) twice b) once a) thrice

UNIT 10

- - a) there was enough money in it already
 - b) he had seen the monkey's tricks before
 - c) the monkey's tricks were not very good
 - d) he knew that the monkey was not really dead
- The man used a to attract the people's attention.
 - a) snake b) donkey
- c) monkey
- - a) stayed without looking

b) stayed without breathing

c) stayed without smelling

d) stayed without moving

B) Answer the following questions:

- 6 Suggest a suitable title to the passage.
- Why did the crowd soon begin to move off?
- What was the old man doing while the crowd threw money into his hat?

4) A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. In fact, we are much luckier than our grandfathers because we enjoy lots of things which have made our life easier, more enjoyable and comfortable.
- 2. To solve the problem of water shortage, the world economises in using water. Another solution is re-using water; this means using water again.
- 3. Most people fail in life, not because they do not know their job, but because they gave up after the first failure. Failures should not discourage you.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- لقد أدت هذه الثورة في استخدام أجهزة الحاسب الآلي والإنترنت إلى التوجه لتركيب أجهزة الحاسب الآلي في كل فصل وربط كل مدرسة بشبكة الإنترنت.
- ٢- كلنا نحمل جوهرة ثمينة داخل الجمجمة ولا أحد يستطيع أن يصدق أنها أعظم وأكثر أهمية من أي جهاز حاسب آلي. إنه المخ والذي بدونه لا يستطيع الإنسان أن يفكر أو يتحرك.
- ٢- مما لا شك فيه أن المياه الملوثة غير صالحة للشرب بل وخطيرة لأنها تصيب الإنسان بالمرض وأيضنا تدمر البيئة والحيوانات والأسماك.

Enrich your Vocabulary

economise	يقتصد	shortage	ص
failure	فشل	discourage	نع/لا يشجع
expansion	توسع	revolution	ره
gem	جوهرة	install	حبايئتبت

- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following topic:
 - 1. A job that you think is rewarding.
 - 2. Skills you need to be employable.

Open General Exercises

	- Acicises
Choose the correct answer from a,	h cord
1 Language learners from u	using single words to short phrases and sentences.
a) graduate	b) regulate
c) separate	b) regulate
2 They an agreement in w	d) protect hich his company would pay them half the money
now and half when the work was	finished
a) contracted	b) distracted
c) contacted	d) affected
The bad weatherour plan	ns for the weekend.
a) repaired	b) reformed
c) appointed	d) frustrated
After the accident, thewe	ere taken to hospital.
a) casualties	b) damages
c) losses	d) shortages
The driver had lost control and the	e car toward the cliff.
a) steeped	b) jogged
c) careered	d) competed
The meaning of this sentence dep	pends on the of the words.
a) part	b) construction
c) section	d) reflection
We are going to carry out the pro	ject despite itsrisks.
a) follower	- 1 - 11
c) correspondent	d) slight
Wearing this stylish suit will make	you feel
a) confident	D) Stiatileiui
	d) exhausted
The report was well-researched a	nd showed a high of accuracy.
	b) angle
a) degree	d) loop
c) curve	ts that their valuables would be safe. b) reassured
ine notel cierk the guest	b) reassured

d) presented

a) insured

c) complained

10 I didn't know where	e for the we	ekend.
a) went		b) going
c) to go		d) he can go
12 I wish I my	friend last week.	
a) will meet		b) to meet
c) met		d) had met
I don't have any idea	ahad the a	ccident.
a) what		b) who
c) where		d) why
4watching t	he match made me	happy, it wasted my time
a) Despite		b) Because
c) Although		d) For
15 The man wasn't	to have a very	good house and a car.
a) too rich		b) rich enough
c) enough poor		d) too poor
6 I was sure that he	to visit us in a	short time.
a) would come		b) will come
c) to come		d) comes
7 They the tru	uth until we had visi	ted them.
a) didn't tell		b) couldn't tell
c) don't tell		d) weren't telling
B They haven't	completed the for	m to apply for the job.
a) never		b) already
c) just		d) yet
9 Mona have	any problem, call m	Walter and Market and American
a) If	ME and the same	b) Unless
c) Should		d) Were
O Ali was said	an accident on the	A TEST DAY SET
	oluow zalgostov sled	
c) that have	DARTING 1	d) having

Test 4 Based on Unit 10

		Based on Unit 10	
Choose the correct ans	swer from a, b, c or d	and the second second	nyels a property
1 In Germany, car	helps to employ a le	ot of moonle	
a) construction	D) Industry	c) makes	d) building
Generally, our childre	n must be treated with	n .	a) ballang
a) suffering	b) compassion	c) cruelty	d) consolidation
Employees must be a	able to get along with	all kinds of people	in situations
which need wisdom.	THE CARLEST WAY	on the angles of	Francisco Co
a) practical	b) rewarding	c) stressful	d) qualified
Army officers have to	do intensive	regularly.	The state of
	b) degree		d) training
Candidates should ha			
	b) clear		
6 Students come from			
a) from		1.6 0000 8.7	d) with
n нь his father	was happy to hear ab	out his success.	NAME OF STREET
a) told	b) asked	c) wanted to know	d) said
No said he	ve to visit us again.		
-Nuould	b) had	c) Will	d) could
a LL inst told my so	on that Ihim a	car next week.	Mile steps of the second
a) would buy	b) was buying	C) Will Duy	d) bought
	her clothes the	l.	t) would clean
Leila said that snea) cleaned	b) was cleaning	c) has cleaned	d) would clean
Tanta fo	r one week. His block	cr abite	there.
a) has been doing	h) does	c) had been doing	a) is doing
a) has been doing Theygoing t	o the library and I tho	ought it was a good it	gea.
2 They going t a) suggested	b) told	c) said	a) ordered
a) suggested Choose TWO correct a	ocwers out of the FI	VE options given:	
Choose TWO correct a The main reason for	NSWels out the Weat	ther. The synonym of	f the word main is
3 The main reason for	living here is the wear		
	b) second	larv	c) minor
	e) depend	dable	ung thio"is
a) major d) leading l bought shoes with f	e) depen	the antonym of the v	vord"tiexible 15
hought shoes with 1	flexible rubber soles. I	dable	c) rigia
a) adjustable	b) depen	dabie	
a) adjustabled) inflexible	e) disloya	11	22
a) Inflexible			

UNIT (10)

Fill in the space:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you had your choice, would you rather sit in an office all day to make a living or work from the comfort of your own home? Nowadays, more and more businesses are allowing employees to work at least part of the week from home. The idea of "telecommuting" isn't that new and for many it's been technically possible since the Internet became widely accessible. Some employers, however, have been less willing to allow the practice for fear that employees who were not being watched would become lazy and undisciplined. Actually, recent evidence has shown that these fears are mostly unjustified and that businesses can actually save a lot of money on rent by converting more of their staff over to telecommuters. In a normal telecommuting situation, a worker will be given assignments and asked to complete them or report on them, as in any other office job.

The major difference is that most communication is done using the telephone, email and instant messaging. Some employers allow workers to choose which hours they will work, others require them to be online during a normal work day. Either way, most telecommuters have the freedom to work from home or wherever else they would like. Yet telecommuters often find that their freedom comes with a cost.

Those who work outside the office may discover that their employers are more willing to ask them to work long or strange hours. In situations where there are other family members at home, it can be difficult to keep work life and home life separate. They don't spend enough quality time with those whom they look after.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 6 What does the word 'telecommuting' mean?
 - a) Travelling on the train.

b) Playing games on the internet.

c) Doing business online.

d) Working from the office.

- What does the underlined words 'quality time' refer to?
 - a) Time spent with children at home.
 - b) Time spent with friends at a café.
 - c) Time spent with employers.
 - d) Time spent with your colleagues at work.
- Which one of the following is the passage mainly about?
 - a) Why people can telecommute more easily today than in the past.
 - b) Why more companies are choosing to allow employees to telecommute.
 - c) The benefits companies can get from having telecommuters.
 - d) The way telecommuters do their jobs from home using the internet.
- What changes a company is likely to make in response to telecommuting trends?
 - a) The concept of a "work week" is disappearing from many people's lives.
 - b) Advertising for new employees on more internet websites than in newspapers.
 - c) Giving out holiday bonuses for office employees.
 - d) Providing employees with new mobiles.
- - a) active
- b) not active
- c) energetic

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21 If you were offered a job as a telecommuter, would you accept it? Why? Why not?
- Why are some employers not in favour of telecommuting?
- 23 How can telecommuters communicate with their employers?

Translate into English:

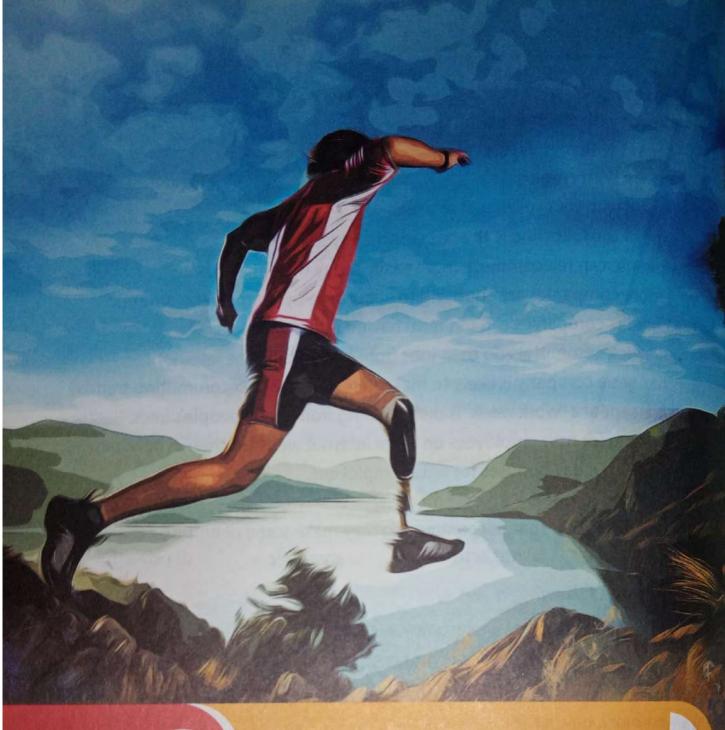
- إن استصلاح المزيد من الصحراء وتطوير طرق الزراعة الحديثة لإنتاج المزيد من المحاصيل هما الحل الإيجابي لمشكلة الزيادة

Translate into Arabic:

It is the responsibility of parents, school and universities to enlighten young people on the destructive effects of drug taking and bad company.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

How we can prepare young people for their future employment.



Unit (1)

Amazing people

(Objectives

Reading : An article about athletes with disabilities

Writing : A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview

Listening : A radio interview about equal opportunities

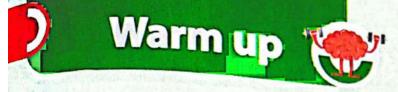
Speaking: Making complaints and polite responses

Language : Relative clauses

Life Skills : Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation



https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg



Famous athletes with disabilities.



- * Arunima Sinha
 - Volleyball Player
- * Ron Santo
 - Baseball Player

- * Anthony Robles
 - Wrestler
- * Karim El-Mosallamy
 - Horse riding- table tennis hand ball

What kind of medal did the Egyptian athlete win?



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

achieve (v) – d	يحقق/ينجز
achievement (n)	إنجاز
activist (n)	ناشط
campaign (v) – ed	يقوم بعمل حملة
compete (v) – d	يتنافس
disability (n)	إعاقة
fighting (n)	قتال
highs and lows (n)	نجاحات وإخفاقات
Kung Fu (n)	رياضة الكونج فو

medal (n)	ميدالية
muscle (n)	عضلة
polio (n)	شْلل الأطفال
powerlifter (n)	لاعب رفع الأثقال
powerlifting (n)	رفع الأثقال
ramp (n)	منحدر
spina bifida	تشقق العمود الفقرى
wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Vocabulary on Reading

affect (v) – ed	يۇثر على
amazing (adj)	مذهل
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
benefits (n)	فؤائد
champion (n)	بطل رياضي
complaint (n)	شکوی

decide (v) – d	يقرر
describe (v) – d	يصف
equal (adj)	متساو
especially (adv)	خصوصنا
event (n)	حدث هام
impact (n)	تاثير
involve (v) – d	يتضمن

media (n)	الإعلام
member (n)	عضو
metal disc	قرص معدنى
opportunity (n)	فرصة
organisation (n)	منظمة
Paralympic (adj)	باراليمبى

personally (adv)	شخصيا
positive (adj)	إيجابى
practice (n)	تدريب
race (n)	سباق
retire (v) – d	يتقاعد/يعتزل

Vocabulary on Listening

actually (adv)	بالفعل
awful (adj)	فظیع
campaigner (n)	مدافع/مؤید
campus (n)	الحرم الجامعى
chance (n)	فرصة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية
dedicate (v) – d	یکرس
determination (n)	تصميم
ensure (v) – d	يؤكد
existing (adj)	موخود
guess (v) – ed	يخمن 19300 -
guest (n)	ضيف/نزيل
inspire (v) – d	يلهم المحادث المحادث

issue (n)	قضية/موضوع
notice (v) – d	يلاحظ
outstanding (adj)	مميز/بارز
paperwork (n)	عمل ورقى
Paralympian (n)	لاعب بارليمبي
physical (adj)	بدنى
podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية
preserve (v) – d	يحافظ
promote (v) – d	يرقى
require (v) – d	يتطلب Ła ongs
sacrifices (n)	تضحيات المائلة محرر
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مجال
challenge (n) (v) – d	تحد/یتحدی
colleague (n)	زمیل عمل
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات
flights (n)	رحلات طيران
lift (v) – ed (n)	يرفع/مصعد

main (adj)	رساسا/سي)	
marketing (n)	نسويق	
owner (n)	ᆌ	
passenger (n)	براي	
snowboarding (n)	التزلج على الجليد	
success (n)	ولبن	

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

above heads	فوق الرءوس
arrange an interview	يرتب مقابلة
come fourth in the co	ompetition يأتى فى المركز الرابع فى الم
do/play sport	يمارس الرياضة
get around	يتجول
get from to	ينتقل من مكان إلى
give a talk	يلقى خطابـًا
add to	يضيف إلى
in charge of	مسئول عن
make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا
make it difficult to	يجعلها صعبة
play in a wheelchair	یلعب علی کرسی متحرك

win a medal	يفوز بميدالية
wider range of	مجموعة كبيرة من
campaign for	يدافع عن
compete in	يتنافس في
battle against	يكافح ضد
benefits of	فوائد ل_
fight with	يقاتل بـ
go <mark>up</mark>	يصعد/يرتفع
impact on	تأثير على
member of	عضو في
refer to	يشيرإلى
complain about	يشكو من

effect on	***************************************	take part in	يشارك في
retire from		think about	يفكر في
successful in/at	ناجح في	try <mark>to</mark>	يحاول أن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف/ يفعل	action activist	سلوك/ تمثيل ناشط	active	نشيط
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
campaign	يطالب بــ/يناصر	campaign campaigner	حملة مـُدافع/مؤيد		
compete	يتنافس	competition	منافسة	competitive	تنافسي
determine	يحدد الم	determination	عزم/تصميم	determined	عازم/مصمم
disable	يـُعطل/يوقف	disability	إعاقة	disabled	معاق
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهم
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
retire	يتقاعد	retirement	تقاعد	retired	متقاعد



Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a champion(1) in Kung Fu and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible(2) car accident, he now has a disability(3) which means he has to use a wheelchair. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport. He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis. He has competed(4) in many international wheelchair tennis competitions and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing achievement(5), but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to stay fit, and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

Amany Ali

Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter⁽⁶⁾ who won a bronze medal in the 2016 Paralympic Games in Brazil in 2016. Amany had an illness called polio (7) when she was younger and this affected the muscles(8) in her feet. She did not start powerlifting until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She achieved her Paralympic success (9) in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also came fourth in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.

Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a British Paralympian wheelchair racer⁽¹⁰⁾ who has a medical condition⁽¹¹⁾ called spina bifida. She is unable to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in Seoul in 1988.

Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in athletics events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including⁽¹²⁾ 11 gold medals. Since she retired⁽¹³⁾ from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different organisations which help people, especially disabled people and women, to enjoy the benefits of sports.

بطل (1)

- رميب (2)
- اعاقة (3)
- تنافس (4)
- إنجاز (5)
- لاعب رفع الأثقال (6)
- شلل الأطفال (7)
- عضلات (8)
- نجاح (9)
- متسابق (10)
- حالة (11)
- بما فيها (12)
- تقاعد (13)



pre-listening question:

What do we mean when we talk about 'equal opportunities'?

Nadia: Hello everyone and welcome to the podcast. Every week we talk to a different guest(2) about their job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity activist(3) from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities campaigner for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.

Leila: Great to be here, Nadia.

Nadia: So tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

Leila: I'm from Alexandria, which is a city in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

Nadia: What did you study?

Leila: I studied sociology(5) which I found really interesting.

Nadia: And how did you get into working for charities® supporting equal opportunities? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it?

Leila: No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference(8) – that's why I love it so much.

I started campaigning for disabled people when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a wheelchair. I noticed (9) that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and hardly any lifts or ramps to help disabled people get from one floor to the next.

Leila: Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to make changes in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were in value of the university about the issue and they did.

charge of the university about the issue and they did.

charge https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg 239

(1) asigua kelül

صيف/زالو (2)

ناشط خبری (3)

مناضل/مدافع (4)

علم الاجتماع (5)

مؤسسات خيرية (6)

(7) والمع

يحدث فرقًا (8)

لاحظ (9)

مصاعد (10)

سيئ (11)

كانوا مسلولين عن (12)

(13) alsina

Leila: Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the

(14) الجامعي (14)

فرص (16)

العال كتابية (17)

campus (14) or change existing buildings.

Leila: When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really

Nadia: But, now you campaign for equal opportunities for a wider range of people - not just people with disabilities - is that right?

Leila: Yes, that's right. Now I work for an organisation (15) called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to ensure that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same chances (16) in life.

Nadia: That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job?

: Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but, in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do paperwork (17) too, you know!

Post-listening question:

- What does the organisation which Leila currently works for do?

Workbook Text

Wheelchair tennis

Some amazing athletes compete in different sports even when they have a disability. For example, some play tennis in wheelchairs. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong muscles in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few achieve as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold medals between 2000 and 2012.

Olympic sports

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as cycling and swimming. Some of the most famous Olympians are runners such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, windsurfing became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and snowboarding in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, powerlifting. That means that great Egyptian powerlifter, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

Video Script

To become an award-winning⁽¹⁾ Paralympian is an outstanding⁽²⁾ achievement. These athletes battle⁽³⁾ against physical⁽⁴⁾ disabilities to prove⁽⁵⁾ their strength⁽⁶⁾, stamina⁽⁷⁾ and determination⁽⁸⁾.

Competing in the Paralympics often means a life dedicated⁽⁹⁾ to training and often requires⁽¹⁰⁾ a lot of sacrifices⁽¹¹⁾ to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring.

Many Paralympians inspire people to persevere⁽¹²⁾ to achieve their dreams. They often dedicate their time to promoting⁽¹³⁾ their sport and helping young people find opportunities to train.

- الحائز على جائزة (1)
- رائع (2)
- يكافح (3)
- جسدی <mark>(4)</mark>
- ىثىت (5)
- قوة (6)
- القدرة على التحمل (7)
- عزم/إرادة (8)
- مخصصة (9)
- تتطلب (10)
- التضحيات (11)
- يثابر/يصر (12)
- تعزيز (13)





a) share



1 My daughter wa	t answer from a, b, c o ints to be a/ant b) powerlifter ernorate started a	c) activist	a) runner
beach.	b) course cient Chinese fighting	c) flight	d) war
hands and feet.		c) Boxing	d) Snorkelling
help people in v		c) ramp	d) landslide

Focus on Vocabulary

b) brought

c) participated

d) dedicated

achieve يحقق	to be successful in doing something good
achievement إنجاز	a something good that you have successfully done
activist ناشط	someone who tries to change things
campaign يقوم بعمل حملة	to work in an organised way to change things
compete یتنافس	▶ to take part in a race or a competition
medal میدالیة	▶a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport

muscle عضلة	Something inside your body that you use when you move
powerlifting رفع الأثقال	a sport where people lift weights above their heads
ramp	something that goes up from one level to the next
wheelchair کرسی متحرك	a chair with wheels used by someone who can't walk
highs and lows نجاحات وإخفاقات	refer to successful and unsuccessful times.
Kung Fu رياضة الكونج فو	a Chinese sport which involves fighting with your hands and feet
spina bifida تشقق العمود الفقرى	▶ a serious condition in which a person's spine does not develop correctly before they are born, so that their spinal cord is not protected
polio شلل الأطفال	a serious infectious disease of the nerves in the spine, that

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word M	eaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	CA MORA
amazing (adj)	مذهل	astonishing	believable	معقول
compete (v)	يتنافس	contest	surrender	يستسلم
difference (n)	اختلاف	distinction/ variation	similarity	تشابه
inspire (v) – d	يلهم	stimulate	discourage/ depress	يثبط
		privately/ individually	generally	عمومنا
personally (adv)	41. 45. pr. pr. pr. pr. pr. pr. pr. pr. pr. pr	bodily	mental	عقلى
physical (adj)	بدنی	Dodily	THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON OF T	

Notes on Vocabulary

(play

go

do

ن نام (play) غالبًا مع الألعاب الجماعية التي تستخدم فيها الكرة:

play

(football – basketball – hockey – soccer – tennis – squash - table-tennis – rackets – ping pong - volleyball)

I used to play basketball when I was in high school.

نستندم (go) غالبًا مع الرياضات التي تنتهي بـ (ing):

go

(swimming, jogging جرى بطئ = slow running, sailing, dancing water-skiing, running, scuba-diving, riding, hunting, climbing)

My grandfather and I go sailing every time I visit him.

مع ملاحظة أنه يمكن استخدام الفعل نفسه من اسم الرياضة

نستندم do غالبًا مع الرياضات التي لا تحتاج إلى أدوات لممارستها:

do

(gymnastics/karate/athletics/sports)

وتستخدم (do/play) مع كلمة (sport) :

- Do you do any sports?
- Yes, I play hockey.

يمكن استخدام (been) بدلًا من (gone) مع الرياضات المنتهية بـ (ing):

- ▶ Have you ever gone swimming?
- ▶ Have you ever been swimming?

Cevent

incident

event

عدث (هام وشيق وغالبـًا يتم فيه اجتماع الناس)

The signing of the peace treaty was a historic event.

incident

^{حدث} عابر (أحداث القصص والأفلام والمباريات)

There have been several violent incidents at football matches recently.

(either ... or

(فعل الجملة يتبع الفاعل الثاني) + (الفاعل الثاني) + Or + (الفاعل الأول) + Either +

Either I or my cousin is going to attend the meeting.

من الممكن استخدام either في نهاية الجملة المنفية :

Ola isn't at school today and Marwa isn't either.

(amazed

amazing

amazed (adj)

Ali was amazed by the story.

amazing (adj)

The story was amazing.

You have won the gold medal. You are amazing, Adel.

(campaign (for/against)

campaign for

يقوم بحملة لصالح

He is busy campaigning for re-election and did not have time to discuss the new problems.

campaign against

يقوم بحملة ضد

A group of people is campaigning against the destruction of the rainforests.

compete (for/ to/ against/ with/ in/ at)

compete for

يتنافس من أجل

▶ The stores have to compete for customers in the Christmas season.

پنافس لـ

compete to

Several companies are competing to get the contract.

ىتنافس ضد

compete against

I had to compete against 19 other people for the job.

يتنافس مع

▶They found themselves competing with foreign companies for a share of the market.

يتنافس/يشارك في

compete in/at

How many runners will be competing in the marathon?

Professional athletes may now compete at the Olympics.

Language Notes

1. Some play tennis in wheelchairs.

some كضمير فاعل بمعنى البعض وتتبع بفعل مفرد إذا كانت تشـير إلى اســم لا يعد أو تتبع بفعل جمع

2. But few achieve as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands.

. لاحظ استخدام the قبل أسماء الدول الجمع.

3. Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter who has won a bronze medal. She did not start powerlifting until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport . لاحظ أن الرياضات التي تنتهي بـ ing عادة ما يبدأ اسم الرياضي منها بـ er.

4. Do you know anyone who works for a charity or another organisation that tries to help people - either personally or from the media?

. للتخيير بين شخصين أو شيئين في الإثبات. Or للتخيير بين شخصين أو شيئين في الإثبات.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Visitors to the city cansailing off the island.
- a) play

b) go

c) do

- d) make
- My friends scuba diving in the Red Sea last week.
 - a) played

b) went

c) gave

- d) made
- It is impossible for Hazem to miss a sportingin his town.
 - a) incident

b) accident

c) event

- d) happening
- She is anstudent. She answers all questions accurately.
 - a) amazed

b) amazing

c) amazingly

- d) amazement
- Either Alihis friends like playing football as they prefer chess.
 - a) or

b) nor and single

c) and

d) than

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the	correct	answer	from	a, b,	cor	d:
------------	---------	--------	------	-------	-----	----

My daughter eventuallyher g	joal of becoming a flight attendant.	
a) achieved	b) campaigned	
c) competed	d) improved	
2 Environmentalaccused the fa	ctories owners of dumping waste into the Nile.	
a) competitors	b) fighters	
c) communicators	d) activists	
Because of his, he depended		
a) achievement	b) disability	
c) competition	d) organisation	
He was one of the people who		
a) achieved	b) improved	
c) campaigned	d) inspired	
6 Karam Gaber won two Olympic	in wrestling.	
a) rewards	b) medals	
c) cup	d) models	
6 Regular exercise will help strengthen	your	
a) muscles	b) lungs	
a) brain	d) cells	
7 My friend had an accident and as a re-	sult he'll be in a for the rest of his life.	
a) wheelhouse	b) moving chair	
c) condition	d) wheelchair	
are needed at exits and entra	ances for wheelchair users.	
a) Stairs	b) Cliffs	
10	d) Swings	
c) Ramps Mohamed Salah is a/an playe	er to watch at football matches.	
	b) amazing	
a) amazed	d) amaze	
c) amazement Manchester United F.C. was knocked	out of thein the quarterfinal.	
	b) campaign	
a) competition	d) event	
c) race		

17 The issue of "unemployment" has bee	n much discussed in the
a) public	
c) radio	d) media
12 A lot of around the world sent	
a) competitors	b) campaigners
c) charities	d) campaign
13 If you can't remember the meaning of	The state of the s
a) know	b) read
c) guess	d) think
My son wanted tohis French i	
a) inspire	b) improve
c) raise	d) push
15 Every team needs a leader who is able	
a) push	b) conspire
c) inspire	d) press
16 The show was organised in order to raise	se money for
a) right	b) correction
c) true	d) charity
17 The government should exert more eff	orts to the safety of the racers
a) ensure	b) encourage
c) require	d) inspire
We believe that all governments should	for supporting scientific research.
a) help	b) collect
c) look	d) campaign
19 The company sales improved greatly af	ter a/ancampaign.
a) determination	b) political
c) marketing	d) sale
20 If we lost this match, we would be out o	of the
a) championship	b) practice
c) media	d) training
21is a serious infectious disease of	of the nerves in the spine, that often results in
someone being permanently unable to	move particular muscles.
a) Spina pitida	b) Polio
c) Influenza	d) AIDS

e) surrendered

b) stimulated

"inspired" is

a) discouraged

d) depressed



Relative clauses

التي تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها، وضمائر الوصل هي:

who/that	whom/that	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

نا، ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر في الجملة الثانية.

نلناما يأتي ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

Defining relative clauses give necessary information about a person or thing.

فلك نوعان من عبارات الوصل:

١. عيارات الوصل المُحدِّدة تعطى معلومات ضرورية عن شخص أو شيء.

- Mr Nader is the person that/who teaches us maths.
- ▶ Al Ahram is the newspaper that/which I read every day.

Non-defining relative clauses (with commas) give us more information about a person or thing.

بارات الوصل غير المحددة (مع الفاصلات) تعطينا معلومات إضافية عن شخص أو شيء .

- Mr Nader, who teaches us maths, will be absent tomorrow.
- ▶ Al Ahram, which is a daily newspaper, is read by millions of people.

who = that

ندل محل فاعل عاقل وتوضع بعد الفاعل الذي تصفه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها.

Ahmed is my friend. He teaches English well.

Ahmed, who teaches English well, is my friend.

This is the boy. He broke the vase.

This is the boy who (that) broke the vase.

whom = who = that

تحل محل مفعول عاقل وياتي بعدها الفاعل، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منهما.

Ahmed is my brother. You met him yesterday. Ahmed, whom (who) you met yesterday, is my brother.

يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول (يأتي بعده جملة).

That's the man. You are talking about. That's the man (whom/who/that) you are talking about. That's the man you are talking about.



عند وجود حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل مع العاقل نستخدم who – that فقط وليس who – that. That's the man about whom you are talking.

> فعل + who - that اسم عاقل فعل + فاعل + whom - who - that اسم عاقل فعل + فاعل + whom حرف جر + اسم عاقل

which = that

تحل محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل وتوضع بعد الاسم الذي تصفه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها.

The books are all mine. They are on the shelf.

The books which are on the shelf are all mine.

(بعدها فعل فهي تحل محل الفاعل)

- I opened the window. It overlooks the garden.
 - I opened the window which (that) overlooks the garden.
- The book is useful. You read it.

The book which (that) you read is useful.

(بعدها فاعل فهي تحل محل المفعول)

The book you read is useful.

لاحظ في المثال السابق إذا حلت which محل المفعول (و جاءت بعدها جملة) يمكن حذفها.

- ▶ He bought a new car. He drove us to the cinema with it.
 - = He bought a new car which he drove us to the cinema with.
 - = He bought a new car with which he drove us to the cinema. لاحظ في المثال السابق يبقى حرف الجر كما هو بعد الفعل أو يستخدم قبل (which) وليس that.

Check Point (3

at answer	r from a, b, c or d:
Chance the correct answer	1012 was a far

1 Charles Dickens, was born in 1812, was a famous English writer,

d) when

2 The house,was built in 1889, was famous for its huge entrance. d) when

b) which

3 The car for I paid a lot of money is very high tech. d) that b) who

(4) I like the managerkind and co-operative.

d) that c) whose b) who's

a) who 5 The penyou are writing is my brother's.

c) with whom b) which a) where

d) with which

whose

المنافعة (عاقبل وغير عاقبل) وتحل محل (s) أو صفة الملكية (his, her, its, their)

▶The boy got high marks. His father is a teacher.

= The boy whose father is a teacher got high marks.

My uncle travelled abroad. We live in his house.

= My uncle in whose house we live travelled abroad.

لاحظ؛ مكن استخدام حرف الجر قبلها ولا تستخدم that بدلًا منها.

where

This is the house. We live here now.

= This is the house where we live now.

▶ Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live there.

= Alexandria is a nice city where I like to live.

where وجود حرف جر يدل على المكان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم

Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live in it.

= Alexandria is a nice city in which I like to live.

= Alexandria is a nice city which I like to live in.

لاحيظ: نستخدم which مع المكان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث داخل المكان.

This is the house. It was built last year.

= This is the house which was built last year.

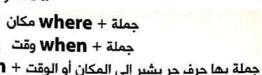
when

- Summer is a hot season. We usually go to Alexandria in summer.
 - = Summer is a hot season when we usually go to Alexandria.

لاحسظ، عند وجود حرف جر يدل على الزمان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم This is the time at which I like to have my lunch.

حـــظ، نستخدم which مع الزمان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث في ذلك الوقت

Summer is the time which is very hot.



جملة بها حرف جر يشير إلى المكان أو الوقت + which مكان – وقت فعل + which مكان - وقت



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He has a beautiful sonname is Osama.
 - a) whose

b) which

c) whom

d) that

- The companyhe works in is one of the biggest companies in Egypt.
 - a) whom

b) that

c) where

d) which

- I still remember the day I received my first prize.
 - a) where

b) which

c) in which

d) when

- (4) Can you name the placeyou were born and lived?
 - a) whose

b) which

c) whom

d) where

5 I made a mistake I apologised to my dad.

b) on which

a) at which

d) which for

c) for which

UNIT (11)

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a,	b, c or d:
1 I want you to know the name of t	he actorplayed the role of King Lear
a) which	b) whose
c) whom	d) who
2 My cousin Jehan, lives o	on my street, always has a problem with her
neighbours.	co Lymy y pod at glashing.
a) whose	b) who
c) where	d) whom
3 The dog barked at the time	it saw a stranger entering the house.
a) where	b) when
c) which	d) whose
Egypt is the land people of	of different cultures can live peacefully.
a) whose	b) where
c) when	d) which
They have bought a machine	prints names on badges.
a) that	b) what
c) who	d) whose
6 The man to I listened on t	he plane was talking all the time.
a) who	b) that
c) where	d) whom
7 The room I sleep is very ni	ce. I really feel comfortable.
a) when	b) where
c) in where	d) which
8 The river runs through our	r city is the main source of our water.
a) where	b) whose
c) which	d) whom
9 I would like to live in a country	there is plenty of sunshine.
a) when	b) which
c) where	d) whose
10 My uncle,is a famous write	er, lives in Cairo.
a) where	b) which
c) who	d) whose

	Amazing people
1 like the cathair is soft.	Amazing people
a) who	And the second s
c) whose	b) whom
The room we decorated last ye a) where	d) which
a) where	b) that
c) in which	18109-201 2
The boy, leg was broken, was to who	aken to hospital
	b) that
c) whose	
This is the writer won the first p	orize.
a) who	b) whose
c) whom	d) which
The nurse responsibility is to lo	ok after young children, has worked in the
nospitarior terryears.	
a) who	b) which
c) whose	d) whom
1970 was the year my father wa	
a) who	b) when
c) which	d) where
77 Do you like Cairois the capital	
a) which	b) where
c) who	d) when
18 There's a library nearby I like to	pass my time reading.
a) who) whose
c) where	(a) whose
sn't that the schoolyour father	WORKS III:
a) where	d) who
c) when	d) who
My wife is someone really hone	b) whose
a) who	b) who's
a) wno c) for whom	which has to type the letters by himself.
The manager secretary is serio	usly III, Ilas to type the
a) who	D) William
	ti tius
The man fromyou bought this	Carriera
a) whose	d) who
c) which we want to the little of the little	a) wito
	(253)

	23 The big project	s which out all o	ver Egypt will increase th	ne national incom
	a) are carried	ar a gold days	b) carry	colue'
	c) carrying		d) carried	
	24 Ahmed is the n	nanagerI send	l this email.	
	a) to whom		b) from whom	
	c) who		d) what	dominant P
	25 The waiter,	is wearing a white	shirt, helped us a lot.	
	a) who	b) what	c) whom	d) which
	26 I like the autho	r plays are sho	wn everywhere.	150.00 (2
	a) who	b) whose	c) who's	d) which
2	Fill in the space:			
	he was examine (c)me tha	ed. The doctor(b) t my son was quite well	ed to take him to the ho examined him wa . He gave him some med full of sick children with	as so clever. He(d)(d)
	treatment. For happening inside hearts are dame to improve our	example, X-rays,de our bodies is great. I aged by replacing the	have been enormous a(a) make it post Doctors can also treat post m. No other field our happiness. So we scientists.	sible to see what is eople(b)(b) .(c) done more
	a red telephone have a good lau of people	was studying. One of box in the park. If was ghe by calling the pho	and I was sharing a floof the windows of our re got bored, we ne box number and wa the public phone wher did to pass the boring t	r flat had a view of (b)sometimes tching the reactions it started to ring. It
The contract of the contract o	exposure of radia (a)our hea (b)used as health. The comp they are safe. But	ation. A lot of scientists Ith. As a result, they th Iittle as possible. A lot Danies(c)	are harmful to our heal believe that they have link that mobile phones of scientists believe they hanufacture mobile pho elling a product so they a (d)telling you the	a bad effect should y are harmful to your nes will tell you that are hardly going to

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

Choose the correct a	nswer from a. b. c.or.	A STATE OF STREET	ean multiplication area
1 The synonym of the	e verb "achieve" is	Drive and self.	
a) accomplish	h) micc		
There is a hard	between the H	c) fail	d) aim
a) competition	b) campaign	leading car manufa	acturers.
3 My sons were awar	ded for their b	c) race	d) achievement
a) presents	D) medalc		al) was alale
4 All I need is a/an	to show the coac	h my talont and ah	d) models
	M CHOICE		
6 The conference was	s an important social	to discuss or	r problems
	occident	a ought	AN In a series and for an
6 We diving a	away from the coral ree	ef of the Red Sea las	t summer
a) Welle	D) LOOK	c) came	d) played
7 My son was	. when he saw his frien	nd jump up for 2 me	tres
a) amazed	b) amazing	c) amazingly	d) amazement
8 Our I v nas broken	down, but someone is	coming to	it tomorrow.
a) reform	b) reclaim	c) reuse	
This is the most exc	iting storyI ha	ive ever read.	ar is the strong of
	b) that		
1 n			of mine.
	b) when		d) which
19 Isn't that the pharm	nacy you get y	our medicine?	White objects of the
a) which	b) from which	c) on which	d) by which
12 My teacher,			
a) who		The second second second second	d) who's
13 There is a florist's ov	er thereI usu	ally get flowers for	my wife.
a) whom		A STATE OF THE STA	d) that
March is the month	my brother w		
a) where		c) in which	d) while
15 This is the mobile p	hone for I paid	d a lot of money.	17750 813 11
a) that	b) which	c) what	d) whose
16 I don't know	has done this very b	ad thing.	
	b) what	c) which	d) who

UNIT (11

2	Fill	in	the	_		475
9			rue	5	pa	ce:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is advisable to know how to invest money in these days of inflation. Some people invest their money by keeping it in a bank. Left in a bank, it will keep its value, however high the interest rate. Some buy and sell on the Stock Market to invest their money but only rich or brave people dare to do so. It's no good putting it in a tin under the bed.

Wise investment is the art of making your money increase with the passing of time, and today it seems that one of the best ways to protect your savings and even increase your wealth is to buy beautiful objects from the past such as Persian rugs, furniture and silver and above all clocks. We are slaves of time today. The planet earth is ruled by the clock without whose permission men can do nothing.

Whether or not we are slaves of time today, it depends on our culture and personality. Many years ago, kings kept special slaves to tell the time. Certain men were clever at measuring the time of day according to the beating of their own hearts. Every hour or so, they would shout out the time. They were human time keepers.

Again, men learned to use the shadow cast by the sun and invented the sundial and later on water clocks. Large wall clocks were invented and hung in public places for all to see. They were mass - produced. Watches were probably first invented in Italy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mass production prices.	
a) increases	b) reduces
c) keeps high	d) always keeps unchanged
2 to put money in a tin under	
a) It is advisable	b) It is not recommended
a) It is gainful	d) It is nice but not recommended.
3 Investing in an antique clock is ad	Jan la la
a) to be ruled by time	b) to be one of the human timekeepers
c) to make a future profit	d) to be one of the number times of the difference of the number times of the number t

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi RZdpqhzzqlg

- 👊 There's money in time. This means
 - a) Time is money.
 - b) Time makes your possessions increase in value.
 - c) We are slaves of time today.
 - d) The planet earth is ruled by the clock.
- 5 The antonym of the word "slave" is
 - a) follower
- b) fan
- c) employer
- d) master

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the writer advise people to do with their money?
- What are the two things that protect us from becoming slaves of time?
- Explain how a human timekeeper measured the time.

A) Translate into Arabic:

- There are many things to be said in favour of technological advancement. It undoubtedly makes people's lives easier.
- 2. Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and money for the welfare of their families. They are also ready to sacrifice themselves when their country is in danger.
- 3. Global warming is not only a threat to our future health; it already leads to more than 150, 000 deaths annually.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- يعتمد الكثير من الكتاب والروائيين في كتاباتهم على القصص الواقعية، ويعتبرون أن التجارب الموجودة فيها تكسبنا المزيد من الخبرات في الحياة.
- ٢- لقد تزايدت معدلات الجريمة في الآونة الأخيرة بشكل ملحوظ في مجتمعنا. والجريمة ظاهرة خطيرة تتطلب تعاون كل قطاعات الحكومة والأفراد لكي نجد حلًّا جذريًّا لها.
- ٣- علينا جميعًا أن نفتخر بلاعبينا المعاقين والذين حققوا إنجازات عظيمة في مجال الرياضة عجز عن تحقيقها اللاعبون الأصحاء.

Enrich your Vocabulary

in favour of	في صالح	devote	یکرس
welfare	رفاهية	annually	سنويئا
non-fiction	واقعى	life experiences	خبرات الحياة
rate	معدل	remarkably	بشكل ملحوظ
radical	عاجل/جذري	phenomenon	ظاهرة

- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:
 - Hard work leads to success.
 - A school trip that you never forgot.



Lessons 3&4





Vocabulary on Reading

department (n)	قسم
employee (n)	موظف
sales (n)	مبيعات
staff (n)	هيئة العاملين

be
עני
ريب

Vocabulary on Listening

book (v) – ed	يحجز
bother (v) – ed	يضايق
complaint (n)	شکوی
hole (n)	بقث .
loud (adj)	مرتفع (للصوت)

polite (adj)	مهذب
repair (v) – ed	يصلح
soup (n)	حساء/شورية
undercooked (adj)	غير مطبوخ جيد'ا

Workbook Vocabulary

afraid (adj)	آسف/خائف
apologise (v) – d	يعتذر
colleague (n)	زمیل عمل
interview (n)	مقابلة للحصول على وظيفة أو حوار صحفى

manager (n)	مدير
noisy (adj)	مزعج
perhaps (adv)	الم
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
regards (n)	تنوینات/تنعننیات



Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get home	يعود للمنزل
make a complaint	يقدم شكوى
make a noise	يصدر ضوضاء
make sure	يتأكد
look forward to	يتطلع إلى
apply for	يتقدم إلى
hear from	يسمع من
interest in	اهتمام ب
look for	يبحث عن
qualified for	مؤهل لــ

receive training	يتلقى تدريبا
sorry about that	ياسف بشان
take place	يحدث
turn the music down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى
reply to	یرد علی
respond to	يستجيب ك
response to	رد علی
speak to	يتحدث إلى
suitable for	مناسب ك

Derivatives

Verb		Noun	A SALE OF THE SALE	Adj	ective
employ	يوظف	employment		employable	قابل للتوظيف
repair			إصلاح	repairable	يمكن إصلاحه
AL.		support	دعم	supportive	•
		training trainer trainee	تدریب مدرب متدرب	trained	مُكَرب

شكوي (1)

بعتذر (2)

يزعج (3)

مدير (4)

يحجز (5)

يصلح (1)

وجبة (4)

غير مطبوخ جيدًا (3)

Narrator One

: Excuse me; I'd like to make a complaint(1). Woman 1

My soup is cold.

:I do apologise(2). I'll make sure you get another soup Woman 2

which is hot.

Narrator Two

: I'm sorry to bother(3) you, but the music is really loud.

: I'm sorry about that. I'll make sure my son turns the Old Man Man 1

music down.

Narrator Three

Old Woman: I'd like to speak to the manager(4), please.

: I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you? Woman 3

Old Woman: Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late. How am

I going to get home this evening?

: I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can book (5) a taxi for you. Woman 3

Workbook Text

Narrator One

: Excuse me; I'd like to make a complaint. Lama

My phone doesn't work.

Assistant: I do apologise. Perhaps we can repair(1) it.

Narrator Two

: I'm sorry to bother you, but you're very tall. I can't Hany

see the play(2).

: I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is shorter. Man

Narrator Three

: I'd like to speak to the manager, please. Heba

Waitress: I'm afraid he's out at the moment. Can I help you?

: Yes, the problem is that my meat is undercooked(3). Heba

Waitress: I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal(4).

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	Antonym a	المضا
support	beri beri	provide/ aid	neglect	يتجاهل
bother	يضايق	annoy	please/satisfy	يسعد/يرضى
loud	مرتفع (للصوت)	noisy/blaring	calm	هادئ
polite	مهذب	mannerly/ civilised	rude	وقح
repair	يصلح	fix	break/damage	يكسر/يحطم



Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1) The company have regular meetings to discuss achievements and problems.
 - a) stiff

b) staff

c) stuff

- d) crew
- 2 My uncle is a supervisor in the accountancyin a big company.
 - a) service

b) department

c) office

- d) apartment
- This company's manager is very serious and strict with the and their work.
 - a) employers

b) employees

- d) employ
- 4 Hea holiday for a fortnight in Paris. One week isn't enough to enjoy the
 - city.

b) preserved

a) booked

d) retrained

- 5 If listening to musicyou, I can stop it at any time you want.

a) interests

c) improves

d) bothers



(interview appointment conference meeting

interview

_{بقابل}ة شخصية (للوظيفة) _{مقابل}ة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية/صحفية)

I've got an interview for a job as a reporter.

appointment

موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص في وقت معين)

I have an appointment to see the doctor next Saturday.

conference

مؤتمر

▶ The President arrived for a conference with local officials.

meeting

لتماع

▶ They organised meetings on a number of important political issues.

(crew

staff

crew

طاقم السفينة أو الطائرة

None of the passengers or crew were/was injured.

staff

ميئة عاملين/موظفين

▶ We have 30 part-time members of staff.

(hear (of/ from)

hear from يتلقى رسالة من

▶ Have you heard from Ahmed?

hear of

She disappeared and was never heard of again.

(colleague classmate

colleague زمیل عمل

▶ Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection. classmate

زميل دراسة

Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.



(take place

take someone's place

take place

The story takes place in nineteenth-century England.

take someone's place

I took my father's place in our shop while he was abroad.

Language Notes

1.1 do apologise. Perhaps we can repair it.

استخدام v. to do قبل الفعل الأساسي للجملة للتأكيد واعطاء قوة للمعني.





2. I look forward to hearing from you.

look forward to یأتی بعدها (Noun) OR (v-ing).





3. "Where are the Paralympics going to be held in 2028?"

كلمة Paralympics دائمنا تتبع بفعل جمع.







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 When my brother started his new job, all his were friendly and helpful.
 - a) colleagues
- b) neighbours
- c) classmates
- d) children
- 2 I look forward to hearing you. This means I hope to receive news from you.
 - a) of

b) from

- c) with
- d) to
- 3 Companies need highly qualified, so they provide them with many training courses.
 - a) stiffs

- b) staffs
- c) stuffs
- d) crews
- 4 Where were you when the accident took?
 - c) a place b) a part
- d) place
- a) part 5 In his latest TV, the famous singer talked about his health problems.
 - a) meeting

b) conference

c) interview

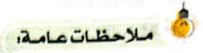
d) appointment

UNIT (11)

Vocabulary Exercises

	rrect answer from			
• Everyone car	me tohin	n in his campaign	for justice.	K L . Telegraphy
- 1	la lat	c) all	OW U	l) give
All companie	or chould amploy of	ever propagangi	۱۱ ب) مستونی دعایه ۲۶	iciease Its
a) industrias	h) produc	tion C) Dro	gaucis) saics
Thou said sou	mothing very cruel	for which I think I	nev snould	
a) think	b) thank	c) ap	ologise) organise
The main ho	b) thank spital in the city has	s a of ar	ound 150 people	· Allendar
a) ctitt	h) ctaff	C) SIU	III u	LIEW
The new coa	ch of the national to	eam doesn't give	to the	oress.
a) interviews	b) views n charge of the ma	c) sho	ows d) programmes
💰 My father is i	n charge of the ma	rketing	of an export com	pany.
a) part	b) circle	c) sec	tion	department
7 There is a	in the roof, v	which needs to be	repaired.	
a) hole	b) hall	c) gap	o d	space
The room wa	s veryan	d my father found	l it hard to concer	ntrate on his work.
a) nosy	b) noisy	c) cal	m d)	quiet
	always all t			
a) knows	b) arrange	es c) trai	ns d)	manners
o Are you comi	ng to the football	after sch	1001?	
a) lecture	b) exercise	c) trai	ning d)	scene
Expressions,	idioms, prepositions	s, derivatives, synd	onyms and antony	ms Exercises
the soup was	very cold, so he wa	nted toa co	mplaint to the res	staurant manager,
a) do	b) have	c) give	d)	make
This house is	very small. It is not	really suitable	a large fan	nily.
		c) with		
If you don't sp	oeak German, you're			
a) to	b) with	c) for	d)	at
We still haven	't received a reply	our offe	r.	
a) for	b) to	c) with	n d)	from
	e the best			
a) qualify	b) qualified	d c) disc	qualified d)	qualifications
hoose TWO co	rrect answers out	of the FIVE option	ns given:	
6 The synonym	of the word "polite	e" is		1.
a) relevant	b) civilised	c) different	d) equivalent	e) mannerly
The antonym	of the verb "repair"	'is	**************************************	
a) fix	b) damage	c) reform	d) support	e) break
The synonym	of the word "suppo	ort" is		a regulada
a) provide	b) neglect	c) avoid	d) suspect	e) aid





١- يمكن حدَف who, which إذا جاء بعدها مبنى للمجهول ويستخدم P.P. فقط.

who/which + (be) + P.P. = P.P.

- The school which was built last year is wonderful.
 - = The school built last year is wonderful.
- They boy who was punished yesterday got the worst marks.
 - =The boy punished yesterday got the worst marks.

<uho – which في حالة المبنى للمعلوم (بعدها فعل) ونستخدم V-ing.

who/which + active verb = v-ing

- The man who is wearing the black suit is my father.
 - =The man wearing the black suit is my father.

٣- يمكن حذف who - which إذا جاء بعدها جملة وكانت تشير للمفعول مع بقاء الجملة كما هي.

فعل + فاعل = فعل + فاعل + who/which +

- The match which/that I watched was great.
 - = The match I watched was great.
 - ة من الممكن استخدام that محل who which، ولكن لا يأتي معها حرف جر ولا يأتي قبلها (٫).

(X)

- Ali, that is my friend, plays football well.
 - (V) Ali, who is my friend, plays football well.
- (X) This is the mobile for that I paid a lot of money.
 - (1) This is the mobile for which I paid a lot of money.
- ه- عند وجود superlative صيغة التفضيل مع غير العاقل نســتخدم that وليس which، أما مع العاقل فمن الممكن اســتخدام
- This is the most expensive present that I have ever got.
- Ali is the fastest student that/who/whom I have ever met.

٦- مع الكلمات التالية نستخدم all – the only) that).

I didn't get all that you asked me.

رب نستخدم what كرابط ويأتي بعدها فعل أو جملة كما يلي:

جملة + what + فعل, فعل + What , فعل + فاعل + What

- I didn't try to bring what the teacher asked me.
- He couldn't remember what we told him.
- What makes us happy is to see our children happy.
- What I have said must be done.

٨- من الممكن أن تشير which إلى عبارة أو جملة كاملة قبلها.

- ▶ We got the full mark in our exams, which made us so happy.
- ▶ She went to the zoo with her brother, which was the best thing that happened to her.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Yesterday, I played a long match with my brother, made me very tired.
 - a) who
- b) whose
- c) which

- d) when
- I can't achieve all I want now but may be in the future.

 - a) which b) whose
- c) when
- d) that
- 3 I can't remember you told me about Amin.
 - a) who
- b) which
- c) whom

- d) what
- The girlin the street is trying to catch the bus.
 - a) runs

b) is running

c) who running

- d) running
- 5 The big projects,out all over Egypt, will increase the national income.
 - a) are carried

b) which carry

c) carrying

d) carried

Language Exercises

Choose and correct driswer from a, b,	, c or d:
1 don't want to tell anyoneh	as happened between us
a) triat	b) what
c) who	AN CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY
2 I didn't get the job because	I didn't have the required qualifications.
	b) I applied for it
c) I applied for	ما المالية
3 Around the World in Eighty Days,	came out in 1837, is a very famous novel.
a) that	b) when
c) where	d)which
4 Noha is the girl brother cam	ne first in the exam
a) who's	b) when
c) whose	d) which
5 Is that the doctor aboutyou	ı told me?
a) which	b) where
c) whom	d) that
6 Most of the novels by Nagib	Mahfouz have been changed into films.
a) writing	b) were written
c) wrote	d) written
7 l can't remember told me Ra	amy would come to the party.
a) who	b) which
c) whom	d) whose
8 My uncle is the person I rec	eived a letter last week.
a) to who	b) from whom
c) to whom	d) from who
9 This is the street I lived in w	hen I was younger.
a) in which	b) which
c) in that	d) where
10 Nour could finish the book	Record
	b) that I'd lent her it
c) which I'd lent it her	d) what I lent her
willent to lent it her	

Can you show me the road	to the amusement park, please?
a) leading	b) which leading
c) leads	d) lead
The woman daughter	was having an exam, was very worried.
a) whose	b) whose her
c) who	d) whom
Maha says that the house	Tamer has bought has a beautiful garden,
a) whose	b) which
c) whom	d) where
14 London, is the capital of	of the UK, has the best palace in the world.
a) what	
c) that	d) which
	ssed a lot of our problems were long but usefu
a) with which	b) for which
c) that	d) at which
16 These are the fieldswe	reclaimed to grow crops.
a) in which	b) for which
c) at which	d) that
17 I can't remember the name of t	he person I borrowed this pen.
a) from where	b) from which
No.	d) from whom
18 This is the shelf I put my	y English books.
a) which	b) who
c) whom	d) where
19 The manhe had lunch y	resterday is his boss.
a) who	b) whose
c) with whom	d) whom
Mona's father goes swir	nming every day.
a) , that is 60,	h) who is 60
d) who is 60.	d) that is 60
Yousra house we had ou	ır lunch is one of my best advisors.
a) whose	b) who
c) in whose	d) in which
2 Ladmire Yehia Haggiwo	rks are really wonderful.
a) who	b) where
c) which	d) whose
WALLEY THE THE PARTY OF THE PAR	The state of the s

2 Fill in the space:

Life Skills

Making complaints

- Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint about
- I'm sorry to, but
- I'd like to complain to the manager, please.

Responding politely

- I really apologise. I can for you now.
- I am so sorry for that. We really didn't mean it.
- I am sorry; the manager is out at the moment.
- Don't worry, what can I do for you?

UNIT (11)



How to write a professional email:

From : The email address of the applicant.

To :The email address of the company

Subject : Applying for a job

Dear sir or madam,

Introduction

I am writing and sending this email after seeing your advertisement for a vacant job in your company. I am interested in working for your company.

Subject

(Give some details about yourself – your qualifications – your qualities – if you have a disability or not – asking some questions about the company)

Ending the email

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Kind regards.

(Your name)

Model Essay

The person you admire and respect

Everyone has an example to follow in his life, someone that they admire and respect. Someone that has a great influence on them. As for me, the person I admire most is neither a world famous nor a millionaire. I admire my great brother. Hard work was and still part of his life, but still he smiles all the time. His life can be a good example of a person who has suffered a lot, but has never asked for help or complained. He always advises me not to feel helpless in life and try to live my life in a way that people can remember me with pride and respect.

My brother worked in many places and travelled to many countries to earn his living. Now he works for himself as he has his own factory in which he makes clothes. He has a wonderful family whom I love very much. He really has helped me a lot to study and have my own private life.

Finally, I can say that, my brother is a good example for me and for his family. And we all admire and respect him.

Making complaints and polite responses:

Imagine that you bought some shoes last week and one shoe already has a hole in it. You go back to the shop to make a complaint.

Speaking

prepare answers for the following questions:

- How can I help you?
- Why do you like to meet the manager?
- What is wrong with it?

Ali

Practice

Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Ali and a sales assistant in a shoe shop.

Assistant: How can I help you?

Ali:

Assistant: Why do you want to meet him?

Ali:

Assistant: A complaint! About what?

Ali:

Assistant: Oh! I do apologies. I will replace it to you.



UNIT 11

General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the correct ans	swer from a, b, c or	d:	and the second of the second
1 left the party because		The second interest to a confirm task	eadache.
a) loud	aloud .	c) loudly	d) loudness
2 The astronauts	a lot of training abou	ıt how to examine a	nd fix the equipm
a) send) receive	c) take	d) deliver
3sure you tell y	our doctor about a	ny herbal medicine	s you are taking
a) lake	o) Do	c) Make	d) Become
4 Turn the music	, please. I have a h	eadache.	The state of the state of
	o) on	c) down	d) of
5 The manager hasn't re	eplied to the	l have made.	
a) interview b) complaint	c) agreement	d) decision
6 Our survey reveals an	interest teac	her training all over	the country.
a) at b) for	c) with	d) in
7 He was exhausted, so	he lookedt	o the end of his shif	t.
a) for b) forward	c) at	d) with
The public's response.	our issue w	as fantastic.	ded original a
a) to b) with	c) for	d) at
9 The school,las	t year, is one of the	biggest schools in a	our city.
d) WHICH DUIL) was built	c) built	d) that was built
1 left the company	for a long time.		
a) which I worked b)	where I worked	c) I was working	d) that I worked
We played a wonderfutired.	ul match with our	riends, mad	e us so happy and
			a 61 years) (Co.
	that	c) who	d) what
Making my family happ	by and relaxed is all	I want and	work for.
13you told me ca	when	c) where	d) that
The state of the s			
	Where	c) What	d) That
The woman the	green blouse is my		
	wearing	c) worn	d) wear
(5) He couldn't be persuad a) what	where		
6 Vegetables a lot	t of water de-4.c	c) which	d) who
a) which containing	o water, don't free		
c) containing	A Section 1	b) contain	
		d) are containing	

Fill in the space:

Read the following comprehension:

Teenagers today live in a very competitive world. It is more important than ever to succeed at school if you hope to have a chance in the job market afterwards. It's no wonder that many young people worry about letting down their parents, their peers and themselves. In trying to please everyone they take on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends. The result is that young people suffer from stress. There are different ways of dealing with stress. Everyone knows that caffeine, whether it is in the form of coffee or soft drinks, keeps you awake and alert. But caffeine is a drug which can become addictive. In the end, like other drugs, caffeine only leads to more stress. A better way to deal with stress is to exercise: Research has proved that physical exercise is a good release for stress, because it increases certain chemicals in the brain which calm you down. Enough sleep is also an important way of avoiding stress and of staying healthy and full of energy. Another way to avoid stress is by managing your time effectively. It is better to do a few tasks really well, than lots of tasks badly. Know your limits and try not to take on too much. Finally, if it all gets beyond your control, don't panic or get hysterical.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

c) out of reach

1 The best title for this passage is	
a) teen activity	b) teen stress
	d) teen culture
c) teen hobby	
2 The writer advises the teens to	b) out of control
a) within control	
, and the same of	d) beyond control

275

3 The writer is for the idea of the of work. d) mass c) quality b) quantity a) amount Having a lot of burdens results in d) stress c) stability b) success ${f 6}$ One of the following DOESN'T help in relieving stress. It is a) happiness b) enough sleep a) exercise

c) time management

d) caffeine

B) Answer the following questions:

What do you think the main causes of stress for the young?

How do you think teenagers can overcome stress?

Find word(s) in the passage that mean(s):

a) frightened

b) sufficient

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Do you think that punishment stops children from making mistakes? Many experts believe punishment is a negative way to bring up children.

2. In the past women were completely deprived of practising their rights, especially

the political rights.

3. Our armed forces stand against any outside or inside threat so that we can live with a feeling of security and safety.

B) Translate into English:

١- إن مؤتمر الشباب الذي يتم عقده كل عام في مصر فرصة عظيمة للشباب من مختلف دول العالم؛ كي يتقابلوا ويتناقشوا ويتبادلوا الخبرات والثقافات.

٢- تسـاهم وســائل الإعلام في توجيه الرأي العام نحو أهمية النظافة الشخصية والتباعد الاجتماعي واتخاذ التدابير الوقائية للحفاظ على صحة المواطنين من أمراض العصر ومنها فيروس كورونا المستجد.

٣- يعتبر بلدنا الحبيب مصر مضرب المثل للتسامح الديني والوحدة الوطنية من خلال التعايش السلمي بين مختلف طوائف الشعب والذي يعود لمئات السنين.

Enrich / your Vocabulary

advancement	تقدم	sacrifice	ضحی ا
discrimination	تمييز	radical	بذري
sectors	قطاعات	peaceful co-existence	لتعايش السلمي
national unity	الوحدة الوطنية	armed forces	القوات المسلحة
rate	معدل	anned forces	

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. How can we help people with disabilities.

2. About someone you know, or someone you know about, who has achieved success despite many difficulties.



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from	a, b, c or d:
	someone so they couldn't see the video of the robber
a) abled	b) disabled
c) enabled	d) able
she had to through the	crowd to get to the door.
a) dive	b) float
c) muscle	d) hide
3 In yoga class, we learn to	air slowly.
a) aspire	b) inspire
c) spear	d) smell
We're launching a new advertisi	ngfor this product.
a) company	b) companion
c) campaign	d) announcement
My professor'son my th	inking was deep and lasting.
a) fact	b) impact
c) cheat	d) character
His heart was filled with	for others. So, all people love him.
a) charity	b) cherry
c) hatred	d) anger
Theamong companies	should bring prices down for consumers.
a) fight	b) competition
c) completion	d) superstition
I didn't really expect a/an	answer, so I was surprised when she said "yes."
a) positive	b) negative
c) passive	d) active
	ottle? B: I think 1.5 litres.
a) hold	b) bold
c) fold	d) meld
The coach gathered the whole	team to their spirits before the final match.
a) leave	b) lift

c) remove

d) lower

OWIT	
the age of 31,	I had finished most of my post graduate studies. b) Since
a) At	Parameter from a very control of the
	d) By
mobile phone	s are cheap compared to the new ones.
a) Using	tan is the same of
•	d) Uses
whon I give my children	rewards for good work, they look
	b) happiness
a) happily	d) happy
c) happened	more modern than my uncle's one.
	b) more
a) many	d) so
c) much	
	tried to help clean our street. b) is
a) are	d) have
c) has	
	ork that I can't find time to go out with my family.
a) such a	b) such
c) too	d) so
📆 We went on holiday last	summer with some friends of
a) ours	b) our
c) we	d) I
18 Neither my friend Hams	nor her brothers tennis well.
a) plays	b) is playing
c) play	d) has played
19 The train station isn't	near here. You can ask a traffic man.
a) nowhere	b) somewhere
c) many where	d) anywhere
	my very good qualifications.
	b) despite
a) in spite	d) because of
c) although	Aid sinds and the beautiful to

Test 5

Based on Unit 11

Choose the correct	answer from a, b	c or d:	
women dream or	full equali	ty in the workplace.	
a) acmeving	Mach bear	b) campaigning	
competing		d) improving	
The company has la	aunched an advert	isingin the hope of a	tracting new customers.
a) competition		b) race	ttracting new customers.
c) campaign		d) charity	
3 Students should fi	nd a role-model to	0them	
a) hinder	b) mean	c) inspire	d) lift
My uncle joined th	ne of a lard	ge fishing boat many year	s ano
a) Stiff	b) staff	c) stuff	d) crew
Taking drugs has a	lways had a serio	uson people	
a) affection	b) effect	c) perfection	d) conflict
Our team hope to	improve their per	formance before the new	, commet
a) championship	b) battle	c) fight	
Edison, inv	ented the light b	ulb, was born in London.	
a) whom	b) who	c) whose	d) when
They have built a r	new school in the	village I had lived	La de la const
a) who			d) when
I read the paper	my brother	bought for my father.	The state of the s
	AND CORN CHARGE THE CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT O	c) what	d) in which
		ke my family out for lunch	1.
a) where			d) in which
It is my mother	Cal 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10		
a) which	b) whose	c) whom	d) that
		eciated by many people,	has got the prize of the
ideal teacher.	Garage.		h
a) who	b) which	c) whose	d) whom
		the FIVE options given:	
The synonym of th			
a) noisy		b) calm	c) blaring
d) rude		e) high	
		•	
The antonym of the		b) break	c) please
a) neglect			2017
d) satisfy		e) damage	

Fill in the space:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In many countries around the world, women are entering the work force in great numbers for the first time. It is true that more women are currently employed than ever before. However, "the goals of equal work opportunity for women have not been fully realised. For a number of reasons; they hold low-ranking positions, the last to be employed and the first to be fired when employment drops off. They usually get lower-paying positions than men, even if they were doing the same work. Certainly, great efforts have been made towards equality, but the problem of reaching this goal is becoming increasingly clear all the time. Although women have come a long way, they still have a long way to go for equal opportunity. Women in China now receive equal pay for equal work, therefore they are not dependent on their families as they once were. In the field of medicine they are nearly half of all the doctors there. On the other hand in many countries women now work as scientists, medical workers, welders, electrical workers, oil-well operators, vegetable growers and members of the armed forces.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 In the past, work conditions	were for both men and won	nen.
a) bad	b) the same	
c) good	d) different	
The underlined word "they" r	efers to	
a) men	b) positions	ti ka mijiriyay
c) women	d) countries	
Chinese women doctors cons	stitute about percent of all	the doctors.
a) five	b) fifteen	it la ancionale
c) fifty	d) sixty	Delp

- The synonym of "drops off" is
 - a) develop

b) increase

c) go up

- d) decrease
- - a) weak power

b) low payment

c) little effort

d) bad thinking

B) Answer the following questions:

- ga How far have women around the world achieved equal work opportunity with men?
- What is the situation of women in China?
- 23 In the last paragraph, why did the author list different jobs?
- Translate into English:
 - للرياضة دور كبير في محاربة وحل المشـكلات الاجتماعية مثل الجريمة والعنف والإدمان، كما يمكنها مسـاعدة الأطفال والشباب على تكوين شخصية مستقلة ومؤثرة.
- 25 Translate into Arabic:

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognised that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

How the society can be helpful to the disabled.





Unit (P

Hard work

Objectives

Reading : A summary of Silas Marner

Writing : A book review of Silas Marner

Listening : A conversation about how people work

Language : Modal verbs of possibility can't, might, must

Speaking : Explaining mysteries

Critical thinking : Project - research and present a famous mystery



Warm up

Match the novel type to the correct picture.

Science Fiction



Fantasy

Mysteries



Westerns

Romance



Horror



Historical



Thrillers

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

disappear (v) - ed	يختفى
engaged (adj)	مرتبط/مخطوب
guilty (adj)	مذنب/مجرم

mystery (n)	لغز/غموض	
solve (v) – d	يحل	
weaver (n)	صانع النسيج	

Vocabulary on Reading

alone (adv)	بمفرده	
call (v) – ed	یسمی/ینادی	
cottage (n)	کوخ/بیت ریفی	
decide (v) – d	يقرر	
earlier (adv)	فيما مضى	
empty (adj)	فارغ	
fireplace (n)	المدفأة	
happen (v) – ed	يحدث	
instead (adv)	عوضنًا عن	

local people	السكان المحليون
offer (v) – ed (n)	يعرض/عرض
prove (v) – d	تبنت
realise (v) – d	يدرك
sick (adj)	مريض
steal (v)	يسرق
surprised (adj)	مندهش
unpleasant (adj)	غیر سار



Vocabulary on Listening

Artificial Intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي ظروف مجنون/غريب	
conditions (n)		
crazy (adj)		
customer (n)	زبون	
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	

look (v) – ed	يبدو يبدو
machinery (n)	الميكنة/الآلات
manual labour (n)	عمل يدوى
operate (v) – d	يـُشغل
ordinary (adj)	عادى

Workbook Vocabulary

pale (adj)	شاحب/باه <i>ت</i> مهارة	
skill (n)		
special (adj)	خاص	

thin (adj)	نحيف
the early years	السنوات الأولى
trust (v) – ed (n)	یثق/ثقة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

(be) engaged to	مخطوب لـ
(be) married to	متزوج من
earn money	يكسب مالًا
feel sorry for	يشعر بالأسف لـ
care about	يهتم بـ
come from	یأتی من
compared to	بالمقارنة ب
disappear from	يختفى من
forget about	ینسی بشان
friendly to	ودود اـ
guilty of	مذنب بشان
hide from	يخفى من
important to	هام لـ

live lonely lives	يعيش حياة وحيدة		
new to the village	جديد بالنسبة للقرية		
solve the mystery	يحل لغزًا		
take care of	یعتنی ب		
work as hard as he can	يعمل بجد قدر استطاعته		
join <mark>in</mark>	ينضم إلى		
part of	جزء من		
remember about	يتذكر بشان		
return to	يعود إلى		
sorry about	آسف بشان		
stay with	یبقی مع		
steal from	يسرق من		
think about	يعتقد/يفكر بشأن		

UNIT (12)

Derivatives

	wester with	Noun	71 6625	Adjective
Verb	San	A STATE OF THE STA		
disappoar	يختفى	disappearance	اختفاء	
disappear guilt	يتمم	guilt guiltiness	ذن <i>ب</i> ذنب	
***************************************		mystery	لغز/غموض	mysterious غامض
prove	يثبت	proof	دلیل/برهان	proven بنبة
realise	يدرك	realism realist reality	واقعیة شخص واقعی واقع	real حقیقی realistic واقعی
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable قابل للحل
steal	يسرق	steal	سرقة	مسروق stolen
surprise	يدهش	surprise	دهشة	مندهش surprised مدهش surprising
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	واثق trusting واثق موثوق فیه trusted
weave النسيج	ینسج/یصنع	weaving weaver	صناعة النسيج صانع النسيج	

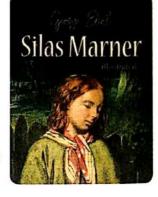


pre-reading question:

What are the advantages of working hard?

Silas Marner

Silas Marner is a weaver(1) who lives in the village of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very friendly to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone(2). Fifteen years earlier, Silas had been engaged to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was taking care(3) of



صانع النسيج (1) اختفى (4) فارغة (5) مذنب (6)

شارکت (9)

لغز (10)

a friend who was sick, a bag of money disappeared(4) from under the friend's bed. A man called William Dane finds the empty(5) bag and Silas's friends decide that he is guilty⁽⁶⁾ of stealing the money. Later, William marries Sarah instead, and Silas decides to move to the village of Raveloe. The only thing he cares about is his work as a weaver. All Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to earn as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass,

has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they hide⁽⁷⁾ from their father and they always want to have more money. One night, a bag of gold is stolen⁽⁸⁾ from Silas's house and the whole village joins in⁽⁹⁾ to look for it. The local people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the mystery. (10)

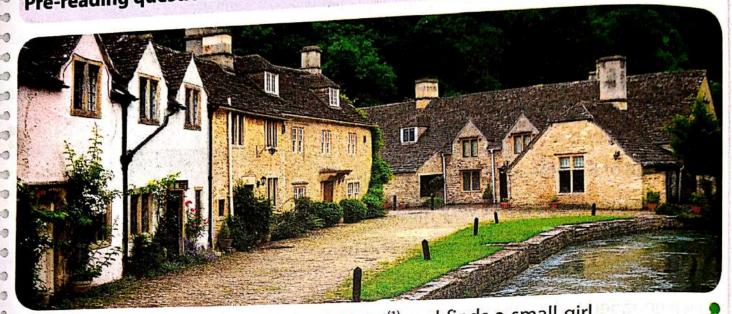
Post-reading question:

- Who do you think stole Silas's gold? Why?

UNIT



Pre-reading question: - What do you remember about Silas Marner?



One evening, Silas returns to his cottage(1) and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace(2). The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They might have had an accident. He decides to look after her. He calls(3) her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised(4), but they think that Silas can't be a bad person because he wants to look after(5) the girl. They also help him. Silas is now happier. He realises that his new daughter is more important to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him. It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with him. He and his wife offer (6) to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas. Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to prove(7) that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know.

كوخ (1)

مدفأة (2)

يعرض (6)

غير سار (8)

Silas feels that he can now forget about this unpleasant (8) part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

Post-reading question: - What mystery was solved in the book?

زوج (1)

مازال (2)

زبون (3)

خسر (4)

صنناع النسيج (6)

بدلًا من (8)

غريب جداً (9)



pre-listening question: -	Do you think that Silas needed to work a lot?
pre-listering	silas needed to work a lot?

Woman: Hello, husband(1)! Come and sit down, and I will get you some water.

: Look! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner is still(2) Man working!

Woman: He must have got another new customer(3).

: Yes, that must be why he's working so late. I don't Man understand why he always works so much.

Woman: He might have lost(4) a lot of money while he was living in the north.

: But all his customers are so happy with the things he Man makes. He can't have lost money. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to — he's got bags and bags full of gold coins(5).

Woman: Really? I just don't really like weavers(6). I think weaving is a very strange⁽⁷⁾ job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer

or a fisherman instead of (8) working with these crazy (9) new machines?

: I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to do with these machines.

Post-listening question:

Man

- Are people today worried about machines taking their jobs? Why or why not?

Workbook Text

The story of Silas Marner begins in the English countryside in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside (1), and they usually looked pale (2) and thin compared to (3) the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't trust anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a special skill and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived lonely lives.

الريف (1)	
	П
شاحب (2)	b
مقارنة بـ (3)	
يثق (4)	H
(E) Edoo	

Video Script

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard(1) work would have looked very different for an ordinary person(2). Manual labour(3) could be very difficult; the machinery(4) was often heavy and dangerous to operate(5), and working conditions(6) were not good.

Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more efficiently(7) with the help of modern machinery and technology. Modern workplaces⁽⁸⁾ are even using Artificial Intelligence⁽⁹⁾, so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future.

The question is: are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us?

- شاق (1)
- شخص عادی (2)
- العمل اليدوي (3)
- الآلات (4)
- يشغل (5)
- ظروف العمل (6)
- بكفاءة (7)
- أماكن العمل (8)
- الذكاء الاصطناعي (9)

▶| **♦**) 0:00









Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This medicine won't make the paincompletely, but it will help.
 - a) appear
- b) disappear
- c) develop
- d) advance
- The police could the mystery of the crime with difficulty.
 - a) solve

b) pull

c) call

- d) clean
- Before you can drive, you need to have a licence.
 - a) lonely
- b) loneliness
- c) leanly
- d) alone
- A young woman was found of murder in my neighbourhood.
 - a) missing
- b) empty
- c) guilty
- d) lonely
- Because I live in a remote, my car is very important to me.
 - a) solution
- b) village
- c) fireplace
- d) weaver

Focus on Vocabulary

disappear	يختفى	to become impossible to see or find
engaged		to become in a relationship to get married
guilty	مذنب/مجرم	a person who did something bad/describes someone who has broken a rule or a law
mystery	لغز/غموض	something unknown/something that is difficult to explain or understand
solve	يحل	to find an answer to a problem
weaver	صانع النسيج	a person who makes cloth by twisting wool together

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
disappear	يختفى	vanish	appear	يظهر
earlier	فیما مضی	former/previous	later	فيما بعد
	فارغ	blank/unfilled/vacant	filled/full	مملوء
empty	arigina istante sinta ne antaleste e e e este e algebra de la principa de	convicted	guiltless/innocent	غير مذنب
guilty	مذنب/مجرم		dark	غامق اللون
pale	شاحب/بامت	faint	disprove	ینکر / ینفی
prove	يثبت	confirm	general	عام
special	خاص	particular	- 444-09 - 4-44-00 - 1-44-00 - 1-44-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4-4-00 - 1-4	غير مندهش
surprised	مندهش	astonished	unsurprised	<u>سار</u>
unpleasant	غير سار	nasty/undesirable	pleasant	Section of the sectio

Notes on Vocabulary



(decide

يقرر أن

decide to + inf.

▶ He decided to sleep early before the exam.

decide on + (noun)

She decided on her goal in life.

decide that ▶ He decided that his wife will attend the party.

(steal

rob

سرق (شیئا)

steal + (something)

She stole my money last week.

ىسرق (مكانــًا)

rob + (place)

He robbed the bank with his friends yesterday.

بسرق شيء من (شخص)

rob + (someone) + of + (something)

▶ The thief robbed Ali of his wallet two days ago.

alone

Ionely

alone

بمفرده (شیء مادی)

You shouldn't leave a child alone in the house.

Ionely

یشعر بالوحدة (شیء معنوی)

▶ Tammy felt very lonely when she first arrived in New York.

only a few

only a little

only a few + (countable noun : اسم يعد)

فقط القليل من

▶ There are only a few students in the class today.

only a little + (uncountable noun : اسم لا يعد)

فقط القليل من

▶ There is only a little sugar in the kitchen.

(cloth

clothes

clothes

cloth My father bought a suit made of grey cloth.

قماش (اسم لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد)

ملابس (اسم جمع دائمـًا وليس له مفرد ويعامل معاملة الجمع) Don't forget to bring some clean clothes with you.

Language Notes

1. You think it's possible that he worked hard last year but you aren't sure.

- كلمة hard هنا استخدمت كظرف وليس فعلًا، مع العلم أن كلمة hard ليست الحال من hard بل هي تأتى بمعنى بالكادوليس بجر

2. He wants to prove that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier.

- كلمة earlier تستخدم بمعنى منذ مدة معينة وحتى وقت معين في الماضي، على عكس كلمة ago بمعنى منذ مدة معينة وحتى الأن

3. The other people in the village aren't very friendly to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone.

- كلمة alone تســتخدم كصفة بمعنى وحيدأما كلمة lonely فســتخدم كصفة بمعنى شــاعر بالوحدة ولا تستخدم كحال على عكس كلمة alone التي من الممكن استخدامها كحال بمعنى بمفرده أو دون أي مساعدة.

4. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with him.

- يمكن استخدام what كضمير وصل مساوية لـ (the thing that/the things that).

5. It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago.

استخدام all بمعنى طوال إذا جاء بعدها مدة زمنية أما إذا جاء بعدها اسم فتستخدم بمعنى كل

- A bag of gold is stolen from Silas's house and the whole village joins in to look for it. - أما كلمة the whole فتستخدم بمعنى كله أو بأكمله

Check Point 🙎

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Don't ever let anybodyyour dreams. Keep fighting for what you want.
 - a) steal
- b) rob

c) lift

- A strange man my wallet yesterday.

d) robbed

- b) brought
- c) stole
- d) missed
- 3 The gang the bank and took all the money last week.
- c) stole

- b) robbed

- d) a little
- 4 Ali met only friends before going to school yesterday.

d) for

a) few

b) little

- My wife has decided blue for the bathroom.

a) on

b) that

UNIT 12

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

		vo	
1 The police are l	ooking for the two girls w	ho while w	alking nome from school
a) appeared	b) missed	c) disappeared	d) lost
We really need	an effective to th	e traffic problem in	Cairo.
a) solution		c) mystery	d) relation
Twenty years af	ter the event, his death re	emains a	
	b) mystery		
	the most beautif		
a) invent		c) work	at a
5 The police are in	vestigating the	deaths of children a	t the hospital.
a) hidden		c) mysterious	
6 A is som	neone whose job is to we		
a) weaver	b) tutor		d) waver
The company	you the chance to	buy Naguib Mahfot	ız's novels at half price.
	b) proves		
	vestigating theo		
		c) secret	
They live in a sm	all townKafr El-D		-
a) termed	b) worded		d) called
🔞 It was my dream	to have a littlein	the countryside to	
a) factory			
🚮 l can't work prop	erly on a/anston		rv.
a) empty	b) full		d) filled
😰 Scientists always	try to find new ways to	our problem	is.
a) contain	b) solve	c) improve	
β It was very cold, s	so we sat in front of the	until late in t	he evening
a) fire engine	b) fire alarm	c) fireplace	d) fire blanket
🖪 She admitted	the money from her	new employers.	and a second
a) giving	b) knowing	c) robbing	d) stealing
Checking my ansv	wers helped met	the mistakes I made	a) steaming
a) realise	b) educate	c) recognize	d) ignore
6 We were t	o hear such an intelligen	t question coming	from a very small child.
a) obvious	b) surprised	c) special	d) amazing
-	•	-, -p seidi	arriazing

to all exists a few	(Har	d work
My sister had such a/an experience a	the park that the	- C d to go thora
.4[7]	the park that she	refused to go there
1 attractive Willice	pleasant	d)lessent
can you that you were at home at the	time of the sate also	a) unpleasant
a) remove b) approve c)	improve	
hut the	Py now live in a situ	d) prove
a) village b) neighbourhood c	area	
We don't know what happened to our new te	levision It is really	d) continent
a) disappearance b) guilty	mystery	d) proof
Intelligence means the study of how t	O make computers	do intelligent things
that people can do, such as think and make d	ecisions	do intelligent triings
L.V.) Man-made	d) Autificial
Many women do hard labour which r	noans thou work w	ith their hands
a) manual b) automatic	machine made	d) computarised
Don't worry, everyone will be shown how to	, machine-made	a) computerised
Don't worry, everyone will be shown how to	the new ma	
a) cooperate b) operate	.) WORK :	d) turn
The market was full of who were buy	ing goods from all	over the country.
a) costumes b) customers	Customs	d) officers
Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives	, synonyms and ant	onyms Exercises
If Rania can't attend the meeting, I could go		
a) onside b) for	c) instead	d) outside
a) onside b) for	ldina?	
Have you decideda date for the wed	c) to	d) that
		d) that
a) on O) for	neared sig	
Adham watched his father's car until it disap	pearedsig	
Adham watched his father's car until it disap	w u c	
Adham watched his father's car until it disap a) to b) in He was found not guiltythe death o	of his neighbour.	
Adham watched his father's car until it disage a) to b) in He was found not guiltythe death of	of his neighbour. c) of	ht. d) from
Adham watched his father's car until it disap a) to b) in He was found not guiltythe death o a) in b) from	of his neighbour. c) of	ht. d) from d) at
Adham watched his father's car until it disap a) to b) in He was found not guiltythe death o a) in b) from	of his neighbour. c) of	ht. d) from d) at
Adham watched his father's car until it disage a) to b) in He was found not guilty the death of a) in Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE Half the classroom was empty because of the	of his neighbour. c) of c options given: ne bad weather. The	ht. d) from d) at e synonym of the word
Adham watched his father's car until it disage a) to b) in He was found not guilty the death of a) in Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE Half the classroom was empty because of the	of his neighbour. c) of c options given: ne bad weather. The	ht. d) from d) at e synonym of the word t e) full
Adham watched his father's car until it disage a) to b) in He was found not guilty the death of a) in Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE Half the classroom was empty because of the	of his neighbour. c) of c options given: ne bad weather. The	ht. d) from d) at e synonym of the word t e) full
Adham watched his father's car until it disagral to B) in He was found not guilty the death of a) in Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE Half the classroom was empty because of the empty is C) pleasand b) faint C) pleasand b) faint C) pleasand cuilty of killing his wife. The answers found guilty of killing his wife. The answers found guilty of killing his wife.	of his neighbour. c) of c options given: ne bad weather. The ant antonym of the wo	ht. d) from d) at e synonym of the word t e) full rd "guilty" is e) surprised
Adham watched his father's car until it disagral to B) in He was found not guilty the death of a) in Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE Half the classroom was empty because of the empty is C) pleasand b) faint C) pleasand b) faint C) pleasand cuilty of killing his wife. The answers found guilty of killing his wife. The answers found guilty of killing his wife.	of his neighbour. c) of c options given: ne bad weather. The ant antonym of the wo	ht. d) from d) at e synonym of the word t e) full rd "guilty" is e) surprised
Adham watched his father's car until it disagrae) to By in He was found not guilty the death of a) in Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE Half the classroom was empty because of the empty is b) faint c) pleasa	of his neighbour. c) of c options given: ne bad weather. The ant d) vacar antonym of the wo ess d) nasty the word "unplea	ht. d) from d) at e synonym of the word t e) full rd "guilty" is e) surprised



Modals of Deduction

(must – can't – might)

must + inf.

بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع والمستقبل)

▶ Use must + infinitive without to when you are sure about something.

- نستخدم must يليها المصدر عندما نكون متأكدين من شيء ما.

▶ He has an expensive car. He must be rich.

must have + p.p.

بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج وتأكيد في الماضي)

▶ They are all wearing coats. It must have been cold when they took this photo.

can't + inf.

بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفى في المضارع والمستقبل)

▶ Use can't + infinitive without to when you are sure something is not possible.

- نستخدم .can't + inf عندما نكون متأكدين من عدم إمكانية حدوث شيء ما.

▶ He has an expensive car. He can't be poor.

can't have + p.p.

بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفي في الماضي)

It can't have been winter in this photo. There are leaves on all the trees!

(Examples:

- He is rich. I'm certain he is happy.
 - = He is rich. He must be happy.
- She was absent yesterday. I am sure she was ill.
 - = She was absent yesterday. She must have been ill.
- He can't buy this car. I am sure he isn't rich.
 - = He can't buy this car. He can't be rich.
- She is tired. I think she didn't have enough sleep.
 - = She is tired. She can't have had enough sleep.

might + be

تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما ممكن، ولكن لسنا متأكدين في زمن المضارع.

- Use might (not) + infinitive without to when you are not sure about something. . It is possible that Ahmed is tired.
 - = Ahmed might be tired.
 - . They might be at home but we aren't sure.

might have + p.p.

تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما كان ممكنًا، ولكن لسنا متأكدين في زمن الماضي.

- It is possible that Ahmed was tired.
 - = Ahmed might have been tired.

- يمكن استخدام بعض الأفعال الناقصة لبيان درجة التأكد من شيء سواء في المضارع أو الماضي كالآتي:

Deduction	sure to happen (مؤكد حدوث الفعل)	not sure (محتمل حدوث الفعل)	sure not to happen (مؤكد عدم حدوث الفعل)	
Present	must be must + inf.	might be might + inf.	can't be	
Past	must have + p.p.	might have + p.p.	can't have + p.p.	

Check Point (3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He was absent yesterday. Heill.
 - a) might be

- b) may be c) can't have been d) might have been
- 2 A student got out of the class and then he came back again. Heforgotten his bag.
 - a) can't have
- b) must be
- c) will have
- d) must have
- She came to school late. Shecaught the school bus.

- d) might have
- b) may have c) can't have I can't remember how old I was when I first saw the Pyramids, but Ifour.
 - a) must be
- b) might be
- c) can't have
- d) might have been
- She lost her wallet. Shelost it in the mall.

- a) might
- b) might have
- c) must have
- d) can't have

UNIT 12

Language Exercises

at the corre	ect answer from a, b	o, c or a:	
Choose the corre	is not here. He	out.	
My friend's car	IS NOT HEIC. THE	b) must have gone	
a) must go	100 1 1 1 1 1	d) can't have gone	their keys
c) should have	gone	f their windows. They	trien keys.
② Our neighbour	s are preaking one o	d) can't have gone if their windows. They b) can't have lost	
must have it)SL	le avo lost	
c) mightn't hav	e lost	ycle is lying on the road	near him. He
Tariq has injure	d his leg and his bic	yele is i,s	
the hole.		b) can't have seen	
a) must have se	en	11/+ 500	
c) might have s	een	. my friend Ali. I	asked him to come.
4 A: Who's knocki	ng on the door? B: I	tmy friend Ali. I	
a) must be		b) can't bed) might have been	
c) must have be	en en	d) might have been	oroad.
3 You have	seen Dr Ahmed her	re yesterday. He is still al	d) mustn't
a) may	b) must	c) carre	u) maseri
My friend is a do	octor. Hecle	ver at school.	
a) must have be	en	(b) Carre riave been	
c) might have be		d) may have been	* *
She looks happy	. She her exa	ams.	
a) must pass		b) may pass	
c) can't nass		d) must have passed	
They have been	playing all day. They	be very tired.	
a) must	b) needn't	c) shouldn't	d) should
Nhon I knocked	on the door, there w	as no answer, they	out.
a) must be	on the dissipation	b) must have been	
		d) can't have been	
c) can't be	away after he had re	obbed the bank. We car	't find him now.
			82 (1 to 17 to 1
a) must run			ine Servent #
c) mustn't nave ru	ın di sanatiana	d) can't run	difficult for her.
		they have been	difficult for field
a) can't	b) must		d) mustn't
		ay. You mistaker	1.
a) must be	b) might be	c) can't be	d) mustn't be

	Hard work
My neighbour was at the doctor's yest	erday. She
a) must be	b) can't be
must have been	d) can't have been
expensive travelling round Lo	ondon. Bus and underground tickets cost
a lot of money.	
a) may be b) can't be	c) must be d) might be
A She always gets the full mark in her ex	ams. Sheclever
a) must have been	b) must be
c) can't be	d) had to be
The streets are all muddy. Ithe	eavily yesterday night.
a) can't have rained	
c) must have rained	d) would have rained
nave just seen Omar at school now. I	Hebe at home.
a) can't b) mustn't	c) can
18 am sure I lost one of my school book	ss. I have dropped it somewhere.
a) must b) can't	c) shall d) will
My son was given a reward at school.	Hehave worked hard.
a) must b) can't	c) should d) mustn't
20 I can't find my new pair of shoes. The	yl have no idea.
height have been stolen	b) can't be stolen
have been stolen	d) can't have been stolen
There is water all over the floor. Some	eone the taps on.
The last term of the la	Carrellorger
	d) can't have forgotten
c) must have forgotten My father take us on a picnic	TIENT WEEK THE THE
a) must b) might	c) need through it.
a) must b) might the door of the cell was broken. So, t	the prisonersthoughte
a) must escape	b) must have escaped
a) must escape	d) can't have escaped
c) can't escape Nohaa surprise. We arrived s	suddenly and she didn't expense
a) must have got	b) must get
a) must have got	d) mustn't have got
c) can't have got	ctly. d) might be
a) can't have got the litour train. It is on time exact b) must be a) can't be b) must be	c) can't have been
a) can't be b) must be Nada didn't phone me as I asked he	r. She busy.
% Nada didn't phone me as i asked in	la) must be
a cont bo	IN THE LICT FLAVE P
c) can't have been	

UNIT (12)	unidoles en a
lt be a bird. It doesn't lay eggs. a) may b) might c) can't A: Do you think he is annoyed? B: I am not sure, he be a) must b) can't Mona have telephoned me as I was in all day. a) must b) may c) might	d) must e. d) might d) can't
 Fill in the space: When I went to school yesterday, I was surprised. There we students, so, I said I might	to the playground, re that they
she sees any doll, she feels ill. 3 Nada always gets high marks in her exams, so we thought that But in her last exam, she didn't get good marks; she	she may be clever. have studied pital and she be sad be sad happy as her
I am going to retire next week and I am looking forward to it. For life I will be free to do the things I like. I have always wanted the get up early to travel to work anymore. I don't(b)	nat. I(a)(a) o earn a living. My r travelling around



are irrational and so some people think that they must(d)......phobias.

Everyone in the world may have something to fear. A child(a).............. fear

being in the dark. An old man on the other hand,(b)........... fear losing his life. Although fears might also change throughout life, most people remain having a fear(c).......... something. I used to fear war, small places and even heights, but I have overcome these fears. I sometimes feel that some of my fears

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

C	hoose the correct answer from		Chegway!
4	My neighbour gotwhile travellir a) appeared b) missed	d: Brown against	i ditum sm tana 🤚
	a) appeared b) missed I noticed her glass was, and offer a) full b) filled	ng to Alexandria.	
2	I noticed her glass was	c) disappeared	d) lost
	a) full b) filled	red her some more v	water.
3	a) full b) filled Salem is one of my oldest friends.	c) empty	d) free
	Salem is one of my oldest friends. I	him completely.	Pulls Store of Train
4	a) hate b) trust They wanted tohim from the so	c) distrust	d) dislike
	a) hide	idiers. He is suspecti	ed of murder.
5	a) hide b) appear It was a very difficult maths problem, bu a) prove b) solve	c) cover	d) remain
	a) prove b) solve	r managed to	it.
6	a) prove b) solve We know the man is because we a) innocent b) quilty	c) improve	d) include
	a) innocent b) quilty	saw him take the n	noney.
7	The new carpet was made by a very skill	c) mysterious	d) respectable
17	a) weaver b) tutor	Tul	the street of the
8	a) weaver b) tutor Everyone was friendlyus on our	c) tallor	d) sewer
P.	a) for b) from	traveis, so they wer	
9	Surely, hehis experiment. He's or	oly boon in the labor	d) at
	a) can't finish	b) must finish	atory for ten minutes.
	c) can't have finished	d) must have fin	ichad
10	Hehis train. He'll have to wait to	yo hours until the n	extone
	a) must have caught	b) might have ca	
	c) must have missed	d) can't have mis	
11	She understood the question be		
•	a) shouldn't have b) can't have		
10	The test been very easy. You got		
_	a) can't have b) could have	c) might have	d) must have
19	Ahmed has a very good job so he	a lot of money. La	am sure.
10	a) can't have b) must have	() might have	d) may have
			· Cohm
14	Sheill. I am not sure. a) must have been b) must be	c) can't have be	en d) might be
	Itvery windy during the night. The	ere are broken branc	hes all over the ground.
15	a) must be b) must have been	c) can't be	d) can't have been
	Surely, they have brought these	heavy pieces of m	etal by boat. The boat
16	Surely, they have brought these	and sector despets	by Depth (pt 1)
	would have sunk.	c) may	d) ought to
	a) can't b) must	c) may	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In 1945, the first bomb was dropped on Hiroshima in Japan. It produced an explosion equal to 20,000 tons of T.N.T. (until then the most powerful explosive that the world had known). It killed about 200,000 people. If this bomb had not been used then, the world wouldn't have realised to the full of destructive power. Since then, a hydrogen bomb has been perfected by certain world powers. It is believed that this terrible bomb, if it is exploded, will release energy equal to 100 megatons that is to say one hundred million tons, of T.N.T. The Hiroshima bomb killed 200,000 people which is a terrible number of deaths; but if a single hydrogen bomb is used in warfare, it will kill about a thousand million people. If five such bombs are dropped on the five inhabited continents, the entire population of the world, which is estimated at about three thousand million people, will be destroyed. This is the reason why the great mass of the people in the world do not want another war. If there were another war, and if hydrogen bombs were to be used in it, the whole world would be destroyed.

It is a pity that in this atomic age, countries compete in the field of armament and every day we hear of a new weapon which threatens to put an end to our life and increases the pains of the suffering humanity.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 It is a fact that
 - a) the first atomic bomb was not dropped on a Japanese city
 - b) the population of the world is about a thousand million people
 - c) an atomic bomb is far more powerful than any bomb used before
 - d) a new bomb will be less destructive.
- 2 Certain world powers are to blame because
 - a) an atomic bomb is filled with T.N.T
 - b) a hydrogen bomb has been perfected
 - c) most of the people are not afraid of another war
 - d) one megaton equals hundred tons
- 3 The passage clearly shows that
 - a) a hydrogen bomb could kill far less people than an atomic bomb
 - b) an atomic bomb is more powerful than a hydrogen bomb
 - c) a hydrogen bomb is less powerful than an atomic bomb
 - d) a hydrogen bomb could kill far more people than an atomic bomb.

12

Hard work

d) entire

- (4) If the atomic bomb had not been dropped on Hiroshima, a) the hydrogen bomb would have been invented
 - b) the world would be destroyed
 - c) the world would not have known how powerful the atomic bomb was d) it would have destroyed the whole world
- - b) equal c) perfect

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think most of the people in the world are afraid of another war?
- 7 When do you think the world would be a safer place?
- What fact did the world realise after the first atomic bomb had been used?

A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. Close friendship is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health.
- 2. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.
- 3. There are some very simple measures that may keep you healthy for longer. The first of such measures is to brush your teeth with dental paste twice daily.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- من المعروف أن الخوف الزائد من الامتحانات سلاح ذو حدين، فأحيانـًا يساعدك على المذاكرة وأحيانـًا يجعلك متوترًا، وهو ما يؤثر سلبيًا على تركيزك.
- ٢- يجب علينا أن نضع في اعتبارنا أن هناك بعض الأشخاص غير القادرين على التحكم في مخاوفهم؛ لذلك فهم في حاجة للمساعدة للتغلب على هذه المخاوف.
- ٣- الأمية و الجهل و الفقر هم الأعداء الحقيقيون لإعاقة تقدم أي دولة، ومن هنا يجب أن يكون هناك طرق و حلول مناسبة وجذرية للتخلص منها.

Enrich / your Vocabulary

relieve	يريح/يمدأ	stress	الضغط/التوتر
	عقلی	stability	الاستقرار
measures	إجراءات	dental paste	معجون أسنان
extreme fear	الخوف الزائد	put into consideration	يضع فى الاعتبار
ignorance	الجمل	hinder	يعوق
illiteracy	الأمية	poverty	الفقر

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

- 1. How to keep healthy.
- Your role as a student in serving your country.



Lessons 3&4





Key Vocabulary

characters (n)	شخصيات
pace (n)	سرعة
page-turner (n)	كتاب شيق

plot (n)	 حبكة الرواية
theme (n)	موضوع الكتاب/القصة

Vocabulary on Reading

abandoned (adj)	مهجور
adopt (v) – ed	يتبنى
check (v) – ed	يفحص/يتأكد
close (adj)	قريب
community (n)	مجتمع
crime (n)	جريمة
divide (v) – d	تهسم
ensure (v) – d	يؤكد
equally (adv)	بشكل متساوٍ
event (n)	حدث
explain (v) – ed	يشرح/يفسر

find (v)	تخد
happiness (n)	سعادة
interesting (adj)	شيق
legend (n)	أسطورة
puzzle (n)	لغز
recommend (v) – ed	يوصى بـ
share (v) – d	يشارك
show (v)	يظهر
stones (n)	أحجار
surprise (n)	مفاجاة
warehouse (n)	مستودع



Workbook Vocabulary

archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار
around (prep)	William Account
BCE = Before Common Era	حوالی
bear (n)	قبل الميلاد
believe (v) – d	
bury (v) (y) – buried	يصدق/يؤمن/يعتقد
coast (n)	يدفن ساحل
deep (adj)	عميق
describe (v) – d	يصف
distant (adj)	بغتد
funny (adj)	مضحك

lake (n)	يخبرة المجاز
laugh (v)	بضدك
lie (v)	يقع
monster (n)	وحش
pharaohs (n)	مُراعنة
pirate (n)	قرصان
shape (n)	شکل
success (n)	نجاح
traditional (adj)	تقليدى
treasure (n)	كنز
unusual (adj)	غیر عادی

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a lonely man	رجل وحيد
all the gold was gone	ضاع كل الذهب
bring them back into	يعود بهم إلى
drive across	يقود عبر
feel like	يشعر وكأنه
go back to	يعود إلى
agree to	يوافق على
belong to	ينتمى إلى
full of	مملوء بـ
good at	جید فی
happen to	يحدث ل

go wrong	يخطئ/يتعطل
in the north of	في الشمال
mystery stories	قصص الغموض
take photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ
take place	يحث
work better as	يعمل أفضل ك
know about	يعرف عن
live on	يعيش في
recommend to	یوصی/یرشح لـ
return to	يعود إلى
take to	ياخذ إلى

UNIT 12

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective
abandon	يهجر	abandonment	هجرة	abandoned
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	لفون buried
close	يقرب	closeness	قرب	close
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep ميق
describe	يصف	description	وصف	مکن وصفه describable
distance	تنعد	distance	مسافة	ىيە distant
equalise	يعادل	equality	مساواة	equal ساو
augh	يضحك	laugh laughter	ضحك ضحك	اaughable فنحك







Ismail

I had to read *Silas Marner* when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much then. However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The pace⁽¹⁾ was quite fast and the plot⁽²⁾ is full of surprises⁽³⁾.

I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to these wonderful characters⁽⁴⁾. I would recommend⁽⁵⁾ this book to anyone who enjoys mystery⁽⁶⁾ stories.

Nadia

This is a very interesting story of a sad and lonely man who finds happiness when he adopts⁽⁷⁾ a girl. It isn't a page-turner⁽⁸⁾, but I liked the way Eliot used the theme⁽⁹⁾ of community⁽¹⁰⁾. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can feel like they don't belong⁽¹¹⁾ to their community but events⁽¹²⁾ can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of *Silas Marner* might have worked better as a short story rather than a novel.

What happened to the gold?

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an abandoned warehouse 14. They agreed to share 15 it equally 16. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John checked to see if anyone else was close 17. John and Jake took it to a house to divide 18. Jane 19.

and Jake took it to a house to divide (18) it. Jane went to ensure (19) they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of stones and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?

الأحداث (1)	سرعة/إيقاع
-------------	------------

(2) أحيكة

(3)	alà.

(4)	 صا	
(4)	TO.	١ū

مستودع (14)

يتأكد من (19)



مهجور (13)

Workbook Text

Boy: This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the mountains. The theme⁽¹⁾ is how life in a village is changing in the modern world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many traditional⁽²⁾ parts of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

Girl: This book is very funny! It is about a family who drive across the country for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that go wrong! The car is stopped by a bear⁽³⁾, and they meet a lot of strange⁽⁴⁾ people. My favourite character⁽⁵⁾ is a police officer who is not very good at his job! I laughed⁽⁶⁾ a lot and would recommend this book.

Cleopatra VII

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 BCE. The famous writer, Plutarch, described⁽⁷⁾ the beautiful place where she was buried⁽⁸⁾. However, although archaeologists⁽⁹⁾ have found much older pharaohs⁽¹⁰⁾, nobody knows where Cleopatra lies⁽¹¹⁾ today. In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra.

Oak Island

غريب(4)
شخصية (5)
ضحلك (6)
وصف (7)
وصف (7)
غلماء الآثار (9)
الفراعنة (10)
الفراعنة (10)
تقع (11)
الساحل الشرقي (12)
يعتقد (13)
قرصان (14)
عميق (16)
عميق (16)
وحش (17)
بعيد (18)

غير عادي (19)

وضوع الرواية (1)

تقليدي (2)

دب (3)

Oak Island is on the east coast⁽¹²⁾ of Canada. People believe⁽¹³⁾ that a pirate⁽¹⁴⁾ called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure⁽¹⁵⁾ and buried it on the island in the seventeenth century. He wanted to go back to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have tried to find the treasure, without success.

Loch Ness

Loch Ness is a very deep⁽¹⁶⁾lake in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, strange animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness Monster⁽¹⁷⁾. Some people have even taken photos of a distant⁽¹⁸⁾ shape that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything unusual⁽¹⁹⁾. But people still believe that something lives in the lake.

d) occasion



1 It is difficult to keep up with the rest or d:	
1 It is difficult to keep up with the rapid	
technology.	Of change !
a) plot	of change in the modern age of
o meme	A LITTLE CONTRACTOR
2 The last novel of Ehsan Abdalk	d) page-turner
a) theme	al
 The last novel of Ehsan Abdel Kodos is a re a) theme c) plot 	b) page-turner
3 Adel is the most interesting	d) community
3 Adel is the most interestingin the	play. There are more sides of his
a) pace b) +b and	
The of the book is the conflict bets a) pace	c) plot d) character
a) page	Ween people and nature
	b) character
c) theme	
5 The of the story was boring, but the	d) community
a) plot b) character	
a) plot b) character	c) moral



c) moral

character شخصیة	these are the people in the story
pace سرعة الأحداث في الرواية	this is how fast the story moves/how quickly things seem to happen in a story
page-turner کتاب شیق	a book that is very exciting
plot حبکة	what happens in a story line
theme موضوع الرواية	this is the idea or moral in the story/the main subject or idea in a book

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word Meaning	المرادف Synonym	الفضاد Antonym
abandoned (adj) مهجور close (adj) قریب بشکل متساو equally (adv)	deserted nearby/ near evenly	inhabited نسكون distant/far/remote بعيد unequally
happiness (n) سعادة interesting (adj) شيق	delight/ pleasure amusing/ entertaining rooted/ buried	displeasure/ gloom عدم السعادة boring/ unattractive عندل shallow/ superficial
deep (adj) عميق distant (adj) بعيد funny (adj)	far humorous/ comical	nearby بربب serious/ sad
traditional (adj) تقلیدی فیر عادی unusual (adj)	conventional extraordinary	unusual نیر تقلیدی ordinary مادی

Notes on Vocabulary



(adopt	adapt	
adopt		يتبنى (طفل/فكرة)
Sally adopted a	girl after the death of her husband.	
adapt (to)		يتكيف مع
The children fou	nd it hard to adapt to the new school.	

(lay lie

lay

lay – laid – laid ▶ He laid his hand on my shoulder.

▶ The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food.

▶ John was laying the table for lunch.

lie – lay – lain

ينام/يرقد/يقع

تضع البيض/يجهز/يضع

Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.

lie-lied - lied

بساب.

She lied to her father about her exam results.

(coast shore	beach	bank
coast Alexandria is located on the n	orth coast of Egypt.	ساحل می در می استان استا
shore I saw some boats on the shore		شاطئ البحر (البحيرة)
beach We sat on the beach and ate i		البلاج (الجزء الرملي عند حافة البحر)
bank Trees grow along the bank of		ضفة النهر أو القناة

Language Notes

- 1. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books.
 - لاحظ استخدام as long as هنا بمعنى في نفس طول.
 - You can go as long as you're home for dinner.
 - ، كما يمكن استخدامها بمعنى طالما مثل السياق السابق.

2. The pirates looked very angrily.

- اذا جاء بعد كلمة Ook ظرف فهي تستخدم بمعنى ينظر.
- The pirates looked very angry.
- أما اذا جاء بعد كلمة look صفة فهي تستخدم بمعنى يبدو.

d) beach

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 By nine o'clock the was already crowded with people. c) limit
 - b) sea a) coast
- We could see a boat about a mile from the of the sea. d) limit c) border
- b) bank
- My brotherthe idea of building a new villa in Sharm El-Sheikh. d) came c) took
- b) adopted We spent our holiday in a town whichhalfway between Rome and Florence.
- c) localises b) lays a) lies
- 5 It took me a while to to the new job. d) adorn
 - c) adapt b) adopt a) adore

UNIT (12)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Bravery is traditionally part of the Arab	
a) pace	b) theme
c) plot	d) character
2 The word "" means a book that is	very exciting.
a) page-follower	b) page-burner
c) page-turner	d) page-corner
3 We all admire the film because it has a ve	ery simplesuitable for all ages.
a) plot	b) character
c) community	d) incident
When his ship sank, he was able to reach	a/anisland. There is no one to talk to,
a) habited	b) abandoned
c) inhabited	d) assisted
5 The officer our passports before	we boarded the plane.
a) looked	b) researched
c) checked	d) pulled
⑥ If you need bread or milk, ask about a/an	shop to buy from not to be late.
a) attached	b) far
c) remote	d) close
The President announced a new plan to r	educe in the country.
a) crimes	b) goals
c) achievements	d) aims
8 The teacherus into three groups	to solve the maths problems.
a) divided	b) parted
c) explained	d) found
Ais a large building for storing la	rge quantities of goods.
a) workhouse	b) warehouse
c) farmhouse	d) sports house
🔞 I tried to solve the, but I gave up a	
a) confusion	b) maze
c) puzzle	d) tale
TK I	

				《一种中华的大学
-	The ancient Egyptian his	story is full - c	(Ha	rd work 12 §
(a) crimes b)	goals	like Isis and Osiris.	- California (California (Cali
4	The abbreviation "	" is short for "Befor	c) legends	d) efforts
4	He killed a lot of innoce	nts. Only a	Ould kill - II a .	d) BCR
4	Many people now call fo	or a return to	Values while	d) child
	a) i i	gradual	c) traditional	
1!	After the accident, I	the car back into	O the garage to have	d) regular
	a) gave b)	delivered	c) went	
46	I turned round for my ba	ag at the train statio	n but it was	d) brought
	a) gone b)		c) done	d) made
47	Ithis book to ar		st in chemistry	some sold a sold a
ĥ				d) recommend
•	Expressions, idioms, pre	epositions, derivative	s. synonyms and anto	onyms Fyorcises
•	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	2 1 4 1 4 1	the second secon	L'Acidises
18	Can youa photo			600 1187L 11. 5
	W/ 111) take	c) give	d) have
19	Damietta is an importai	nt port in the north.		Sagrad Salar Co
	a) at b) on	c) of	d) from
20	This is the house which	belonged m	ny grandfather wher	i I was young.
	u) II o III) at	c) with	d) to
_	hoose TWO correct ans	wers out of the FIV	E options given:	
	Happiness is more imp	ortant than money.	The antonym of the	e word "happiness" is
2	Happiness is more imp	pull and and		
	a) delight	b) displeas	sure	c) boredom
		e) gloom	g desir d'ata de	of the word "funny"
0	d) deepness Do you remember any	funny stories about	work? The synonyn	n of the word ramy
4		,		c) far
	is	b) humoro	ous	c) full
	a) comical	e) serious		
6	d) shallow The wordis the	opposite of the wo	rd "close".	c) near
2		b) remote		
	a) far	e) amusin		313
	d) nearby	.youtube.com/chann		
	πιμο.// νν νν νν	.youtube.com/chailii	C"OOJEVKI OGINI_F	veabdi isedia





·lt is impossible للتعبير عن أنه ليس من الممكن القيام بالفعل can't الممكن استخدام التعبير عن أنه ليس من الممكن القيام بالفعل

You can't drive the car, you haven't got the the licence yet.

. من الممكن استخدام .could have + p.p للتعبير عن إمكانية حدوث فعل ولكن لم نفعله.

I travelled by train, but I could have travelled by car.

من الممكن أن يكون الزمن مضارعاً ولكن الاستنتاج في الماضي والعكس كما يلي:

- ▶ Hala got the full marks in the exam. She must be clever.
- ▶ He is a successful professor. He must have been a clever student.

- عند اللوم/العتاب نستخدم .shouldn't have + p.p. أو .shouldn't have + p.p

- You got a very bad mark. You should have studied hard.
 - = It means that you didn't study hard and it was wrong.
- ▶ He ate bad food and he became ill. He shouldn't have eaten it.
 - = It means he ate it and it was wrong.

لتلخيص ما سبق من هذه القاعدة

الكلمات الدالة	في المضارع Present	7-4	في الماضي Past
I'm sureI'm certainI think	must + مصدر - I'm sure he is a teacher. - He must be a teacher.	للإثبات	must have + p.p I think he won the match He must have won the match.
▶ I believe ▶ Certainly	can't + مصدر - I'm sure, he isn't poor. - He can't be poor.	للنفى	can't have + p.p I think he didn't succeed He can't have succeeded.
 not very sure/unsure very uncertain It is possible I don't think I don't believe 	might + مصدر - It's possible he plays well. - He might play well.	عدم تأكد مطلق	might have + p.p I don't think he phoned ^{me.} - He might have phoned ^{me.}

Language Exercises)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	trage particles
My uncle didn't come back to my birthday a) must have been	• Description of Svend theory
a) must have been	party. Hebusy.
c) might be	b) can't have been
It was wrong of you to sleep before finishing shouldn't do	d) should have been
a) shouldn't do	b) can have done
c) shouldn't have done	b) can have done
3 He doesn't look happy. He passed	d) ought to have done
a) must have b) can't have	c) had d) could
You get into the lion cage. It is imp	oossible.
a) must b) might	c) can't d) may not
He rang me this morning, but I didn't answ	ver. I asleep.
a) must have been	b) can't have been
c) must be	d) can't be
⑥ Look, it's raining! Ian umbrella. No	ow, I must buy one.
a) should bring	b) must have brought
c) can't have brought	d) ought to have brought
7 Sheher mobile phone. She called	me from a friend's phone.
a) can't have lost	b) should have lost
c) mustn't have lost	d) must have lost
The Cairo metro improved people	's journeys to work and made it easier.
a) ought to have	b) must have
al can't have	d) might not have
She is a very efficient professor. She must	a very good university student.
a) be	b) have been
	d) had been
The phone rang, but my mother didn't hea	ar it. She in the kitchen.
	D) Illustriave is
a) must be	d) should have been
c) can't have been I couldn't find my wallet, Iit at hor	ne. But, I am not sure.
l couldn't find my wallet, I	b) can't have left
a) must leave	d) might have left
c) may leave	
They ate all the food. Theyhungry	b) must be
a) are	d) can't have been
c) must have been https://www.youtube.com/channe	WINDSENSITE DESIGNATION DE SANTA DE SAN
nttps://www.youtube.com/channe	e//UCJEVKI/UgNI_RZapqnzzqlg

	the someone found them
18 He left his glasses at school yesterday.	b) might have
a) must have	d) can have
c) can't have	it by mistake. I am sure about the
c) can't have (1) cannot find my handbag. Someone	b) cannot take
a) must take	d) can't have taken
c) must have taken	a) carre rave taxes in all day
Mona have telephoned me as	didn't go out and i was in an ady.
a) must b) may	Chilliance
16 We spent the weekend in the farm but	b) couldn't have spent
a) must have spent	b) Couldit thave spent
c) can't have spent	d) could have spent
17 My mother me about her prob	lem with her neighbour. I all not sure.
a) must have told	b) might have told
c) might tell	d) can't have told
18 Ali have travelled to Alexandria	this morning. He is ill in bed.
a) can't	b) must
c) may	d) might
19 Ola was at home all day yesterday. She	at work.
a) shouldn't be	b) must have been
c) can't have been	d) must be
There a sand storm. The streets	are covered in sand.
a) can't be	b) can't have been
c) must be	d) must have been
A: I don't know where my school bag is,	Mum.
B: It's not here. You have left it o	on the train.
a) might	b) can't
c) should	d) ought to
Hala's keys are on the table, she	them when she left this morning.
a) can't see	b) can't have seen
c) should have seen	d) might see
She passed me in the street without spe	
a) must have seen	b) can't have seen
c) must see	d) can't see
Samar all the food alone. She is i	
a) must eat	b) can't have eaten
c) should have eaten	d) shouldn't have eaten
C) SHOULD HAVE CALCIT	

_	-:11	in	th	e	SE	a	ce	:
	FIII			-	-			7

- of you fail once, you will not lose heart, but try again. Nobody succeeds in life at the first attempt. Most people fail in life, not because they do not know their job, but because they gave up(a)..... the first failure. Failures(b)..... not discourage you. There is a person,(c)..... fails, he tries, he fails again, but tries again. He fails a third time, but tries once more. At last he succeeds. So, if at first you don't succeed, try, try and try again. It(d)...... be very hard to start from the beginning, but not impossible.
- I have a very absent-minded friend. He is always late for work because he (a)..... up late and forgets things and has to go home to get them. His boss told him that he(b)......lose his job if he was late for work again. My friend was very worried. I(c)........... him to have a routine by making a list and sticking it on his bedroom wall. The list was to remind him to wind his alarm clock and to make sure he(d)..... everything he needed for the next morning; a clean shirt, clean socks, and so on. It also reminded him to get his wallet, key and eyeglasses.
- If you are a free person, some people say that you will be happy. They say that youdo anything if you don't want. If you like something, you (b)...... do it. If you hate something, you needn't do it. They also say, you (c)..... be stressed as you don't have any work to do. But I think this is not true as any one of us has something to do during their life(d)..... they are free or not.
- Last week, I had a very bad and tiring day. When I went to visit my friend, I didn't find him. I said he(a)..... have forgotten that I was coming. When I went to the supermarket, I didn't find my wallet, so I said I must(b).....lost it in my car but it wasn't there. I think I(c)..... be normal and I know I should see a doctor. I think it(d)..... be a trouble with my mind.
- My friend asked me about a place to spend his free time in, I told him a club (a)..... be the perfect place. Most clubs offer top quality services(b).....(b) you become a member in them. People(c)..... offer different kinds of sport. They can even play matches with each other as a sort of competition. Some other people can just sit and watch different TV films(d)..... the big screens of the clubs.



· A book review:

- It is a form of literary criticism in which a book is analysed based on content, style and merit. It is the opinion of the writer of the review. A book review's length may vary from a single paragraph to an essay.
- A book review can be an evaluation on the book on the basis of personal taste.

A book I have read

One of my hobbies is reading books. I have read a lot of books, most of which bought from the nearby bookshop, but sometimes I borrow some books from my friends or library. Recently, I have read a wonderful book named "How to win friends and influence people" which was written by Dale Carnegie. I found the book very useful and I can recommend it to everyone.

In the book, the writer told the stories of many successful people who achieved their targets by influencing others. He really taught me how to have a conversation with partners or friends without arguing. He also showed the best way to persuade people and some tips in communication. I think this book is necessary for everyone.



Explaining mysteries

Your friend read a story about a treasure in an island. The story has an open end and he talkes to you about it. He suggests some explanations for this mystery.

- prepare answers for the following questions:
- Where do you think the treasure had gone?
- If someone had found it. Why didn't he tell anyone about it?
- Do you think the treasure is still on the island?
- Where do you think the pirate hid the treasure?

Practice

Speaking

Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Amany and Mona about a mystery

Mona: Did you read "The Treasure Island" novel?

Amany:

Mona: Do you think the treasure is still on the island?

Amany:

Mona: Where do you think the treasure had gone?

Amany:



UNIT (12)

General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c	or d:	and and the star
	// ic	d) deserted
a) inhabited b) housed	c) homed	d) deserted
a) inhabited b) housed The ocean is very deep. The antonym o	fthe word ueep 13.	
al far		A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
Many people that life is a journ	ev not a race to be w	on.
a) believe b) describe	C) Dury	a) lie
@ Could you your reasons for cho	osing this job:	
a) tell h) evolain	c) inquire	a) advise
Today's newspaper has a very repo	ort from one of their co	rrespondents in India
a) close b) deep	c) abandoned	a) interesting
This film is very serious. I'd prefer to wat	tch something that w	/III IIIake us
a) laugh b) cry	c) weep	a) sad
7 The police officer asked my friends to	the robbers w	ho stole the money,
a) realise b) describe	c) know	d) specialise
When the fire started, the kitchen was f	ullsmoke.	1980
a) from b) in	c) at	d) of
9 Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt	his head. He	more careful.
a) must have been	b) should be	
c) might have been	d) should have be	
1 think that this buildinga histor	ical one. It was built a	about 240 years ago.
a) can't be b) couldn't be	c) should be	d) must be
1 They left 3 hours ago, so they ar	rived by now, it is no	t far.
a) might have b) can't have	c) may have	d) must have
12 She didn't see her brother yesterday. He		
a) must have left b) must leave	c) can't have left	d) can't leave
13 Mona much time with her family	y. Now they are all an	gry with her.
a) must have spent	b) might have spe	ent 💮 💮
c) shouldn't have spent	d) should have sp	ent
Prom now on we our doctors to	have regular check.	
a) should have seen	b) must see	
c) must have seen	d) can't see	
🕦 Ramy has a broken arm, he off h	is bicycle in the race.	
a) must have fallen b) can't fall	c) might fall	d) can't have fallen
16 This watch have cost a lot of more	ney. It is made of gol	
a) might b) can't	c) must	d) should

2 Fill in the space:

Some people think that soon everybody will have a computer or a phone. The computer(a).......... be the best invention nowadays. They will be connected paper books will be part of history.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Heba had worked in nursing for many years. She was in charge of four other nurses and she was respected by each member of staff at the hospital. It was difficult and sometimes very stressful work. She was responsible for the health of a lot of people. However, she always felt happy when people recovered and finally went home again. She always found this very rewarding. She worked such long hours that it was sometimes difficult to be sociable after work. She usually went home and watched a film on television with her family. She found this a good way to unwind.

It was a Tuesday morning. Heba had started work very early that day and she was doing her regular check of the patients. She gave them their medicine and made sure that they were comfortable. Then she went to check a new patient. He was in a private room, separate from the other patients. He was a man who had been sent to the hospital the night before after a bad traffic accident. Heba looked at the man, who was unconscious when he first arrived. Heba had seen him before. He was a famous actor who everybody in her family knew and liked. The doctor said that he had suffered a bad head injury from the crash. He was so ill that he would have to stay in hospital for many weeks. But something was very strange. Heba had seen him in a film the week before. In the film, he had to go to hospital after an accident, and he had later died. Heba didn't want that to happen in her hospital!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Why was the man who came to hospital unconscious?

b) He was not alive.

a) He had fallen asleep.

d) The nurse did not know.

c) He had had a bad accident.

Why do you think that he was in a private room? b) He had a dangerous disease.

a) He was very poor.

d) He was famous.

c) He didn't like other people.

UNIT (12)

- 3 What was unusual about the actor coming to hospital?
 - a) The same thing had happened to him in a film.
 - b) He had never been there before.
 - c) He was never usually ill.
 - d) He usually had private doctors.
- What do you think the word "unwind" means?
 - a) Go to sleep. b) Sit down. c) Re
- c) Relax. d) Make money.
- 5 The famous actor went to hospital
 - a) on Monday b) on Tuesday
- c) on Wednesday
- d) two days before

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why was it sometimes very stressful at Heba's work?
- What do you think will happen to the actor? Why?
- Heba was a good nurse, explain. Mention two reasons.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1. The government should work hard to improve the infrastructure of many slums or we will have many disasters.
- It is not reasonable to criticise everything without taking any positive step towards progress. We should work more and speak less.
- 3. In the past, women suffered a lot from illiteracy and gender discrimination.
 Also, they didn't have any political rights.

B) Translate into English:

١- إن احترام المعلم وتقديره واجب على كل فرد فى المجتمع صغيرًا كان أو كبيرًا؛ حيث إن المعلم هو أساس العملية التعليمية.
٢-إن تنفيذ الحكومة تحت قيادة الرئيس لمشروع قناة السويس الجديدة خير دليل على إصرار المصريين على بناء بلادهم.
٢- بفضل وسائل الإعلام والأقمار الصناعية أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة، حيث من السهل التواصل مع أى شخص فى أى دولة فى العالم وأنت جالس فى مكانك.

Enrich your Vocabulary

undoubtedly	بلا شك	ignorance	الجهل
annually	سنوى	slums	عشوائيات
contribute to	يساهم في	infrastructure	البنية التحتية
concentration	تركيز	disaster	كارثة

- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following topics:
 - 1. A review of a story you read.
 - 2. The benefits of hard work.

Open General Exercises

choose the	correct answer	from	a, b, c	or d:
			The state of the s	

	After a short time, hehis dream of b	Ocom-!
1	a) connected	b) many days
	, c.ndod	b) mended
1	The celebration of the new year the	d) abandoned
(b) engaged
		d) ranged
1	Take three backwards and then stop	o. A second second and the second sec
	The expectation of the second	b) paces
		d) races
4	The of the film contains some of adv	
9	4000	b) shot
		d) view
1	The Ministry of Health an importa	ant idea to set up new hospitals for the
-	homeless children.	
	a) dotted	b) dated
	a) adopted	d) adapted
	This necklace is very expensive because it w	vas made of a rare
	a) stone	b) rock
	Fig. 4.4 As the state of the st	d) sand
	c) gravel I don't know how they canworking	under these terrible conditions.
7		b) capable of
	a) bear	d) carry
	c) enable	
8	The writer herself in her writing.	b) put
	a) buried	d) shut
	c) close The book's ending me; it just didn't	seem to make sense.
9	The book's ending Me, it just and	b) analysed
	a) puzzled	d) encouraged
	c) tested	wer of hope.
IC	c) tested One of the novel's clearwas the pov	b) paces
	a) themes	d) characters
	c) plots	(32)

11 waslovely day that we	went to the mountains.
a) such	
c) so	d) too
12 The prisoner is thought	by climbing over the wall.
a) that escaped	b) that they escaped
c) to be escaped	d) to have escaped
13 How often do youyour ca	ar serviced?
a) have	b) got
c) allow	d) help
Her mother suggested that	and see the doctor.
a) she go	b) she goes
c) her to go	d) going
1 regret you that we can't	hire you. We don't have vacant jobs.
a) telling	b) to tell
c) tell	d) told
16it not been for him, I woul	d have drowned.
a) Had	b) Were
c) Should	d) If
17 I can't afford a new flat the	ese days.
a) buying	b) to buy
c) having bought	d) buy
🔞 For 3 days last holiday, I oւ	it with my friends to buy new clothes.
a) used to go	[a]a.t
c) would go	d) was gone
19 If only I these tickets. They	were really expensive.
a) had bought	b) didn't buy
c) haven't hought	d) hadn't bought
20 By this time tomorrow, we	the new manager of the company.
a) will met	
c) will be meeting	all had mot
•/ Till 00	



Based on Unit 12

Choose the correct a	answer from a, b,	c or d:	31 Jan 12
My old friend was t	found	with the state of	tally many contraction and S
4	, 5 - 11 - 1		
A C/UI II J	- 3 - 13 a very	man Hohaa	STATE OF THE STATE
	,		
Our teacher told us	and Alexandria.	in the north	of Faynt
a) lies	lays	c) locates	d) places
All the necessary s	teps had been tak	en to their	safety.
a) share	b) ensure	c) divide	d) bring
You can recognise	a tree by the		
a) structure		c) root	d) shape
A/An IS SOI	meone who studi	ies the buildings, gr	aves, tools and other objects
of people who live			v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v
a) archaeologist			5-50 - 70
My sister won't agr		The reco	
a) at	b) of	F. A. S. A. S. C.	d) from
My grandmother is			m a la (48)
a) in	b) with	c) at	d) from
He got the full man		ird.	undered and and and an analysis of
a) must have work		b) can't have w	rorked
c) might have wor	ked	d) must work	Constant attent
She is wearing a w	hite coat. She	a nurse.	non allanda de alla
a) can't be		b) must have b	
c) might be	gagadh eilean a ch	d) might have	:ii
My friend didn't co	me to school yes	sterday. He	ill. heen
a) must be		(a) Must have	occii
		d) can't have i	oeen
He has just drunk a	a lot of water. He	thirsty nov	V.
a) must be		in gire	
		di can i nave	peen
c) can't be The toys are every	where in the roo	m. The children	[Here.
a) must release	, ville in the		
a) must play	a construction	d) might play	
c) can't have playe	a		

UNIT 12 38 Samya very good player otherwise, he wouldn't have won. b) can be a) might be d) could be c) must be Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given: 1 found the book quite interesting. The synonym of the word "interesting" is b) deep a) amusing e) humorous d) entertaining The castle is on an island surrounded by a deep lake. The antonym of the word deep. is c) buried b) shallow a) rooted e) superficial d) near 17 Fill in the space: the underground.(b)..... it stopped in a tunnel. Most people stayed calm, but

began to panic. I ran up and down the train crying and shouting. It(c).....bea

phobia not ordinary fear. I decided(d)..... to travel on the underground again.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People are trying many ways to solve the problem of finding "green energy" that is clean and does not cause pollution. In some places plants are being grown which can be used as food and fuel. For example, sunflowers are grown for the oil in their seeds. However, once the seeds have been taken out, the rest of the plant can be dried and burnt. An old solution in India is to dry animal waste and form it into bricks for burning. The Chinese improve on this and keep the waste until it produces methane gas which they use for cooking and heating. Solar power could be one of the best future sources of energy. All over the world it is already being used for such jobs as heating water in houses and powering machines to water plants. But there is a way to make even better use of the sun. In space, because the sun never stops shining, it can supply solar energy for twenty-four hours a day. Space scientists have suggested building a solar power station in space. It would produce huge amounts of power which could be sent down to the earth. To build a station in space like this would be very expensive, but once the station was working, the energy from it would be almost free.

-			Hard work	123
	A) Choose the correct answer from a, b,			
	Solar power means energy from	c or d:		
1	a) plants			
	c) fossil fuels	b) atoms		
ì	There are Sources of an	d) the sun		
15	There are sources of energy menti	ioned in the passa	ae	
		b) three	90.	
	c) four	d) five		
20	Green energy means	valuetenev "		
	a) energy green in colour			
	b) energy produced by green colour			
	c) energy without pollution			
	d) energy from oil		de in	A CONTRACTOR
04	The underlined word "this" refers to			
2	a) the rest of the plant can be dried and b	····· • [A P_ A		
	b) heating water and houses and powering	ournt		
	a) dry animal waste and form it into be it	ng machines		
	c) dry animal waste and form it into brick	s for burning		
	d) building a solar power station in space			
2	According to the passage, one disadvant	tage of building a	power station	n in space is
	a) bad climate	b) hot air		
	c) high cost	d) lack of water		

B) Answer the following questions:

- When can the sunflower plant be dried and burnt?
- Why do scientists think of having solar station in space?
- How can a station in the space be economical in the long run?

Translate into English:

- يعتــرض الكثيــر من الناس على ما يســمي بالعولمة؛ لأنهــم يعتقدون أنها تقوم بخدمــة الدول الغنية وليســت الدول الفقيرة، ويطالبون بتعديل هذا النظام حتى يتحقق العدل بين الدول.

27 Translate into Arabic:

One of the first measures to solve overpopulation is to educate the masses to help them understand the need to have one or two children at the most.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

Summer camps for students.



Revision (4) Units 10, 11 & 12





Vocabulary on Reading

achieve (v) – d	ينجز/يحقق
achievement (n)	إنجاز
adults (n)	بالغون/راشدون
adventure (n)	مغامرة
amazing (adj)	مذهل
believe (v) – d	يؤمن/يعتقد
campaign (n)/ (v) – ed	حملة/يشارك في حملة
caring (adj)	مراعٍ للآخرين
challenge (n)/(v) – d	تحد/یتحدی
clearly (adv)	بوضوح
communicator (n)	محاور
compete (v) – d	يتنافس
confident (adj)	واثق
developing (adj)	متطور
equal (adj)	متساو
disability (n)	إعاقة

famous (adj)	المشمور
impossible (adj)	مستحيل
muscles (n)	عضلات
mystery (n)	غموض/لغز
opportunity (n)	فرصة
practical (adj)	عملی
pressure (n)	ضغط
publish (v) – ed	ينشر
reliable (<mark>adj</mark>)	يعتمد عليه
seriously (adv)	بجدية
speech (n)	خطاب
success (n)	نجاح
the United Kingdom	المملكة المتحدة
therapist (n)	معالج نفسي
writer (n)	کاتب/أدیب

Vocabulary on Listening

apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر المعتق المعتدر
assistant (n)	بائع
characters (n)	شخصيات
complain (v) (ed)	يشتكى
explain (v)	يشرح
fair (adj)	عادل

glasses (n)	Promises.
helpful (adj)	نظارة/نظارات
***************************************	معاون/مفيد
pace (n)	سرعة (الأحداث في الرواية)
plot (n)	حبكة القصة
suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
surprise (n)	مفاجاة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a challenge for	تحدٌ اـ
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
be the same for	نفس الشيء لـ
compete with	يتنافس مع
famous for	مشھور ب
find it difficult to	يجد صعوبة في أن
give herself a name	تعطى نفسها اسمئا
have a disability	لديه إعاقة
have campaigned for	يشارك في حملة من أجل

have problems speaking	لديه مشكلة في التحدث
impossible for	مستحيل
made it difficult for	يجعل من الصعب أن
many of	کثیر من
much easier for	أكثر سمولة لـ
put pressure on	يضع ضغطًا على
sound amazing	يبدو مذهلًا
speak much more clearly	ا يتحدث أكثر وضوحـّا





Women writers

Many of the world's best writers are women. People read Egyptian writers like Aisha Abd al-Rahman and Miral Al Tahawy in different languages all over the world. You might also know Agatha Christie, famous for her mystery novels, and Lucy Maud Montgomery, who wrote the adventure story *Anne of Green Gables*.

However, it has often been a challenge for women to have their books published. People thought that only men could write good stories. Of course, women have always written very good stories, but in the past, it was almost impossible for women to compete with men. In the past, parents would put pressure on women to get married. If they had a job, it would be something practical like a teacher.

George Eliot, who wrote *Silas Marner*, was really a woman called Mary Ann Evans. She gave herself a man's name so that people would take her books seriously.

Since that time, people have campaigned for women and men writers to have equal opportunities, and it is now much easier for women. Many women writers have achieved a lot of success. However, even today, many women writers sometimes change their names. They still believe that they will have more success as a man than as a woman. For example, English writer J.K. Rowling said she put J.K. rather than Joanna on her books so more boys would read them.



Reading Text (2)

What do they do? This week: A speech therapist

Judy is a speech therapist in a hospital in Cairo. A speech therapist is someone who helps people who have difficulty speaking publicly.

Why did you choose to become a speech therapist?

My mother is a teacher. A child at her school had problems speaking. This made it difficult for her in class, so she also had problems learning. After she saw a speech therapist, she could speak much more clearly. Now, she is one of the best students in her class. When I heard, I decided I wanted to be a speech therapist.

What skills do you need to be a speech therapist?

You need a degree and you also need to be caring, reliable and a good communicator.

Can you give us some examples of the kinds of people you see?

Sometimes children find it difficult to talk because they have a disability. I help by developing muscles around their mouth, for example. Other children have no disability, so you need to find out why they are finding it difficult to speak. They might not be very confident.

Is it the same for adults?

Most of the adults have been ill. But there are some who are not very confident too. There is a very famous example of this.

Who is that?

George VI was king of the United Kingdom from 1936 to 1952. When he became king, he found it very difficult to give speeches. So, he asked to see a speech therapist. The therapist, who was an Australian called Lionel Logue, helped him to speak more clearly.

It sounds an amazing achievement. Thank you for talking to us.

Listening Text

: Good morning. I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Manager: Good morning. I'm the manager. How can I help you, sir?

: Well, I'd like to make a complaint.

Manager: I'm sorry to hear that. What's the problem? : I came here last week. I wanted to buy a book for my brother. It was his

birthday, you see.

Manager: OK.

: I asked your assistant if he knew an exciting book that I could buy. He explained that he knew lots of exciting books. He asked me if I liked Man books about the past or the present. I said I liked books about the present.

Manager: Right. Which book did he suggest?

: He told me to buy a book called Run Away Fast. So I said I would buy it Man for my brother's birthday the following day.

Manager: Did your brother not like the book?

: No, he didn't. He complained that the pace was quite slow, the story was Man too long and the characters were terrible.

Manager: I do apologise, but the problem is, we have hundreds of books in the shop and everyone likes different ones. Do you know the name of the person who told you to buy Run Away Fast?

: No, but it was a young man with glasses. Man

Manager: A young man? Well, it can't have been Tarek because he was on holiday last week. It might have been Ahmed but he doesn't usually wear glasses. I think it must have been Hassan.

: Well, can I speak to Hassan? Man

Manager: I'm afraid he's not here at the moment. But this is what we can do. I'll let you buy two books for the price of one. You can give them both to your brother. I'm sure that your brother will like one of them.

: OK, that sounds fair. Man

Manager: This book is my favourite. It's called Look Now. The novel is not very long, the pace is quite fast and the plot is full of surprises. And here is a book called Summertime. The characters are wonderful.

: Well, thanks, you've been very helpful. I'm sure my brother will like one Man of these books.

Workbook Exercises Choose the correct words to complete the

Khaled loves his job	because it's	sentences:	
6 Khaled loves his joba) stressful	Lase it's very		
@ Gamal wants to do a	/a-	c) qualic .	
@ Gamal wants to do aa) attendant	b) industry	OW to be a build	d) boring
The most important	skill for a	c) apprenticeship	to galacia
3 The most important a) reward	b) comments to	be a good	d) degree
(4) I didn't enjoy that no	b) communicator ovel because the	c) construction	d) qualic
	O Char	· Ci y COIIII	CATON
Becoming a world of	b) characters hampion in your sport	c) publisher	d) noet
Becoming a world cl	b) wipper	is an amazing	Listan Inc. vi e
6 Fatmaher si	b) winner ster that she was goin	c) medal	d) achievement
6 Fatmaher si a) said			
7 Hazem asked	b) asked	c) requested	d) told
a) that	b) whether		
8 Athletes play well ar	nd against and	c) weather	d) to
8 Athletes play well ara) complete	h) compote	h other to win med	lals.
The customer	b) compete	c) complement	d) compliment
a) told	b) said		
		c) thought	d) asked
i'm going to start a/aa) camp	b) campaign		
the state of the s			The property of the Secretary
1 Look! That is the gol			
	b) which		
12 He is really,	ne did many bad thin	igs against the law.	d) quiltlessness
	b) guiltless		d) guillessiless
18 Miss Amany is a nur	se, so she be \	ery caring.	d) have to
a) must	b) can't	c) mustn't	a) have to
That be my	book. I have one in m	y bag.	d) doesn't
a) must	b) can	c) can't	1000000
® Mona was absent from	om school yesterday,	so sne	d) mustn't be
a) must have been l'm sure the police v	vill solve thea	and arrest the chine c) myth	d) puzzle
a) riddle	b) mystery	c) myui	/

Complete the gaps with one word: Last week, I asked Imad
 Change the direct speech into reported speech. "I'm going to study medicine at university." He said he
Mr Hamed told the students
A) Translate into English:

- People with disabilities are useful citizens although they are with special needs. They can share in making progress as they have different skills.

B) Translate into English:

- سوق العمل مليء بالمنافسة الشديدة لنيل فرص العمل المتنوعة في كل المجالات، حيث تتطلب كل وظيفة مهارات محددة يسعى إليها الباحث عن الوظيفة.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Careers advice for students

Human Resources staff report that although qualifications are important, skills are often what they are most interested in when they want to employ young people. These include practical skills and personal qualities.

They are interested in young people who can stay calm, work well in a team, and accept criticism. You can improve in these areas by playing in a sports team or doing group activities at school.

Other important qualities include being punctual, flexible and having good communication skills. Technology is also important in many jobs, so make sure that you can use a variety of devices and software programs.

An ability to organise things is also useful. You can develop good planning skills while you are still at school by organising a timetable for your studies. And you can also help to organise events at school or with your family.

When you go to a job interview, be prepared to talk about how you have learned your skills and remember to give some examples of situations that have helped you.

A) Choose	the correc	t answer fi	rom a,	b, cor	d:
-----------	------------	-------------	--------	--------	----

Choose the correct answer from a, b,	c or d:
 What are Human Resources staff most in a) Appearance. Which activity helps you learn to be a a) Being a good leader. 	nterested in when they recruit young people? c) Skills. d) Social studies. a good team member?
c) Criticising other students. 3 You will make a good impression if you	 b) Doing a project with other students. d) Being a good trainer.
a) late c) able to use a computer	b) well prepared d) careful
@ Preparation for a job interview shoul	ld include
a) thinking of some new skills you wb) thinking about how you learned y	our skills

- c) giving examples of situations which you have enjoyed d) asking for a high salary
- - b) decline a) prove
- c) reflect
- d) develop

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think it is useful to be flexible?
- Why do you think that most jobs need more than qualifications?
- What kind of courses do you think will be most useful in the future? Why?

6 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

- A baker is a person which bakes bread.
- 2. Excuse me, I'd like to do a complaint.
- 3. Malak looks very happy. She can't have passed her exam.
- 4. Cairo is a city who attracts millions of tourists every year.
- 5. Salem told me if I would help him to prepare for the competition.
- 6. The girls can have gone to the sports centre because their sports bags are here. 7. We will spend the weekend in the country. We are still discussing our destination.
- 8. I look forward to hear from you soon.

Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic:

Choose one of the two topics. Write about 130 want to do the job, what skills 1. Write an email applying for a job. Explain why you want to do the job, what skills you have for it and ask some questions about it.

you have for it and ask some questions about the service in the problem was and when the Write an email to a restaurant manager company of the restaurant. Explain when you went there, what the problem was and what you would like to happen now.

The Novel Revision Chapters (10-12) SB Exercises

	ect answer from a, b		ar stillermann
1 If you are a doo	tor, you need to	about people's he	alth.
a) care			d) see
l asked Fady if I	ne wanted a sweet ar	nd hehis head	to say yes.
a) pushed	b) took	c) nodded	d) jumped
3 Before you go		ant toyourself	
	b) attach	c) make	d) take
4 There are no bu		ecause theis t	
a) deck	b) top	c) ground	d) carpet
6 The police		y took some phones f	
a) collected		c) earned	
6 Listen to this	It will make yo	ou laugh!	
a) joke	b) joy	c) funny	d) trick
7 If you don't kno	w the English word, y	you can at the	food you want.
a) mark	b) point	c) sign	d) suggest
🔞 Don't worry, I	that I'll text you	u when I arrive in Giza	
a) ask	b) support	c) tell	d) promise
We thought we	were in trouble until	we saw the or	n her face.
a) noise	b) cry	c) smile	d) talk
n This computer is	It can't do a	anything.	
a) lazy	b) useless	c) weak	d) sorry
	that we use the	e room in the morning	s and they use it later
a) choice	b) opinion	c) idea	d) agreement
They decided to	until they co	uld agree what to do.	
a) negotiate	b) change	c) move	d) promise
People can get il	I with in cou	ntries with a lot of mo	squitoes.
a) environment	b) adventure	c) malaria	d) ecotourism

Alt can be o	difficult for people to stand	(Units	(10, 11 & 12)
a) closed	difficult for people to stay b) correct	in dangerous p	laces.
	ark outside, can I use your		d) alive
a) paddle	b) chain		TREE TO A SHARE
a It was rai	ning on the mountain, so we	c) torch	d) rope
a) cave	b) river		
@ One	that they teach you in this	c) pool	d) wave
a) name	b) food	c) rule	The state of the s
	ourite thing in the museum i	Sa of a bug	d) timetable
a) skeleto	on b) bones	c) building	d) deck
	u plant the tree, you need to	a big bole	u) deck
a) put	b) dig	c) catch	d) win
A You need	to put ain the mach		
a) reques		c) coin	d) trick
	ese events in order on the t	Execution in	
	, Ben Gun and Gray shot som		1.1
2. The pirate 3. They desi 4. Dr Livesy 5. The pirate 6. Jim left the pirate 7. They too 8. They saile 9. Jim walke	es saw that Silver had the mater troyed one of the small boat helped some of the pirates he found a hole but there was he Hispaniola half on a beack the treasure from the cave ed back to England. ed into the fort at night and ok the pirates and Jim in boats.	ap. Is so that the pirates who were ill and he as nothing in it exce h on the island. to the <i>Hispaniola</i> . a pirate held onto ats to look for the tr	s could not use it. e talked to Jim. ept for one coin. him. easure.
Read these	quotations and their ans	he doctor says th	at you have helped us. I
A) "You are	e a pirate and a time,		
must th	ank you.		
1 Who w	vas the speaker?		
2 Who d	loes he speak to:		
3 How d	lid he help them?	ctory?	
4 Did th	is help last till the end of the	cheese. The docto	r then thought of a page
D) " when	lid he help them? is help last till the end of the the doctor gave him some was Dr Livesy's plan?	Cliega	
1 Mhats	was Dr Livesy's plan?		
I. Wilat	really work? How?		33
2. Did it	really work.		

4 Work in groups and answer these questions:

- 1. Silver often said that he liked Jim. Do you think he really liked him or did he say this for another reason?
- this for another reason?

 2. Dr Livesy told Silver that he did not care about Jim. Do you believe this, or did he say this for another reason?
- 3. Why do you think that Dr Livesy "came to an agreement" with Silver?
- 4. Why do you think Jim decided to stay with Silver, and not leave with Dr Livesy?
- 5. Were you surprised when Ben Gun told Dr Livesy where to find the treasure? Why Why not?
- 6. Were you surprised when Silver escapes from the boat? Why/ Why not?

Write a review of Treasure Island. Think about the following:

- The story: What happens?
- The main characters: What are they like?
- The moral of the story: What do we learn?
- The parts of the story you liked or did not like, and why.

Test on Revision

Choose the correct ans	swer from a, b, c or	d:	
Athletes from all worl	d countries	in the last Olympic Gam	es.
a) achieved	b) campaigned	c) competed	d) improved
How many jobs had y	ou for befo	re you were offered this o	one?
a) applied	b) supplied	c) implied	d) employed
The language course	has been hard work	k, but very	13
		c) rewarded	d) qualified
A: Do you think you'll	win tomorrow's ga	me?	
B: Sure, we're all feeling	ng pretty		
a) exciting	b) loyal	c) punctual	d) confident
The Kenyan runner	a new Olympi	ic Record in the 3000 me	tres.
a) held	b) helped	c) hinted	d) bent
My father's jacket is diff	ferent mine.	How can't you distinguish	between them?
a) with	b) of	c) to	d) at
7 I told you the truth, bu	ut I don't have a	to this problem.	
a) solution	b) weaver	c) mystery	d) fact
He doesn't have a job,	so how he pays his	rent is a to me.	
		c) decision	
Reda accused the dire	ctor ofidea	is from his novel in makir	ng his movie.
		c) robbing	
My son's exam results			
	b) surprised	c) angry	d) shocked

My son Mohammed informed me about something he did yesterday......(a)......(a)...... he was walking down the street, he found a wallet. He took it to(b)......... nearest police station. When the policeman opened the wallet, he(c)....... surprised because it was his lost one. The policeman thanked my son and said(d)......he was an honest boy.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Actions speak louder than words. To give an example to others is more effective than to teach through mere words. It is better to persuade people to live a good life by practicing yourself what you preach than by giving them good pieces of advice which you do not follow yourself.

Education must begin with the parents. They create the first and most, deep impressions on the mind of the child. What they do or say is of great importance and of great effect at one and the same time. In time of war, the greatest leaders are those who have given an example of courage to their men by leading them to victory, regardless of personal danger. Besides, the religious teachers of the world have taught people by what they said as much as by what they did.

The greatest people are those who are ready to give their lives to prove the truth of their teachings. Needless to say, pupils like to behave in the same way as their schoolmasters. Thus, teachers' most important job is to set the best example to hard work, truth and love of good. If you want to make your life a success, the thing to do now is to follow the path of those great men who went deep in history. They have given the best example to serve their countries. They excelled To sum up, deeds are better things than words and actions are mightier than in patriotism, self-sacrifice and unselfishness.

talk. «Barking dogs seldom bite.»

talk. «Barking dogs seldom bite.»

	COLUMN TO THE REAL PROPERTY.			-
M 1	Chanca	the correct answer	fue me a	h cord:
α_{I}	CHOOSE	the correct answer	trom a.	D, C O. C.

- 18 What a person says
 - a) is more effective than what he does.
 - b) has as much effect as what he does.
 - c) is less effective than what he does.
 - d) has no effect at all.
- 19 Pupils follow in the footsteps of their schoolmasters. This means
 - a) they follow the example set by their teachers.
 - b) they walk causing a sound of their steps.
 - c) teachers give the best example to hard work.
 - d) pupils never behave in the same way as their teachers.
- n war time, the great leaders
 - a) create the first impression on the mind of the child.
 - b) teach people by what they did as much as by what they said.
 - c) disregard and ignore personal danger.
 - d) are the religious teachers.
- 🝘 "Barking dogs seldom bite" This refers to
 - a) dogs which are nice and do not bite.
 - b) those who speak much and do little.
 - c) those who sacrifice themselves.
 - d) those who speak a little and do no work.
- people who do their best to serve their countries are called
 - a) traitors

- b) patriots
- c) governors
- d) selfish men

B) Answer the following questions:

- 28 When does a person fail to affect others?
- Mow did the religious teachers of the world show self-sacrifice?
- 48 How can you make your life a success?

Translate into English:

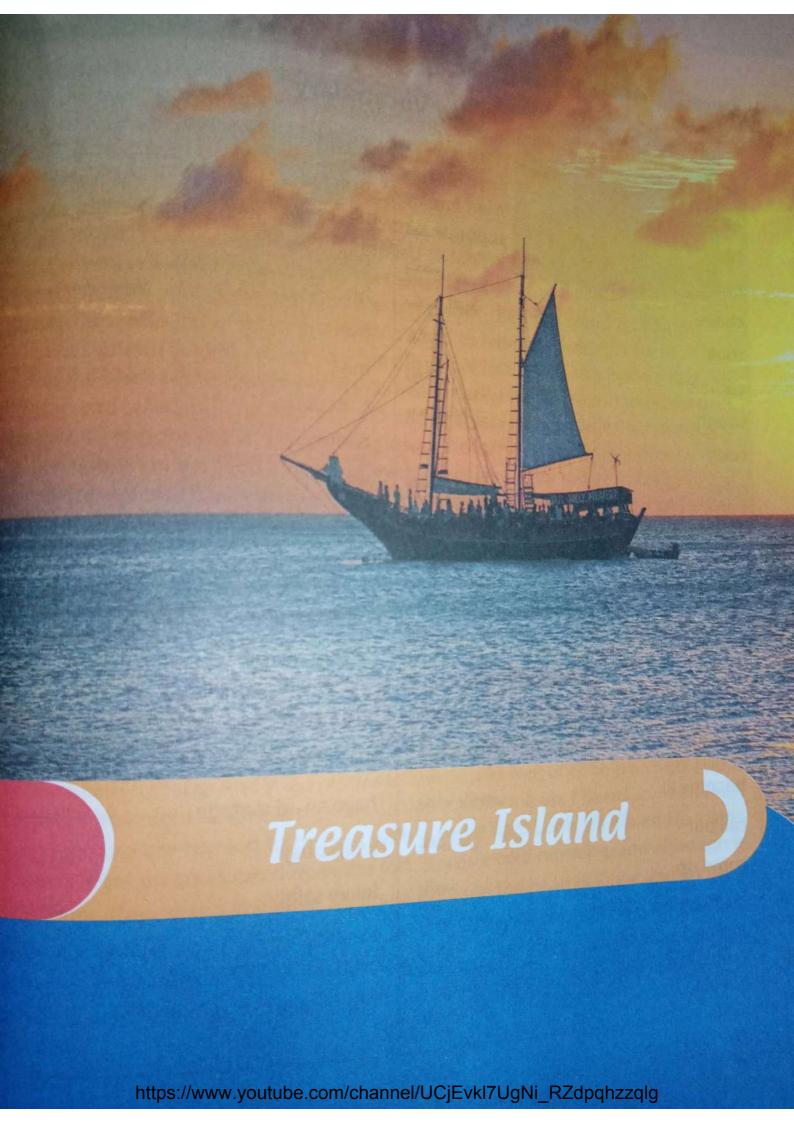
- إن العلاقة القوية والاحترام المتبادل بين الأب والأم تعتبر الأرض الخصبة التي ينمو فيها أبناؤهم كي يصبحوا أشخاصنا أسوياء نفسنا وبدنيًا.

Translate into Arabic:

It is an undeniable fact that the youth are the base of any nation's progress. So, governments should pay attention to help them be better citizens.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:
The problem of unemployment and how to solve it.





Chapter (7)



Key Vocabulary

advantage	أفضلية/ميزة
attack	يمجم
blow	تهب (الرياح)/ينفخ
bring	يُحضر
chains	سلاسل/قيود
cook	طباخ
corners	زوایا
cough	یسعل/یکح
crazy	مجنون
crew	طاقم (سفينة)
fence	سور/حائط
fight	يقاتل
firewood	حطب
fort	حصن

guard	مارس/يحرس
gun fire	نبران البنادق
hide	بخفر/يختفى
hill	ئل
hit	يضرب بـ (عصا/ بندقية)
hurt	يؤذى/يضر
mist	بانج
offer	مرض
pirate	ترصان
supplies	مؤن
trial	محاكمة
trick	خدعة خدعة
truce	مدنة
win	فوز

Expressions & Prepositions

accept an offer	يقبل عرضا
become ill	يصاب بالمرض
call out	ینادی علی
come up	يقترب
end well	ينتهى على نحو جيد
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
full of	ملیء بـ

get home	يعود إلى وطنه
have an advantage	لديك ميزة/أفضلية
keep busy	يبقى مشغولًا
leave safely	يغادر بأمان
look for	يبحث عن
put chains	يقيد بالسلاسل





Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: I walked with Ben Gun and we soon saw the fort. "Your friends will be inside, Jim," said Ben. "It might be the pirates," I replied. "No, look at the flag! They will be good men," he answered. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." "Let's go inside," I said. "I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told way. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrous."



you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow." Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more gunfire and I had to hide so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the Hispaniola. It was also flying a flag, but it was the black pirate's flag. When it was nearly dark, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and Dr Livesy let me inside. I sat down and told them my story. The wind blew sand inside the fort and we found it everywhere, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all coughed. Captain Smollett gave us all jobs: some looked for firewood, others went to cook food, and I was asked to guard the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better. "Captain Smollett is a good man," said Dr Livesy later that day. "And what about Ben Gun? Is he a good man?" "I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little crazy." "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," explained the doctor. "Did you say that he wanted some good food?" "Yes," I replied. "I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to Ben Gun!" said the doctor. That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the Hispaniola. The doctor said that they would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived. I slept very well that night. The next morning, a voice woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's Silver! He wants a truce!" I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low mist. We could only see the head of Silver and another pirate. "Stay in the fort," said Captain Smollett. "I'm sure that this is a trick." Then he called out to Silver, "Tell us what you want." "I want a truce," said Silver. Captain Smollett quietly told us to move to different corners of the fort and to watch Silver

carefully.

Then he called to Silver, "What do you want us to do?" "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said Silver. "Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied Captain Smollett.

"Well, the crew chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said Silver. "If you have something to say, you can come into the fort



and say it," said Captain Smollett. The other pirate tried to stop Silver, but he laughed and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill. Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort. "Can't I come inside?" asked Silver. "It's a cold morning." "If you were an honest man, you could come inside," said Captain Smollett. "But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after, or Captain Silver, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning." If you have anything to say, say it now," said Captain Smollett. "Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked Silver. "Perhaps," said Captain Smollett. "I know you have it," said Silver. "We don't want to hurt you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you to somewhere safe. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some supplies and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind offer, and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly, so that we could all hear in the fort. "Is that all you can offer?" said Captain Smollett. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" "Now you can listen to me," replied Captain Smollett. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains and take you back to England for trial. If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't

have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't fight us here in the fort." Silver looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill. Captain Smollett came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to attack us. There are more of them than us, but we have the advantage inside the fort, and I am sure that we can win."



Chapter 7 Exercises (SB)

Complete the sentences with these words from the story.

chain - offer - mist - advantage - trial - tricks - truce - honest 1 You can trust him. He is a/an man. 2 A/Anstopped the war for a short time. 3 We often see in the morning, and you can't see the ground. 4 My little brother likes to playon me. f Thank you for your kind 6 Gamal put a big around his bike when he went into the shop. 7 After the, the criminal went to prison. What are the of travelling by train? 2 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. 1 There were good men on the Hispaniola. 2 Jim waited until it was nearly dark before he went into the fort. 3 The fort was full of sand and smoke. 4 The men in the fort had nothing to do. In the morning, they could only see the head of Silver and one other pirate because they were hiding. 6 Silver was not happy when he left the fort. 3 Read these quotations and answer the questions. (a) "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy." What man does Dr Livesy talk about? Why would that man be crazy? (b) "He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." Who does Ben mean by 'He'? Why do you think this person was frightened of Silver? What does this statement tell you about Silver? (c) "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains and take you back to England for trial." 1 Why would Captain Smollett take them all to trial? 2 If you were in his place, would you do the same? Why? What does this tell you about Captain Smollett's character?

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi RZdpqhzzqlg



4 Work in pairs. Discuss and answer th Why did Silver arrive at the fort with	ese questions. a white flag?
Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Si	Iver to enter the fort?
What did Silver want the men in the	fort to do?
Why did Captain Smollett refuse Silv	er's offer to leave them with some supplies
What did Silver do next?	Ange the of Males Andrea (
Write two sentences to describe each a) Ben Gun:	19 900
b) Silver:	
c) Captain Smollett:	
Write a summary of what happens in	the chapter in about 100 words.
etaka terka on- bus terra to be to un	and the second contract of the second se
Caronalis en contra contra en	





Treasure Island

Chapter 7 Exercises (WB)

	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY O				
Answer the questions with full	sentences				
- With the minutes and make find the					
Do you usually find a <i>chain</i> on a bike or in a tree?					
DO You make someone an oller when you					
you make something?					
Do you usually find sand under a tree or on a tree					
Do people go on trial to find o	Do people go on trial to find out if they did something well or if they did something				
Wrongi					
💰 If someone tricks you, are the	y trying to help you or do something to surprise you?				
If you have a truce with some	eone, do you agree to stop fighting or start fighting?				
If you win a match, are you u	isually sad or happy?				
Read Chapter 7 again quickly	. Who has or had the following?				
a flag above the fort					
2 a black flag					
3 some cheese					
a white flag					
6 a map					
- with what	they do or what happens to them.				
3 Match the people with what	The first term of the second s				
(1. Ben Gun	a) made the fort.				
	b) will wait for Jim to find him.				
2. Captain Smollett	c) gives everyone a job to do.				
3. Flint	d) wants to give something to Ben Gun.				
4. Silver	e) leaves the fort angrily.				
5. Dr Livesy	e) leaves div				
5. DI LIVES	7 in the correct order.				
4 Put the events from Chapte	white flag.				
Silver arrives at the fort	t with a write hag.				
- Carrier smallett tells r	JIS MEN CHAP				
Silver arrives at the fort with a white flag. Silver arrives at the fort with a white flag. Captain Smollett tells his men that Silver will return to attack them. Captain Smollett tells his men that Silver will return to attack them. Jim talks to Dr Livesy about Ben Gun.					
Jim talks to Di Lives)	and leaves Ben Gun.				
Jim talks to Dr Livesy about and leaves Ben Gun. Jim returns to the fort and leaves Ben Gun. Jim to guard the door to the fort.					
Jim returns to the fort and leaves ben dam Jim returns to the fort and leaves ben dam Captain Smollett asks Jim to guard the door to the fort. Captain Smollett does not agree to Silver's offer. Captain Smollett does not agree to Silver's offer. Regional Smollett does not agree to Silver's offer.					
Captain Smollett does not agree to sin					
https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg					



6	Complete the	sentences	with	these	adjectives	
U			***************************************			

3 Captain Smollett ke 4 Jim thought that Be 5 Captain Smollett de	of anyone except for Silver. Ppt all the meninside the fort. Pen Gun was a little Pes not think that Silver is anmmmmmmm man. Captain Smollett and his men to somewhere	
Match to make phras		
1. become	a) the door to a building	
2. guard	b) someone feel better	
3. have	c) someone a story	
4. make d) ill		
4. I make	The market and an advantage	
Answer the following Why do you think C Why do you think B Why did Jim and the	e) an advantage questions. aptain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort? en Gun refused to go inside the fort? e men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship?	
Answer the following Why do you think C Why do you think B Why did Jim and the agree with them? W Silver's truce had tw Do you think Silver is	e) an advantage questions. aptain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort? en Gun refused to go inside the fort? e men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship? hy? o offers and one threat. What were they? really wanted a truce? led two birds with one stone when he gave everyone	
Answer the following 1 Why do you think C 2 Why do you think B 3 Why did Jim and the agree with them? W 4 Silver's truce had tw 5 Do you think Silver of 6 Captain Smollett killer of the doc. Explain Smollett killer	e) an advantage questions. aptain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort? en Gun refused to go inside the fort? e men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship? hy? o offers and one threat. What were they? really wanted a truce? led two birds with one stone when he gave everyone lain.	
Answer the following 1 Why do you think C 2 Why do you think B 3 Why did Jim and the agree with them? W 4 Silver's truce had tw 5 Do you think Silver of 6 Captain Smollett killer to do. Expl	e) an advantage questions. aptain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort? en Gun refused to go inside the fort? e men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship? hy? o offers and one threat. What were they? really wanted a truce? led two birds with one stone when he gave everyone lain.	
Answer the following 1 Why do you think C 2 Why do you think B 3 Why did Jim and the agree with them? W 4 Silver's truce had tw 5 Do you think Silver of 6 Captain Smollett killer to do. Expl	e) an advantage questions. aptain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort? en Gun refused to go inside the fort? e men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship? hy? o offers and one threat. What were they? really wanted a truce? led two birds with one stone when he gave everyone	
Answer the following 1 Why do you think C 2 Why do you think B 3 Why did Jim and the agree with them? W 4 Silver's truce had tw 5 Do you think Silver if Captain Smollett kill fort a job to do. Explain Share with them?	e) an advantage questions. aptain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort? en Gun refused to go inside the fort? e men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship? hy? o offers and one threat. What were they? really wanted a truce? led two birds with one stone when he gave everyone lain.	
Answer the following 1 Why do you think C 2 Why do you think B 3 Why did Jim and the agree with them? W 4 Silver's truce had tw 5 Do you think Silver of 6 Captain Smollett kill fort a job to do. Expl	e) an advantage questions. aptain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort? en Gun refused to go inside the fort? e men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship? hy? o offers and one threat. What were they? really wanted a truce? led two birds with one stone when he gave everyone lain.	

Chapter (8)



Key Vocabulary

anchor	مرساة السفينة
badly	بشكل سيئ
cape	خليج/لسان داخل البحر
cliff	منحدر
climb	يتسلق
completely	تمامنا
cry	صرخة/يصرخ
dead	میت در در در در در در
distant	بعتد
	يطلق النار
mist	ضباب
nearly	تقريباً والم
	ضجيج
noise	مجداف
paddle	双型 1- 1

parrot	ببغاء
pirate flag	 عنلم القراصنة
prepare	يعدايجهز
quietly	بمدور
return week to folde	يعود
rope	حبل
shoot	يطلق النار
steer	يوجه/يقود
sword	سيف
the west	الغرب
thick	سميك/كثيف
wave	بوجة وجة
weakly	ضعف 🖟
weapon	علاح

Expressions & Prepositions

at the east	باتجاه الشرق
be in trouble	يقع في ورطة
get better	يتحسن
get inside	يتجه إلى الداخل يهدأ
go quiet	ينزل
go down https://ww	/w.voutube.com/char

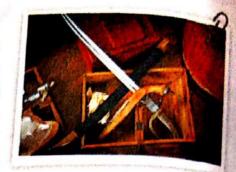
	يستلقى
lay down	يتفحص/يلقى نظرة
look into	مصنوع من
made from	يلتقط
pick up	يبقى بقرب
stay by	يأخذ وقتا
take time	

349





Jim Hawkins: We prepared our weapons and the captain told us what to do. "Doctor, you stay by the door. Hunter, stay at the east of the fort. Joyce can stand in the west. Gray and Trelawney will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're in trouble." After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce



fired his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all sides of the fort. There was a lot of **noise** and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again. "Did you hit anyone?" the captain asked Joyce. "I don't think so," he replied. "How many people fired on your side, Doctor?" asked Captain Smollett. "There were three," he replied. "How many on your side, Trelawney?" Trelawney and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine. There was only one shot fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack mostly from the north. But Captain Smollett told us to stay where we were. We didn't have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again. Some of the pirates tried to climb the fence, but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more continued to fire at us from the trees. Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took Hunter's gun. Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him. Captain Smollett then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, Anderson, in front of me. He was going to attack me with his sword, but Gray saw him and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns. I was safe, but others were not. Poor Joyce and Hunter were dead and Captain Smollett was hurt. "Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly. "Some of them have gone," said Doctor Livesy, "but five of them will never walk again." "That's good," said Captain Smollett. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight. I know that we can win." The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor Livesy said that Captain Smollett would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to. In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his pocket and left the fort. "What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?""The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit Ben Gun." That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where Ben Gun said there was a boat.



When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort. I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then walked down the beach, feeling happy.

At the end of the beach I climbed a hill. I could see the Hispaniola, with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see Silver in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the **cry** of the parrot, Captain Flint. The sun was going down and soon there was a mist. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where Ben Gun said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a tent made of animal skins. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought

that it would be very fast on water. Now I had my own plan. I thought that I could go to the Hispaniola in the night and cut the rope to the anchor. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark. When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the darkness, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another distant light



from the Hispaniola. I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship. I found that the boat was very difficult to steer, but the wind helped me to get to the Hispaniola. Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the thick anchor rope. I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called Hands, but I did not know the other man. They both seemed angry. The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship. As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that Hands and the other pirate were fighting each other. I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea. Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the Hispaniola, too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the Admiral Benbow. The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high cliffs on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be impossible for me to take the boat to the shore. I remembered that on the map, there was a place called Cape of Woods. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I realised, however, that if I lay down in the boat, it found its way through the waves on its own. I used a **paddle** to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the Cape of Woods.

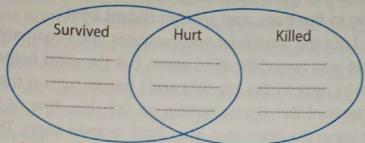
CHAPTER (8)

Chapter 8 Exercises (SB)

- Match the words and the definitions.
 - 1. anchor
 - 2. cry
 - 3. paddle
 - 4. rope
 - 5. steer
 - 6. thick

- a) a short pole used to move a small boat along
- b) very big, strong string
- c) a loud sound made by an animal or bird
- d) wide (for an object)
- e) control the direction of a car, boat, etc.
- f) a heavy object used to stop a boat moving
- 2 What happened to the people in the fight? Complete the diagram with the names in the box.

Anderson - Captain Smollett - Joyce - Doctor Livesy - Gray - Hunter - Jim



- Read and answer the questions:
 - Why did Dr Livesy leave the fort? Do you agree that he is crazy as Gray said?
 - Why did Jim leave the fort?
 - 3 Where did Jim find the boat?
 - Describe the boat that Ben Gun made.
 - What did Jim see on the ship?
 - 6 Where was Jim when he opened his eyes?
- 4 Complete the summary using the words in the box.

anchor - Ben Gun - die - Jim - morning - pirates - steers - waves

Most of the (1) ______attack the north of the fort but five of them (2) _____and the others run away. Dr Livesy has a plan and decides to find (3) _____.

The fort is very hot, so (4) ______ decides to leave the fort too. That evening, he finds Ben Gun's boat. He (5) ______ the boat to the Hispaniola and cuts the rope to the (6) ______. Both boats move out to sea and hit big (7) ______ Jim wakes up the next (8) ______ and sails the boat to the Cape of Woods.

Work in pairs. Discuss these que	Stions. Treasure Island
1 Do you think Captain Smollett	is a good care.
	Why/ Why not?
Why did Captain Smollett say,	'I know that we can win" after the fight"?
what was Jim's plan when he sa	with a living
3) ///// 30	w the little boat? Was his plan successful till the end?
Why did Jim expect a "terrible	
Work in groups to answer these	questions.
1 Why do you think Dr Livesy wa	
2 Was Jim right to cut the rope o	on the <i>Hispaniola</i> ? Why/ Why not?
Chapter 8	BEXercises (WB)
Complete the sentences with t	hese words:
anchor - cry - no	ise - paddle - rope - steer - thick
The city is never quiet: there is	always the of cars and people.
Mhon we got near the beach,	we could hear the of sea birds.
hook	It will take a long time to read it!
The second secon	arating the collie because the lower
e Time and to sail the	poat, so we used a sirial
6 The children used a	to climb up and over the wan. into the water.
Au that the chip was stoppl	nd when thear a more
Match the characters to their p	ositions on the fort dams
	a) the east of the force
1. Dr Livesy	b) near the door
2. Hunter	c) the west of the fort
3. Joyce	d) the north of the fort
4. Gray and Trelawney	e) outside the fort
5. The pirates	353

Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 Captain Smollett did not want the pirates to get into the north side of the fort.
- 2 None of Captain Smollett's men were hurt when the pirates attacked the fort.
- 3 Dr Livesy told Captain Smollett that he would never walk again.
- Dr Livesy left the fort with Jim.
- Ben Gun's boat was made of animal skins.
- Jim cut the rope to the Hispaniola's anchor.
- When Jim woke up, his boat on the beach in the Cape of Woods.
- 3 Jim uses a paddle to steer the boat.

4 Complete the sentences with these adverbs.

badly - completely - nearly - quickly - quietly - suddenly - weakly

- 1 Joyce fired his gun when the pirates first attached.
- When Captain Smollett told him to go, Jim ran to the other side of the fort
- Jim later left the fort
- It wasdark when Jim found Ben Gun's boat.
- 6 Ben Gun's boat was made.
- Jim was soon wet.

Match to make phrases.

1. climb	a) a boat
2. fire	b) a fence
3. put	c) through the door
4. run	d) something in your pocket
5. steer	e) a gun

6 Who says each of the following quotations? Who is the speaker talking to?

- 1 "If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're in trouble."
- "Did you hit anyone?"
- "Have the pirates gone?"
- (4) "What is he doing? Is he crazy?"

Read the quotation and answer the question:

"The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the Admiral Benbow. The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island."

What do you think happened to Jim and the boat in the night?

8 What do you think will happen to Hands and the Hispaniola? Write 50–100 words.



Chapter (9)



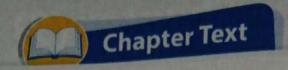
bandage	ضمادة ١٠٠٠
call	يطلق لقبـُا على شخص
close	قريب المحافظة المحافظة
deck	ظهر السفينة
empty	فارغ
fight	يقاتل المناسبة المناس
knife	سكين
mud	طين

Ma waterst to	Formal A
***************************************	يجدف
Kabanser.	بشكل مؤلم
	صخرى
	شراع /يبحر
	ىتعطش
(6) (mis) se	بن العاددا
	عطام السفينة

Expressions & Prepositions

climb up	يتسلق للأعلى
get closer	يقترب
go east	يذهب شرقًا
go downstairs	يذهب إلى الطابق السفلي
go under	يذهب أسفل

hold onto	يتمسك يتمسك يست فالاظارة و المناسسة و المناسسة
look better	يبدو أفضل
take down	ينزل
take off	يخلع ملابس



Jim Hawkins: It was very hot and I was thirsty. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the Hispaniola sailing around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me. I watched the Hispaniola and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. Nobody was sailing it! But where were the men? I thought if I could get



onto the ship, I could return it to Captain Smollett. I started to **paddle** the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly getting closer to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw nobody on the ship. It was so close that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the *Hispaniola*, with no other boat to save me. I climbed up onto the **deck**, which seemed empty. The wind blew and the sails moved to the right, and then I saw them: Hands and the man he was fighting. I thought they were both dead, but then Hands said weakly: "Water!" I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to Hands. He drank all of it, very quickly. "Are you hurt?" I asked him. "With a doctor, I'll be fine," he said. "And where have you been?" "Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain," I said. He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill.

"Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag. Hands looked at me, and then said, "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." "That's a good idea," I agreed. "I don't think you can sail this ship," Hands said. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you." "OK," I said, "But I'm not going back to where the ship was before. We're going to the north of the island." "The north?" he asked. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!" So, I agreed to help him. I found a bandage to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better. He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the rocky north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was Hands. He looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something. We arrived near the north of the island, and Hands told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat. "Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?" he asked. I did not think for a minute that Hands was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason, but I did not know what this was. However, I also knew that

10

100

Hands was not a clever man, so I agreed to go. I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and painfully across the deck, where he picked up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was. Now I knew that he could move, that he had a weapon, and that he planned to hurt me. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the that, but I knew that he could not my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands island. I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, "Look, the wind has changed. If we move the ship now, we'll be safe."

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but Hands told me what to do. This part of the island was full of trees and we could see the **wreck** of an old ship lying on a **flat** beach. "We can stop there, on the beach," said Hands. I steered the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise. I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch Hands. I suddenly turned ly large and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand. I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck. Before he could stand up again, me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck.

I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself. I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran towards me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in Black Hill Cove when one of us would try to catch



the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run away from this older pirate with a bad leg. At that moment, a wave hit the Hispaniola. When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto Hands. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the mast of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again. Hands looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready. "If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!" He stopped and I could see he was thinking about what he could do. "You're clever, Jim Hawkins," he said. "You've won." I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the shoulder. I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again. The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It hurt badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out. I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could reach and then jumped down into the shallow water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the Hispaniola half on the beach and half in the water.

CHAPTER 9

Chapter 9 Exercises (SB)

Choose the correct word.

- 1 Baher has grown so tall that he can catch / reach the top window now.
- 2 All the tourists stood on the deck / mast of the ship when they sailed into Alexandria.
- 3 This table isn't flat / shallow, so I can't do my homework on it.
- (4) Injy can't play basketball today because she hurt her shoulder / wreck.
- 6 After the accident, we put a bandage / wound on Hatem's arm.
- I tried to paddle / dive the small boat alone.

Choose the correct answer.

- What happened to Ben Gun's boat?
 - a) The Hispaniola hit it and it went into the sea.
 - b) Jim sailed it to the north of the island.
 - c) Hands took it.
 - d) The wind blew it away.
- Who did Jim find on the Hispaniola?
 - a) Hands.
 - c) Joyce.
- What did Jim give to the pirate?
 - a) A bandage.
 - c) Food.

b) Some water.

b) Silver.

d) Ben Gun.

- d) All of the above.
- How did Jim escape from the pirate?
 - a) He ran onto the island.
 - b) He climbed up the mast.
 - c) He went down to the bottom of the ship.
 - d) He went to the deck again.
- What happened after Hands threw a knife at Jim?
 - a) Jim shot Hands.
 - b) The mast fell.
 - c) The knife hit on the shoulder.
 - d) A and C.

Which is the best description of Hands? He is a clever, strong and dangerous man. He persuades Jim to take the Hispaniola to the island and nearly succeeds in hurting Jim. He is not very clever and he is not very honest, because he tries to hurt Jim with a knife. He is also strong because he runs after Jim although he has many wounds. He is very weak because of his wounds, and he needs a lot of help. However, he is a very good sailor and can take the Hispanioles.
friendly and tries to help Jim.
Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
Which of the following adjectives can you use to describe Jim in this chapter?
Why?
- brave - kind
- clever - strong
2 "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!"
- Who was talking?
- What direction did Jim want him to take the ship to?
out he really help lim? How?
a "I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my snoes and well."
quietly to another part of the ship."
- Why does Jim do this?
Wengniola but he was clever ellough to man
A wave helped Jim on the Hispamora Delay on the ship. Write 100 words showing how Jim saved himself on the ship.
Write 100 words showing
(359)



	nd the definitions.
1. bandage 2. catch 3. deck 4. flat 5. mast 6. reach 7. shallow 8. shoulder 9. wound 10. wreck	 a) the tall pole which carries the sails on a ship b) move your hand or arm forward to hold or take something c) not deep d) a long piece of cloth that you can put around an injury e) a ship that is badly damaged and cannot be used again f) the part of your body between your arms and your neck g) stop someone from escaping h) an injury, especially a deep cut from a knife i) the top part of a ship where you can walk j) having a level surface
Are these sentence	s true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences:
1 Jim saw someone	e sailing the <i>Hispaniola</i> around the island.
2 On the Hispaniolo	, Jim realised that Hands was hurt.
3 Jim did not want	to help the pirate.
4 Hands taught Jim	to sail the ship.
5 Jim knew that he	could trust Hands.
6 They took the His	paniola onto a beach.
7 Hands took out a	knife, but he was very slow.
8 Jim was able to re	pair his gun and he shot Hands.
Put the events from	Chapter 9 in the correct order.
Hands found a	knife when he thought Jim was not looking at him.
ⓑ ☐ Jim paddled hi	s boat back the Hispaniola because he thought nobody was on
e ☐ Jim helped Har	nds to feel better.
Jim was hit by	a knife but shot Hands at the same time.
Jim and Hands	sailed back to the island.
f Jim held onto a	rope before the <i>Hispaniola</i> sank his boat.

Jim climbed into the sails to escape from Hands.

Complete the sentences with these adjectives. correct - dead - dirty - empty - honest - rocky - wet - worried Jim thought that Hands and the other pirate were The floor of the ship was		
When Jim returned to the Hispaniola, the deck seemed Jim thought that Hands and the other pirate were The floor of the ship was With sand and mud from the island. Jim was Because he knew Hands was planning something. It was difficult to take the ship to the Jim's gun did not work at first because it was Match to make collocations. 1. go Jin's fly through Jin's gun did not work at first because it was Match to make collocations. 1. go Jin's gun did not work at first because it was Match to make collocations. 1. go Jin's gun did not work at first because it was Match to make collocations. 1. go Jin's gun did not work at first because it was Match to make collocations. 1. go Jin the air Jin the island. Match to make collocations. 1. go Jin the air Jin the air Jin the island. Jin the isla	complete the sentences with	these and Treasure Island
3 Im thought that Hands and the other pirate were 3 Yoon Jim and Hands saw the with sand and mud from the island. 5 Jim was because he knew Hands was planning something. 7 It was difficult to take the ship to the part of the island. 8 Jim's gun did not work at first because it was part of the island. Match to make collocations. 1. go a) the air b) a flag 3. make c) a ship to the island d) downstairs 5. sail e) a lot of noise Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim'Captain Hawkins? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? 4 What does a flag mean to a ship? 5 What does a flag mean to a ship? 6 What does a flag mean to a ship? 7 There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more of the security was people in this chapter.		
3 Im thought that Hands and the other pirate were 3 Yoon Jim and Hands saw the with sand and mud from the island. 5 Jim was because he knew Hands was planning something. 7 It was difficult to take the ship to the part of the island. 8 Jim's gun did not work at first because it was part of the island. Match to make collocations. 1. go a) the air b) a flag 3. make c) a ship to the island d) downstairs 5. sail e) a lot of noise Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim'Captain Hawkins? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? 4 What does a flag mean to a ship? 5 What does a flag mean to a ship? 6 What does a flag mean to a ship? 7 There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more of the security was people in this chapter.	when Jim returned to the Hi	ispani - honest - rocky - wet
## The floor of the ship was	o lim thought that Hands and	the att
 § Soon Jim and Hands saw the	The floor of the ship was	the other pirate were
ignition was because he knew Hands was planning something. ignitively lit was difficult to take the ship to the part of the island. ignitively lit was difficult to take the ship to the part of the island. ignitively lit was difficult to take the ship to the part of the island. ignitively lit was make collocations. 1.	a coon Jim and Hands saw the	with sand and mud from the island
6 Jim knew that Hands was not an	a lim wasbecause	he know to
It was difficult to take the ship to the	9/ 3/1.1.	THE MIEW Handers
Match to make collocations. 1. go 2. fly through 3. make 4. take down 5. sail Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more of less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.		
Match to make collocations. 1. go 2. fly through 3. make 4. take down 5. sail Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more or less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	o lim's gun did not work at fire	st because it
1. go 2. fly through 3. make 4. take down 5. sail Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more onless exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	6 Jillis garrara not norkat in	st because it was
2. fly through 3. make 4. take down 5. sail Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more onless exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	Match to make collocations.	
3. make 4. take down 5. sail Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more on less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	1. go	
4. take down 5. sail 4. old downstairs 5. sail Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter.	2. fly through	
Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	3. make	
Answer these questions. 1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more onless exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	4. take down	
1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim Came healer to it: 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more on less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	5. sail	e) a lot of noise
1 How did the Hispaniola look when Jim Came healer to it: 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more on less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	A - cupr these questions.	
 2 How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola nit his boat? 3 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? In what way can he help Jim? "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," What flag did Jim mean? Why did he want to take it down from the ship? What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more of less exciting? Write 50 words to say why. 	Answer these question aniola loo	k when Jim came nearer to it?
 What did Hands plan to do with Jim? Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1 Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. There are only two people in this chapter. 	A How was lim saved after th	e Hispaniola hit his boat?
Read the quotation and answer the questions: (a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." 1) Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? 2) In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1) What flag did Jim mean? 2) Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3) What does a flag mean to a ship? 3) What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter.	2 Mow was sim saves alan to do	with Jim?
(a) "You'll want to go to the Island, well of		
1 Why does Hands call Jim Captain. 2 In what way can he help Jim? (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more on less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	Read the quotation and to the	island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk."
 2 In what way can he neip in: (b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Iess exciting? Write 50 words to say why. 	(a) "You'll want to go to the	m 'Captain Hawkins'?
(b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can thave the ship? 1 What flag did Jim mean? 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more on less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.		
1 What flag did Jim mean. 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter.	2 In what way can he ner	have this flag on the ship,"
1 What flag did Jim mean. 2 Why did he want to take it down from the ship? 3 What does a flag mean to a ship? There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more only two people in this chapter.	(b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't	0?
3 What does a flag fried for this chapter. Do you think this means the say why. less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	1 What flag did Jim Mean	e it down from the ship?
3 What does a flag fried for this chapter. Do you think this means the say why. less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.	2 Why did he want to take	to a ship?
less exciting: VIII	3 What does a flag mean	this chapter. Do you think this makes to
less exciting: VIII	There are only two people in	1 this chap
	less exciting? Write 50 word	5 (0 30)
https://www.Voutube.com/channel/LICiEvkl7LlaNi_P7dpahzzala		
https://www.violitube.com/channel/LICiEvkl7LlaNi D7dnahzzala		
	https://www.Youtube.co	m/channel/UCiFykl7HaNi_R7dnahzzala

Chapter (10)



Key Vocabulary

مغامرة
and the same of th
على قيد الحياة
حبل المرساة
يهتم
يخيف
عصابة
حارس
ينضم
يقتل
احدث/آخر
زعيم
ر يخسر

100mm 100m	
mean	
realise	ببرك
remain	ريقو
rule	فيداة
save	يقن
surprised	شمننه
torch	غشاف
trap	فخ
trial	محاكمة
unusual	غیر عادی
waste	يسرف/يبذر

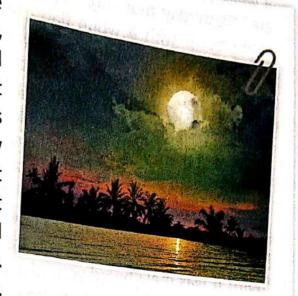
Expressions & Prepositions

at last	أخير ًا/في النهاية	
be back	تعفت	
be more of a man	than any of you اکثر رجولة من أي واحد منكم	
be trapped	يقع في فخ	
come down	ينزل	
hold on	يتمسك بـ <i>ايتنش</i> َب <i>َث</i> بـ	
look out	ينظر خارجا	

look round	ينظر حول
ready for	جاهز لـ
run away	يهرب
run into	بصطدم ب
stay on your own	يبقى وحسد'ا
take back	يسترجع
talk together	يتحدث مع بعضهم

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to go back to sea. I looked forward to telling my friends about my latest adventure and started to walk back across the island. I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met Ben Gun for the first time. As I continued, it was very dark. It was difficult for me to find my way, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the fort, I went more slowly.



I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was unusual, as Captain Smollett was always very careful not to waste wood for the fire. I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good guards because nobody saw me return. I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, "Who is it? Who is it?" I realised that it was Captain Flint, Silver's parrot! Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's there?" It was Long John Silver! I turned to run away but I ran into a man, who held on to me. I was trapped. "Bring a torch, Dick," said Silver. When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realised that the fort was now full of pirates. Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead? There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked badly hurt. Silver looked tired. His parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty. "So, Jim Hawkins!" said Silver. "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for Jim!" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again. "I knew you were clever," Silver said to me. "I always wanted you to be one of us, because I was like you when I was a boy. Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." I was pleased to hear that my friends were still **alive**, but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me anymore. "Now, you don't have to say yes," said Silver.

CHAPTER (10)

"I can't tell you what to do." "I'll answer you," I said, in a weak voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are." "Yesterday morning," explained Silver, "Dr Livesy came down with a white flag. He told me that the Hispianola was not there any more. We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know



and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know where they are now." "Dog or care where you were. So here we are. I don't know where they are now." "Dog or care where you were. So here we are. I don't know where they are now." "Very well have to decide now?" I asked. "Yes, you have to decide now," said Silver. "Very well have lost of your ship, you have lost your ship, you have lost your men. How did you lose have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them? It was me! I heard your plans on the Hispaniola and told Captain Smollett them? It was me! I heard your plans on the Hispaniola and told Captain Smollett Rhow. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily. "That was the boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And he was the boy who got the map from Billy Bones!" Morgan then stood up with a knife. "Stop!" called Silver. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!" Morgan and the other pirates were quiet. "I like this boy," Silver continued. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's more of a man than any of you." The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other.

"What are you saying?" said Silver. "We don't like all of your **rules**," said one of the pirates. "We're going to talk together without you. You can't stop us." Soon, all the men left the room, and only Silver and I remained. "Listen Jim," said Silver. "I don't think that they want me to be the captain any more. But I can look after you, if you look after me." "Do you mean that they want to kill you?" "They don't need me now that I don't have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you." I was surprised to hear this. He was the leader of the gang of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy. "I'll do what I can," I told him. "You're a good boy!" he said. "I know you've got the ship safe somewhere. I don't know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I'm now with Mr Trelawney and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?" He saw that I was surprised. "Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let's hope it's a good one." I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us. "They're coming!" I told Silver. "Let them come!" he said.

Chapter 10 Exercis Treasure Island

		ses (SB)	
Match the words and the	he definition	(00)	
Match de March	millions,		

Match the words and the de	efinitions.
1. alive 2. care 3. rules 4. torch 5. trapped	 a) a stick that you burn at one end for light b) living c) concerned about or interested in something d) unable to leave or escape e) instructions about what you can and can't do
8 Hazem was hurt in the acc	with the words from Exercise 1. / a lot about the environment. to mark the start of the Olympic Games. cident but he was still
Lamar was In the say that your say that your says that you says tha	he room and she couldn't get out. Ou can't talk in the library.
	nd had dirty clothes. as not frightened of Silver. e map.
Arrange these events in the a) Jim knows the pirates hav b) Jim walks across the island c) The pirates walk towards J d) Jim tells Silver that he is n e) Jim walks into the dark for f) Silver says that Dr Livesy g	order they happened. The taken the fort. It is and Silver with a knife. It is and gets into bed.

5 Work in pairs. Discuss and answer these questions. How did Jim know where things were on the island? Why was Jim surprised to see a fire next to the fort? 3 Why did Jim think the guards were not good? Why did Silver say that Jim had to join him? How did Silver take the fort? Why did the pirates no longer need Silver? 6 Would you prefer to have Silver as a friend or an enemy? Write 50 words explaining why.



Chapter 10 Exercises (WB)

Answer the questions wit	h full sentences	
If something is alive, is it	living or angry?	
A IF VOU CUTE TO TOUTIE CHILL	y UU VOII IOOK fan in	ALCOHOLD IN
2 Do you use a torch when	g, do you look for it or find it important it is rainy or when it is dark?	nt?
3 Do you are trapped can ve	out go when it is dark?	The Constitute
	ou go where you want to go or do yo	U have to stay in
0		a riave to stay iii
Do rules tell you what to	do or where to go?	
Ocircle True or False and co		
o lim did not know how to	o find his way across the island.	
1 Jill did Het diet Het de	had a fire reactions the island.	(True / False)
2 Captain Smollett always		(True / False)
The guards did not see J		(True / False)
All of the pirates in the formal	ort looked well and happy.	(True / False)
The pirates took the fort	from Dr Livesy and his men.	(True / False)
	re Dr Livesy and his men were.	(True / False)
7 Jim agreed to join Silver		(True / False
	ot want Silver to be their captain any	
water and the second se		
Work in pairs. Who are the	e speakers of the quotations, and v	vhat are they
talking about?		
1 "It's nice of you to visit u	s." on the original place with a set of the con-	
2 "He said he did not know	v or care where you were."	
2 "He said he did not know	olo you at your trial."	
3 "If you don't kill me, I'll h	eip you at your than	
"We don't like all of your	rules.	
6 "I know you've got the sh	nip safe somewhere.	
Match to make collocation	The second secon	
	a) on a bed	
1 cut	b) telling someone something	3
2. hold on	c) to someone	
3. lie down	d) a rope	
4. look e) after someone		
5. look forward to	e) alter sem	

CHAPTER (10)
6 Read the quotations and answer the questions.
"Was it possible that they were all dead?"
1 What did Jim mean by "all"?
2 Were those "all" really dead?
3 What happened to them?
"I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?"
1 Why do you think Jim was not frightened of Silver?
2 Do you think he was right to offer to help Silver in his trial?
3 Do you think he was right to say this in front of all Silver's men?
 Write three sentences to explain these comments. Jim was in trouble, but he could turn things upside down. When Jim arrived at the fort, he was sad, then he was very happy but worried
Silver had two offers to Jim; one at the beginning of the chapter and one at the end; and both were surprising. Imagine you are one of the pirates. Write the note that you will give to Silve
the end of the chapter.
e <u>la la l</u>

Chapter (11)



Key Vocabulary

agreement	اتفاقية/اتفاق
arrest	يقبض على
follow	يتبع
good	الخير وريا ١٤٥٧ ٢٠٥٨
jump	قفزة يسمي
malaria	ملاریا (مرض)
negotiate	يتفاوض

A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	
nod	All Book Jegog Is,
patient	إيماءة/إشارة
Padelli,	مريض
promise	وعدايعد
remind	يخكر موجو بويوس
trust	يثق في
useful	مفيد
voice	صوت بشری

Expressions & Prepositions

come to agreement	يتوصل إلى اتفاق
except for	باستثناء
feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة
keep close	يبقى قريبـُا
look after	یعتنی ب
sound different	يبدو مختلفًا
stay close	يبقى قريبًا

stay safe	يامن
try a trick on	يجرب حيلة على
wake up	يستيقظ
walk away	يمشى بعيدا
walk forward	يمشى إلى الأمام
walk in through	یمشی من خلال
with wonder	باندهاش



Jim Hawkins: The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he nervously walked forward to give it to Silver. Silver read it. "So, I'm not the captain now, is that it?" he said. "Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?"

"Don't try your tricks on us," said one of the pirates, called George. "I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be," said Silver.



"We can tell you," said George. "First, your plans haven't worked. Second, you let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn't let us follow them. And fourth, there's the boy!" "Is that all?" asked Silver. "That's enough, isn't it?" said George. "I'll answer each reason," said Silver. "First, who didn't do what I asked them to do? Anderson, Hands and you, George! If we are **arrested** when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have a doctor on the island. He's important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I came to an **agreement** so that he would help us. And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to **negotiate**. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn't follow them!" he continued, and showed them the treasure map. I was very surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder.

"That's Flint's map!" said George. "But how are we to take his treasure home if we don't have a ship?' "Listen, George," said Silver. "You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?" "Silver's right," said Morgan, and the other pirates agreed. Silver was still the captain. The pirates now seemed happy, except for George. Silver made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang. I lay down and thought about Silver. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe. The next morning, a voice woke us all up (and I mean all of us, even George, the guard). It was Dr Livesy calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with Silver's gang. What would Dr Livesy think? "Good morning, Doctor," said Silver. "Come in! George will open the door for you. We've got a surprise for you, too!" "Do you mean Jim?" asked Dr Livesy. He looked surprised as he came near us. "That's right," said Silver.

*0

The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said, "Let me see your patients." He walked into the fort and, with a small **nod** to me, walked up to the ill patients. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew "I hope you took your medicine?" he said to George. "Yes, sir, I did," he replied.

"Good, because now I'm a pirate's doctor, I want to keep you all healthy so we can get you back to England for trial," he said. The pirates looked at each other but

"Dick doesn't feel well," said Morgan. "Let me look at you," the doctor replied. "Yes, you have malaria. That's what happens when you sleep outside on an island like this. I'm surprised that a clever man like Silver didn't realise." He gave Dick some medicine, then said, "Now I'd like to talk to the boy, please." "No!" said George.

"Be quiet!' shouted Silver. "Doctor, you've been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first he must promise not to run away." l agreed. "Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside," said Silver. When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told Silver that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. Silver reminded them they did not know where the treasure was vet. They needed my help, and perhaps the doctor's help as well, until the time was right. Silver took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he sounded different. "Tell the others that I helped you, doctor," he said. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe." I think you're frightened!" said Dr Livesy. "I'm not frightened," said Silver, "but I know you're a good man and you'll see the good in me. Now I'll let you and Jim talk." Silver walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us. "Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me. I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me. I must stay here now." "No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One jump and you're out of the fort, and we can run." I can't," I said. "Silver trusts me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach." "You've got the ship!" said the doctor. I quickly told him my story. "You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then turned to Silver. "It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, Silver," he said. "Don't try to find it." "But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," Silver replied. "OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort. "We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said Silver. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."

Chapter 11 Exercises (SB)

Match the words and the definitions:

- a) agreement b) arrest c) malaria d) negotiate e) nod f) promise
- a movement of your head that gives someone a sign
- 2 a serious illness that comes from mosquitos
- say you will certainly do something
- discuss a situation to find a good result for everyone
- 5 the police take someone away for doing something bad
- a decision made by two or more people

2 Read and answer the following questions.

- 1 How could Silver convince the pirates to let him be the Captain again?
- 2 What did Dr Livesy do when he found out that Jim lived with the gang?
- 3 Why did Dr Livesy look after the ill pirates?
- Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the pirates' questions?
- 5 The pirates were angry to see Dr Livesy talking to Jim. What reassured them?

Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

- The pirates gave Silver four reasons why he should not be their captain.
- Silver agreed with the pirates and George became captain.
- 3 Jim was worried because he didn't want to go back with Dr Livesy.
- It was easy to become ill on the island because there was malaria.
- 5 Jim told Dr Livesy where the treasure was.
- Silver said that he and Jim should look after each other.

Match to complete the sentences.

- 1. Silver
- 2. George
- 3. Dr Livesy
- 4. Jim

- a) said that he wanted the pirates to go home for trial.
- b) was the only person who knew where the ship was.
- c) told the pirates that he was the best captain.
- d) had to guard the fort all night.

Treasure Island

Work in pairs. Read the quotation. Discuss and answer the questions.

"Junderstood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe."

- 1 Why does Jim think that Silver is very clever?
- Why does Jim think that Silver would do or say anything to stay safe?
- Why do the pirates choose to keep Silver as their captain?
- Why does Dr Livesy agree to let Silver look for the treasure?
- Are you surprised that Dr Livesy agreed to let Jim stay with Silver? Why/Why not?

Imagine you are Dr Livesy. Write returned from your visit to the p	your diary entry for the day, after you have pirates.



https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi RZdpqhzzqlg

CHAPTER (11)

Chapter 11 Exercises (WB)

1	Compl	ete the	sentences	with	these	words.
						-

arrested - agreement - negotiate - nod - malaria - promise

- 1 The businesswoman travelled to England toselling Egyptian cotton to a factory. I hope she gets a good price.
- 3 I asked my friend if he agreed with my plan for the project, and he gave a small of his head.
- The scientist became ill after staying by a river for a week. He might have
- 5 The police the man because he was driving his car at more than 150 km/h.
- 6 Thank you for letting me use your phone. I that I'll give it back to you tomorrow.

Read Chapter 11 again quickly. Who has the following?

- 1 a piece of paper for Silver
- 2 the treasure map
- 3 Complete with Silver's responses to the pirates' reasons.

		ections. Treasure Island	A TV
_	Match to make coll	ections.	CHAPT
	1. know 2. know 3. save 4. stay 5. take	b) lives c) medicine d) safe e) to an agreement	
20	omplete the sente	ences with these adjectives:	PET
1.	dangerous	- frightened - happy - ill - important - safe - useful	
R (a	Jim will be	orry? ecide to stay with the pirates? ur lives many times on this journey" on the times when Jim could save Dr Livesy and his men o	d me"
	the journey.	to take will say to Trelawney and the of	ther
In m	nagine you are Dr en when you retu	Livesy. Write what you will say to Trelawney and the or Irn to them after visiting the fort.	
	https://w	ww.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg	375

Chapter (12)



Key Vocabulary

attach	يربط
cave	كمف
crew	طاقم السفينة
dig	يحفر
drink	مشروب
excited	فرِح/منفعل
ground	أرض المستعددة

point is of the	M
skeleton	لعظو للإبه
smile	المسأنا
spade	جاروف/ مرجنرفَة
supplies	مؤن
terrible	شفا
useless	عديم الفائدة

Expressions & Prepositions

call out	ینادی
find out	يكتشف
go home	يعود إلى الوطن
get into	يدخل ١٠٠٠ ٢٠٠٠
look tired	يبدو متعبئا

look worried	يبدو قلقًا
play a trick	يخدع
pointing north	هشيرًا إلى اتجاه الشمال
slow down	يبطئ



Jim Hawkins: Silver went back to the pirates and said, "I've found out that the doctor's men Hawkins: Silver Hawkins: Silve have the ship. I don't have the ship. That will give us the advantage. We'll keep Jim with us before then. When we go home, we can will give us the island." The pirates looked happy with this news, but it was to be ship. That will give us the ship on the island. When he found the tree with this news, but it was to be ship. The ship on the island." have us the advantage of the pirates looked happy with this news, but it worried me. What leave him on the island." The pirates? I did not the sound to be a before then. When we go home, we can leave him on the island." The pirates? I did not the sound to be a before the sound to be a sound to b leave him on the land the found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesy and was silver really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesy and was Silver really produced the small beautiful what was Silver really produced the what was Silver really produced the what was Silver really produced the what was he going to help Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney or these terrible pirates? I did not know. We all left the fort. The pirates were Mr Trelawney or the same of th carrying supplies, at the map to see where we should go. We took the boats down a river, then we left them at the map to some tall trees. The pirates attached me to Silver with a rope so that I and walked the sold we walked up a hill. We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this could not established was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. Then we heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the skeleton of a man lying on the **ground**. "The skeleton is **pointing** north!" said Morgan. "He is," said Silver. "I think this was one of Flint's games. He killed the man and put him there." "Flint was a terrible man," said Morgan. The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us.

"That sounds like Flint!" said George. "Flint's dead," said Silver. "It is someone playing a trick." Then the voice called out, "McGraw, bring me a drink, please!" "That was what Flint said, just before he died!" said Morgan. Now the pirates all looked very frightened.

"Listen men," said Silver. "There's a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was Flint. I think it was Ben Gun." "I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said George. The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked tired and ill. Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. Silver, too, looked different. His eyes looked crazy and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure. The pirates all ran to the bottom of the tree. George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry. "Look!" he said. We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree there was a big hole in the ground. Someone had been there before us. The treasure was gone! The pirates said nothing, but I could see that Silver was already making a plan. "Take this, and be ready for trouble," he said quietly, and he gave me a gun. Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started digging with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. Morgan found a gold coin and held it up for the others to see. "One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here silve the pirates looked here, Silver!" shouted George angrily. "You knew about this, didn't you?" The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot. "Let's get them more". them, men!" said George. Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the CHAPTER (12)

pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe! Dr Livesy, Gray and the other three started to run. We were safe! Dr Livesy, Gray and the other three started to run. We were safe! Dr Livesy, Gray and the other three started to run. Gun came out from the trees. "Thank you, doctor," said Silver. "You saved us. And look in that he was frightened of him. Ben Gun!" Ben Gun said hello to Silver, but I could see that he was frightened of him. As we walked back to the boats, we heard how Ben Gun had helped us. Ben Gun had du up the treasure and put it in a cave in the north of the island before we arrived on the Hispaniola. Ben Gun told all of this to Dr Livesy, when the doctor gave him some cheese The doctor then thought of a plan. He gave the map to Silver because he knew it was useless. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where Ben Gun had supplies as well as the treasure. When he knew that Silver was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with Ben Gun and Gray. To slow the pirates down, Ben Gun sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole. Aftera few hours, we reached the coast again. Ben Gun helped Gray to destroy one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island. After three miles, I was surprised to see the Hispaniola! The wind had blown it from the beach and it was sailing empty on the sea. We helped Gray to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to Ben Gun's cave, where Trelawney was looking after Captain Smollett. "Silver," Trelawney said when he saw him.

"You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you." Silver said nothing, but he **smiled**. Inside the big cave, Captain Smollett was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was Flint's treasure. The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was heavy work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold. We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all



the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine. It was a difficult journey back on the *Hispaniola* because the crew was so small. Captain Smollett lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the *Hispaniola* later that day, Ben Gun told us that Silver had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that. With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. Captain Smollett stopped working and Gray decided to buy his own ship. Ben Gun quickly spentall of his money. I have a comfortable life now. I often think about the island and Long John Silver, but I never saw him again.

57

10

1

Chapter 12 Exercises (SB)

late th	e sentences with	tilese words from the
Complete	- The second sec	these words from the story.

attach - cave - ground - point - skeleton - smile - use	megusped to
hone IS It doesn't work	eless
nts and trees grow out of the	and provide the
ways try to and look happy in photos.	
ouyour keys to your bag, you won't lose them	T THE PARTY
na couldn't speak, but she could to the house	Cost of Alfab
re were some big bones in the of a dinosaur a	where she lived.
was dark but we went inside to get out of the	e rain
e the correct answer to complete the sentences:	
er told the pirates that they would find	a lease did the s
he map and the supplies	
the treasure and the ship	
u L uk Cikar basausa	
e was attached to him	
ilver liked him	
skeleton of a man was	
ointing north	
ointing at the sea	
en they saw a tall tree, they knew they were	
n danger	
ear the treasure	
en they saw the hole, they knew that	
nere was never any treasure	
omeone else had the treasure	
Gun moved the treasure	
nat morning	
efore they arrived on the island	

https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCjEvkl7UgNi_RZdpqhzzqlg

CHAPTE	12				
	esy had given Si	ver the map			
	he could find the				
	cause it was usel				
	they sailed back				
	er disappeared				
	otain Smollett bo	ought a new s	hip		
Work in	pairs. Discuss ar	nd answer the	ese questio	ns.	de de meking
	id Morgan say, "				
-	id Ben Gun pret				
	lid Silver look wh			easure?	
	o you think Silve		-		
17	vas the journey t	-			
6 How (lid the story end	tor Jim!			
7 Why	lid the story end lid the group loo n't find the pirate	ok for the rem	naining pirat ou think the	es? What did y will do if the	they do when they find them?
7 Why o could Silver ha Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirate shelped the group of words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is ing this.	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them? minute.
7 Why o could Silver ha Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirate shelped the group of words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?
7 Why o could Silver has Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirate s helped the group of words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?
7 Why o could Silver has Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirates s helped the gro words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?
7 Why o could Silver has Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirates s helped the gro 0 words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is ing this.	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?
7 Why o could Silver has Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirates is helped the group of words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is ing this.	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?
7 Why o could Silver has Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirate shelped the group of words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is ing this.	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?
7 Why o could Silver has Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirates is helped the group of words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is ing this.	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?
7 Why o could Silver has Write 10	lid the group loon't find the pirate shelped the group of words explain	ok for the remes? What do youp, but he is ing this.	ou think the	y will do if the	ey find them?

Chapter 12 Exercises (WB)

the words	a) a large hole in the side of a	the right of
1. attach 2. ground 3. cave 4. point 5. smile 6. useless 7. skeleton	 a) a large hole in the side of a mountain b) the bones of a whole animal or person c) join one thing to another d) not useful at all e) the top part of the earth f) have a happy expression on your face using y g) move your finger in the direction of someth it to someone 	our mouth
till they met ben	e things Jim and the group saw from the time the Gun and the group. See and correct the false sentences.	ey left the fort
1 Silver told the p	oirates that he planned to leave Jim on the island.	(True / False)
2 The pirates sails	ed around the island on the Hispaniola.	(True / False)
3 They found the	skeleton of Flint.	(True / False)
4 They heard a m	an singing in the trees.	(True / False)
5 The pirates thou	ught that the voice from the trees was very funny.	(True / False)
6 They found a ho	ole in the ground but it was empty.	(True / False)
7 Three pirates ra	n away and three died.	(True / False)
***************************************		(True / False)

Jim learned that Silver hid the treasure in a cave.

CHAPTER 12	
4 Match to make ph	rases.
1. give 2. play 3. reach 4. slow 5. sound 6. think	 a) someone or something down b) like a person singing c) a trick on someone d) of a plan e) someone an advantage f) the coast
5 Complete the sent	tences with these adjectives.
	ul - comfortable - crazy - dangerous - frightened - hot - quieter - terrible - useless - worried
 2 Jim did not know 3 It was when 4 Morgan looked a 5 The pirates were 6 Silver's eyes look 	that Silver wanted to leave him on the island. It if Silver would help Dr Livesy or the
Back in England,	Jim lived alife.
6 Complete with what a) Captain Smollett: c) Ben Gun:	
Read these quotati	ions and answer these questions.
What was theDid that thing	ut. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face thing that frightened Morgan? help the pirates and Jim? How? front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry."
1 What was the	reason for George's cry?
	nean? What did Silver do to face it?
1 Why does Silve2 How could Be3 When did they	tor. You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" er thank Dr Livesy? n Gun help them? v last see Ben Gun?
3 Imagine you are Jin mother telling her l	n. It is your first day back in England. Write a letter to your priefly what happened to you. Write about 150 words.

Follow-up Exercises

Berry Herium Hills

Unit 7

(Dictation)

1	6	ca	b	ul	a	rv
		Vu	-	٠.	u	·y

 غبار/ تراب	خدمات طوارئ
 خطر	إسعافات أولية
 سلة مهملات	أغطية السرير
 حساسية	يستجيب/يرد
 ء على الأقل	التنفس
 النظافة العامة	عملية التنفس الصناعي
 البحث العلمي	يلف
 يزيل	بطانية
 قاعدة	حرق ، ما الما الما الما الما الما الما الما
 علمي	یخلی (مکان)
 ألواح تقطيع	يؤلم
 یکح	مصاب
 يعطس	يشكو
 قطعة إسفنج	يجرح
 منديل ورقى	تلف

Phrases, Expressions, I	Idioms & Preposition
-------------------------	----------------------

	ينتمي لـ/ يخص	 بقوم بعمل التنفس الصناعي
	يصرخ في	 يستنشق ويزفر الهواء
	يشكو بشأن	 يخطئ
***************************************	يقرر بشأن	 يتأكد
***************************************	يساعد في	 لديه جدال مع

Exercises

1 Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d:	Letrongly advise you	
11 You	take care of your studio	es. I strongly	d) mustn't
			William II
Dropping rubbis	h into the Nile water is	c) forbidden	d) advisable
	1 magaggggrV	The second secon	
3 We	show our identity cards	before going into any go	vernmental formal building d) can't
a) have to	b) should	c) need to	u) can t
4 I t	the film. It was boring and	I really wasted my time	votabad
a) didn't have to		() Illustri e illi	
c) must have wat	ched	d) needn't have v	
5 I suggest that our	childrens	leep early and get up ear	ly.
a) must	b) need	c) needn't	d) should
6 The doctor gave	her treatment for her		
a) curiosity	b) honesty	c) allergy	d) hospitality
Giving him	at the scene of the	he accident probably sav	ed his life.
a) emergency ser		b) first aid	
c) hygiene		d) danger	
8 It is said that cold	ls do not to	antibiotics.	
a) grow	b) agree	c) respond	d) carry
During the war, s	everal families were	from their hom	ies.
a) evacuated	b) burnt	c) wrapped	d) damaged
10 My friend was	a bandage ard	ound his injured wrist.	
a) wrapping	b) burning	c) breaking	d) explaining
Fill in the space:			
	the first country to adopt s	tandard time. By 1852 m	ost British clocks
(a) set to the	time in Greenwich, Lond	don. The United States a	nd Canada were
(b) big to us	se a single time for every	y town. In 1882, the Ca	madian inventor. Fleming
suggested that the wo	orld(c) d	livided into 24 equal tim	e zones, each zone would
be one hour different	(d) those	e on their side.	- LSS
- 2 /4 Jul 2012 C			A TORREST FA
A) Translate into Eng			
ب، او ای فیود، او نفد	بداء رأيه دون خوف من العقاه	فرصة للتعبير عن نفســه، وإ	يجب علينا أن نعطى للطفل الأ
		ى يفيد به مجتمعه.	دائم؛ حتى يصبح مواطنًا له رأ
D) 70			
B) Translate into Ara			, at and
reliable people to b	which we inherited from	n our great ancient Egy	ptians needs honest and
remadie people to k	eep it and restore the stole	en from abroad.	and the second second

Unit 8

(Dictation)

		CHIERTS:	CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE		833
۷o	cab	ula	rv		

- Coulding		فائدة
	اختبار قصير	ضغطة (على الماوس)
	ترجمة	مألوف
	تطبيق على التليفون المحمول	يكتشف
	مزايا	
	تعليق	يتجول / ينتقل من مكان لمكان
auges el	تمامًا	يخرج
	عيوب	جهاز الملاحة (في السيارة)
	ضغط عصبي	نظام تكييف الهواء
15,410	5 0	مركبة
	فهم	مجهد
	إلكتروني	فظیم/ ده ،
	وثائقى	موقع
	يخمن	عجلة
	يشارك	The second and women's NOVEC.
	مدهش	يشحن
	ا قلق	كهربائى

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يفقد الاهتمام في		مفید ا
 يتصل بالإنترنت		يتواصل مع
 يعطى اتجاهات	Alexander State	يركب على
يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة		مألوف لدي
 يتوه / يضل الطريق		تأثير على

Exercises

Ch	100se the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or d:	hetter marks.	
	Should Kareema stu	dy harder, she	c) got	d) gets
	a) would get	b) would have got	andn't catch the bus.	
2	he ra	b) would have got n as fast as he could, he	c) Unless	d) In case
	0) 11	L\ Without		7
3	But for his honest ac	lvice, I las	st year's exams.	d) wouldn's
	a) Won't noce	L) wouldn't have nasse	d C) Would have I	d) wouldn't pass
4	Hala	seen us, she would have	come and talked to us.	
	a) If	b) Should	c) Were	d) Had
5		a fire, call the firemen	at once.	
	a) is	b) was	c) had been	d) are
6		our way throu		
	a) control		c) navigate	d) relax
7		b) notice		- 193
100	a) familiar	ldiction are	c) cultural	d) stressful
0		b) useful		u) suessiui
0		ur before		d) man
0	a) vehicle	b) internet	c) link	d) map
9		a/an on re		
No.	a) app	b) quiz	c) chat	d) feedback
10	Advances in	have improved c	rop yields by over 30%.	
	a) technology	b) invention	c) internet	d) robot
Fill	l in the space:			
	(a)	you live in the country	yside, you have to be very	careful during nights
wh		트 경투(Mac(Mac()), 기업 (Mac()) - 101 - 12 (Mac()) - 20 (Mac	(b) people in th	
			side is more peaceful, clean	
			problem as you can reach a	
			.(d) living in the cr	
iiiy	sen, pierei nving in	the countryside	·(d) IIVING IN the Ci	rowded city.
A) '	Translate into Engli	sh:		
,	كا حددتناه الاطعام	ونا القدرة على أداء عملنا ش	التي تقينا من الأمراض وتمنح	الأمال تال
	ر ما در ما د	مه اعتداره حتی ادام حتید بید	الني تقيينا من أله منسرا من وصلت	ن الأسياء الهامه جدا و
			ياضيه بشكل منتظم.	صحى وأداء التمارين الر
				<u> </u>
D	Translate into Aval			
D)	Translate into Aral		akan anama 1 - a	
	Natural disasters like	e voicanoes and earthqua	akes occur when forces of r	nature do damage to th
	environment and aff	ect people badly every y	ear.	
100				

Unit 9

(Dictation)

Vocabular	y	,
-----------	---	---

TAX AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF THE PART	With the Taylor Line Events	padir The Blanch	1
127-116	La Maria La	est a sufficient	قاس
and the state of	التعليم في المنزل	Description of the second	قسوة
	خبير		
	Park Linds of Lands 1		تعليم
	يشرح/يفسر		مربية
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	يجادل		
	جدال		مدبرة المنزل
		1.71 D606	يتيم
	البلطجة/ التنمر		
	عقد (۱۰ سنوات)		دار أيتام
	بالتأكيد		خادم/ خادمة
	- 10 v-	The state of the s	william to a second
	معدات		يخدم
	استنتاج		شخص غريب
	وصف		يعلن
	جاد		بلطجي/ متنمر
			مؤلف
	صياغات		The state of the s
	رياضات جماعية		أقارب
2	طريقة	The same of the sa	يوظف

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

 يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)		مدرسة داخلية
 قلق بشأن		يجلب النجاح
ينتقل إلى	Park Park	يقوم بعمل تجربة
 زيادة في	St	يرتكب خطأ
 تنوع في		تكوين صداقات

Exercises

Many environmen	nswer from a, b, c or d	during the last youth co	onference.
	ntal problems	were discussed	d) had discussed
a) discussed	b) are discussed	c) were that they entered	i.
2 It was not	they had found a	restaurant that they entered	d) until
a) when	b) while	c) arter	the past?
3 How did people	to move fr	om one place to another in	d) uses
a) use	b) used	c) using	
100	to the marks on TV	, we went out for a walk.	d) listened
a) has listened	b) were listened	c) Would listen	
5 The match,	in the Cairo Sta	idium, was its	a) played
a) wood mlowed	L) which played		(i) played
6 Companies have t	found that good	brings good results.	
a) ignorance	b) advertising	c) sleeping	d) secretary
	hat I my r	nistake.	
a) released		c) improvised	d) rationalised
	to lock the dog in the		
a) merciful	b) cruel	c) keen	d) kind
	r act? She's absolutely		
a) keen	b) interested	c) brilliant	d) proud
	ne hotel were	about politics.	
a) bullying	b) arguing	c) encouraging	d) changing
primitive times. Arch		for treating different kinds	he pharaohs
medical purposes. To	alich•	tn(c)	based on natural herbs.

Unit 10

(Dictation)

V	-	ah		ary	
A	UC	au	uı	ary	

Television begins	(1) - <u>0</u> -0	يقدم (طلبًا)
gradiana fa la sa	مجتمع	مؤهلات
	واثق	
	ules:	مُجز
	مثير	
	لحبرة	فترة التدريب في المهنة
Sammer 1	يتخيل	مرافق
	معرض الوظائف	البناء
	مخلص	عقد
		مؤهل مؤهل
	موثوق فيه	8-3
	يتطلب	صناعة
	صفارات الإنذار	عملی
	عضو الفريق	مهارة
the state of the s	لعبة/عروسة لعبة	مرهق

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يصنع سيارات	 محبوب لدي	
تلبية الموعد النهائي	 یعتنی بــ	
المطبخ المصرى	 يتأقلم مع	
منتبه للتفاصيل	مناسب لـ	and the second part of the second
أنشطة وقت الفراغ	 الكثير من	

Exercises

Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or d:		
My father told me the a) the next day	nat we had to travel with h b) the following day	c) the day before	d) the day after
2 My wife asked me a) that I had fixed	b) to have fixed	c) unless I had fixed	d) if I had fixed
a) had watched	that she te b) has watched	e) was watched	d) would watch
a) said	is brother his uncle wante b) asked	c) told	d) wondered
a) have known	b) knew	c) had been knowing	d) know
a) apply	b) supply	c) imply	d) employ
a) stressful	b) rewarding ours can be very	c) practical	d) qualified
a) practical	b) rewarding	c) stressful in difficult situatio	d) qualified ons.
a) flexible	b) fancy about the kind o	c) necessary	d) reliable
a) flexible	b) confident	c) exciting	d) honest
(b) money. It thing that makes some respectable profession is important, but it is a	However, I disagree eone happy. There are mand family of course. Son also a source of evil and we	vou want to be happy, you(c) them as any other things such as, netimes we can say orry.	money is not the only health, good manners(d) money
		it has become one of the mo	ost attractive places in the

Unit 11

(Dictation)

						Deg.		
W	-	-			п	•	-	
V	o		а	ш	17		м	w
Share Free	\sim				w	100	45	и

	Wales of		يحقق
	يدعم		1000
	مقابلة للحصول على	11.15	إنجاز
a da Ca	وظيفة أو حوار صحفى		ناشط
	يتدرب		31,719
	تدريب		يقوم بعمل حملة
	غير مطبوخ جيدًا		يتنافس
	يحجز		منافسة
	1102 2000	\$6 11 18 (1 A)	إعاقة
	يضايق		
	ثقب		مرتفعات ومنخفضات
	مرتفع (للصوت)		منحدر
	قسم		ميدالية
4 10 1000.00 / 2	موظف		عضلة
	مبيعات		شلل الأطفال
3.5	هيئة العاملين	San Market Market	لاعب رفع الأثقال
in a second of the larger	مؤهلات		تشقق العمود الفقري
	مزعج		كرسى متحرك

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يقدم شكوى	 يبحث عن	
يصدر ضوضاء	 يتطلع إلى	
يتأكد يتأكد	 مؤهل لــ	
بمارس الرياضة	 حملة من أجل	
بصنع اختلافًا	 مسئول عن	
•		

Exercises

	housekeeper is re	espectful, is a very good an	nd comfortable one. d) where
a) who	b) whose	C) WHEH	100 Mary 100
The Great Pyramid	is the greatest building	I have ever	r seen.
a) that	b) where	c) whose	2 11-2-2-2-
Can you hear	I am saying o	r you want me to say it ag	ain?
a) that	b) which	c) whom	what
This is the street	we cleaned	and made it a better place	e to live.
	b) when	c) which	d) who
- , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		ve but a really modern one	
a) which I hought i	t b) I hought it	c) which bought	d) I bought
The conference wa	s an important social	which people	can meet each other at.
a) incident	b) accident	c) event	d) happening
	her goal of	I NOT THE OWNER OF THE OWNER OF THE OWNER	
a) achieved		c) competed	d) improved
2 I baliava wa should	I support responsible or	ganisations	for the right of animals.
a) achieving	b) improving	c) campaigning	d) inspiring
O Games and songs r	provide a/an	for classroom interaction	on.
a) competition	b) chance	c) opportunity	d) achievement
	n is due to	The second secon	
a) competition		c) medal	d) achievement
Fill in the space:		but th	are are still many people
	cide to move to the col	intrusine nowadays, but in	ere are suit many beobly
A lot of people de		intryside nowadays, but th	n't live enveybere else
(a) p	refer to stay in the cit	y and say that they could	n't live anywhere else.
think that living in the	refer to stay in the cit	y and say that they could place(b)	n't live anywhere else you can find everything
(a) p think that living in the (c) ye	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A	y and say that they could	n't live anywhere else you can find everything
think that living in the	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A	y and say that they could place(b)	n't live anywhere else you can find everything
think that living in the (c)	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city.	y and say that they could place(b)	n't live anywhere else you can find everything
think that living in the (c),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city.	y and say that they could be place(b)(b)(d)	n't live anywhere else. you can find everything fun with the many
think that living in the (c),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city.	y and say that they could be place(b)(b)(d)	n't live anywhere else. you can find everything fun with the many
think that living in the (c),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city.	y and say that they could place(b)	n't live anywhere else. you can find everything fun with the many
think that living in the (c),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city.	y and say that they could be place(b)(b)(d)	n't live anywhere else. you can find everything fun with the many
think that living in the (c),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	orefer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city.	y and say that they could be place(b)(b)(d)	n't live anywhere else. you can find everything fun with the many
think that living in the (c)	refer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city. lish: ى تنمية عقل الطفل، وتزيد	y and say that they could be place(b)(b)(d)	n't live anywhere else. you can find everything fun with the many
think that living in the (c)	refer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city. lish: الطفل، وتزيد عقل الطفل، وتزيد	y and say that they could place(b)(b)(d)(d)	n't live anywhere else you can find everything fun with the many كتبات المدارس والمكتبات وفر له كل فروع المعرفة.
think that living in the (c)	refer to stay in the cit city is better as it is the ou want at any time. A city. lish: العقل الطفل، وتزيد عقل الطفل، وتزيد عمل الطفل، وتزيد عمل الطفل، وتزيد عمل الطفل، وتزيد عمل الطفل وتزيد عمل الطفل المناه وتزيد عمل الطفل المناه وتزيد عمل الطفل المناه وتزيد عمل الطفل المناه وتزيد عمل المناه	y and say that they could be place(b)(b)(d)	n't live anywhere else you can find everything fun with the many كتبات المدارس والمكتبات وفر له كل فروع المعرفة.

Unit 12

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

5-13/44/50/2002/1007/100/4/10/100/4/	1		نة تذ
	شخصيات		يختفى
	سرعة		صانع النسيج
	مهجور		مذنب/ مجرم
	ا الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال	4296	 a pr // (e) to
	يتبنى		لغز/ غموض
	يفحص/يتأكد		کوخ/بیت ریفی
	قريب قريب		يحل
	مجتمع		يعرض عرض
	جريمة		يثبت
	يُقسم		يسرق
	يؤكد		مندهش
	بشكل متساو		غير سار
	حدث		المدفأة
	أسطورة		شاحب/باهت
	لغز	7	يثق/ ثقة
A SPA DE L	مستودع	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	خاص
	,		

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

 یهتم بـ	 مخطوب لـ
 يأتي من	متزوج من
 بالمقارنة بــ	 يكسب مالًا
 ينتمى إلى	 يشعر بالأسف لـــ
 ا مملوء بـ	 يلتقط صورًا لــ

Exercises

Choose the correct answe	r from a, b, c or d:		
I saw him carry a huge	box alone. He	strong.	d) should be
			CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY OF
a) can't be them a	s they were so rude with	n us and I regret doing	g this.
a) must have visited			
		d) shouldn't have	visited
c) should have visited Salwa didn't go out too	lav Shei	ll, but I don't think so	o. I think it was laziness.
4 He always wins the ma	tches he plays. He	a very taler	nted player.
a) must be) must have been	c) can't be	d) can't have been
5 It is for	all of us to have healthy		
100 to 10	necessity	c) forbidden	d) a must
6 Where are my keys? T	ney seem to have	c) disappeared	d) lost
a) appeared What happened to the	nointings after that is an	And the second s	
		c) decision	d) proof
) mystery	2/12/	1,000
8 that all	Research	c) Check	d) Pull
a) Look	or put in prison immedia	ately, they would conti	nue to terrorise the public
) human	c) man	d) children
a) monsters You shouldn't put you	in a mai		eiver.
a) hate	b) trust	c) distrust	d) dislike
Gill in the space:			
It must (a)	been 3 a.m. wher	a sharp knock at my	door woke me up. To my
surprise the light was off	and I(b)	to comfort my wif	e and children who got up
in terror Naturally, I wen	t to the door and was ca	reful enough to ask w	tho the man was and what
he wanted(c)	opening. He was n	ny neighbour whose so	on was very ill and wanted
help. I helped him and die	1 w	as best for his son.	
A) Translate into English	l:	/I = I==	
ترام الرأى الأخر، وكذلك	بجب ان يضع في اعتباره اح	ن رایه بحریه تامه، ولکن ب	من حق كل شخص أن يعبر عر عدم الإساءة للآخرين.
			عدم الأساءة للأخرين.
B) Translate into Arabi	in makina roade much	safer but the number	r of accidents continues to
	s drivers and the big inc		
rise because of careles	s univers and the orgine	rease in the number o	i cais oil foads.

Answers to Main Book Exercises and Tests



Health and safety

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- c) allergy
- d) bedding
- b) first aid
- 4. d) emergency services
- 5. b) breathing
- 6. a) bacteria
- 7. c) CPR
- 8. b) hygiene
- 9. d) bin
- 10. c) responding
- 11. a) soil
- 12. b) danger

- 13. d) safety
- 14. c) research
- 15. a) grow
- 16. a) health
- 17. d) dust
- 18. a) cable
- 19. b) ingredients
- 20. c) electrical
- 21. b) caused
- 22. c) to
- 23. b) up
- 24. c) wear

- 25. b) for
- 26. c) to
- 27. a) on
- 28. d) to
- 29. c) separate
- 30. a) clarify/ e) explain
- 31. c) safety/ e) security
- 32. a) avert/d) evade
- 33. b) modified/c) altered
- 34. a) reaching/b) arriving

Language Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) must
- 2. c) ought to
- 3. b) aren't allowed
- 4. a) must
- 5. d) mustn't
- 6. b) mustn't
- 7. b) should
- 8. c) had better
- 9. a) should

- 10. c) mustn't
- 11. b) must
- 12. d) allowed
- 13. c) should have listened
- 14. d) have to
- 15. d) mustn't
- 16. a) write
- 17. a) must

- 18. c) ought

- 19. d) ought to
- 20. c) must
- 21. c) shouldn't
- 22. d) mustn't
- 23. b) mustn't
- 24. a) must
- 25. c) should

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) must
- 2. a) mustn't
- 3. a) should
- 4. a) must
- 5. a) up

- b) allowed
- b) ought
- b) get
- b) be
- b) can/may
- c) be
 - c) better
 - c) mustn't
 - c) ought
 - c) be

- d) necessary
- d) must
- d) shouldn't
- d) should
- d) should

General Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) allergy
- 7. b) carry
- 13. b) advisable

- 2. a) breathed
- 8. d) with

14. b) should

- 3. b) personal cleanliness
- 9. c) should
- 15. c) had better

- 4. b) coughing
- er 10. c) must
- 16. c) shouldn't have washed

- 5. a) first aid
- 11. d) mustn't
- 6. a) take-off
- 12. c) must
- Fill in the space:
 - a) be

b) must

c) have

- d) may/can
- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) once

- 4. b) she died
- 2. c) it can't be cured and death is sure
- 5. c) strongly
- 3. d) she hated him most of all

B) Answer the following questions:

- When they think they are about to die.
- Because she was reputed as a wicked and quarrelsome lady.
- 7. It is incurable disease caused by the bite of a mad dog.

A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١- علينا أن نعتني جيدًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد في الحفاظ على توازن الطبيعة، وكما يقول العلماء: والأشجار تساعد الأرض على التنفس».
 - ٣- لطالما حلمنا جميعًا بالعيش في بلد حديث ومتقدم حيث الناس يحترمون ويتسامحون مع بعضمم البعض.
- ٣- يُعتقد أن التلفزيون يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التى تجذب الأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار. كما أنه يساعد الطلاب من خلال تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.

B) Translate into English:

- Parents must have proper health habits and personal hygiene rules in order for the child to learn these habits as children imitate their parents.
- We must all bear the responsibility for maintaining the cleanliness of the Nile water, as well as preserving every drop of water because the Nile River is considered the artery of life in Egypt.
- The government usually makes a great effort in times of crises, especially when the country is exposed to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses such as the coronavirus.

3 Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a blanket

- 9, of argument
- 17. c) about

2. bi burns.

10. a) serious

18. b) with

- 3. a) evacuated
- 11. Churt

19. d) on

- 4. Cimmediately
- 12. b) apologise
- 20. b) understand/ e) grasp

- 5. P wrapping
- 13. d) argument
- 21, b) safe/d) secure

6. d advice

14. b) explain

22. a) at once/ e) instantly

7. Oinjured

15. Con

23. d) abandon/ e) empty

- 8. b complains
- 16. d) for

24. b) covered/ *) folded

Language EXercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. di don't have to
- C GOULTHBAS TO
- c) needn't
 d) shouldn't have
- 4. b) needn't
- 5. d) had to
- 6. d) needn't have bought
- 7. b) should have checked
- #. didn't have
- 9. Chave to
- 10. C should have remembered

- 11. a) needn't have taken
- 12. () was necessary
- 13. d) don't need
- 14. b) needn't have gone
- 15. a) should have studied
- 16. d) could have spent
- 17. b) will have to
- 18. c) needs
- 19. a) don't have to
- 20. () was

- 21, b) won't have to go
- 22. d) must
- 23. b) mustn't
- 24. b) banned
- 25. a) needn/t
- 26. C have to
- 27. d) mustr/t
- 28. b) shouldn't have
- 29. d) ought to have slept
- 30. d) had better

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) mustn't/shouldn't
- b) must
- c) teach
- d) necessary

- 2. a) who
- b) can
- c) in

d) ought

3. el on

- b) get/employ
- c) must
- d) have

- 4. a) was
- b) used
- c) couldn't
- d) have

5. a) is

- b) who
- thluorite Ls.
- d) can/may



General Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) trust
- 2. c) immediately
- 3. b) interpret
- 4. d) damage
- 5. a) cuts
- 6. b) stay

- 7. a) get
- b) on
- b) necessary
- 10. a) have to
- 11. b) mustn't
- 12. c) didn't have to go

- 13. c) mustn't
- 14. d) should have trained
- 15. d) needn't have worried
- 16. b) can't

Fill in the space:

- a) must
- c) be

- b) where
- d) might

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) They want to see if they can survive there.
- 2. a) One day, we will all live on Mars.
- b) A place where a group of people live.
- 4. a) An offer to go to Mars.
- 5. d) tough

B) Answer the following questions:

- 6. Student's own answer.
- 7. Student's own answer.
- 8. special.

A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١- لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا فلا يمكن للناس الاستغناء عنه؛ لأننا نعتمد على الكهرباء في جميع جوانب الحياة تقريبًا.
 - ٣- من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس الحياة وشرايينها. لا يمكن لجميع الكائنات الحية والآلات العيش أو العمل بدونها.
- ٣- يجب أن نضع في اعتبارنا أن زيادة الإنتاج هي الطريقة الوحيدة للاستقرار والأمان فبواسطته يمكننا زيادة دخلنا وتجاوز أعباء الحياة.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. It is necessary for any person to maintain the cleanliness of the surrounding environment, as well as his personal hygiene; in order not to be exposed to many infectious diseases.
- 2. Modern technology plays an outstanding and important role in our lives. We cannot imagine life without modern means of communication and transportation.
- 3. There is no doubt that pollution has serious effects on the environment, whether for humans, animals or plants, and hence we - individuals and governments - must work hard to reduce the percentage of pollution.

Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d)breathe
- 2. a)tie
- 3. a)contain
- 4. a)blanket
- 5. b)interpret
- 6. b)responding
- 7. d)remove

- 8. d)researching
- 9. c)realised
- 10. b)soiled
- 11. b)were
- 12. d)to send
- 13. b)have finished
- 14. **c)**Were

- 15. b)yourselves
- 16. Chad owned
- 17. d)quickly
- 18. b)has been playing
- 19. d)asleep
- 20. b)apart from



Based on Unit 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) allergy
- 2. b) breathing
- 3. b) advice
- 4. c) equipment
- 5. b) ingredient
- a) against
- 7. c) must
- 15. Fill in the space:
 - a) have
 - c) important/necessary

- 8. c) should have studied
- 9. b) mustn't
- 10. a) must
- 11. c) can't have attended
- 12. d) have to
- 13. a) smoothly/b) simply
- 14. d) peak/ e) top
- b) shouldn't
- d) are

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) open

19. d) precious

17. b) clever

- 20. b) announced
- 18. b) Mr Hassan and the writer.

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21. Student's own answer.
- 22. Everything was in a terrible mess. The armchairs were all overturned, two small tables lay turned over on the floor and the radio had been smashed.
- 23. Student's own answer.

24. Translate into English:

- Keeping the environment clean has become a necessity, so the government and individuals must cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment good for life free from epidemics and diseases.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن الفيتامينات مهمة جدًا للصحة الجيدة، ومن المعروف أن عدم وجودها من الممكن أن يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة، وتسمى الأطعمة التي تحتوى على الفيتامينات الأطعمة الوقائية.

26. Student's own answer.



Robots



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d)click
- 2. a) familiar
- 3. b) invention
- 4. c) navigate
- 5. d)GPS
- 6. a) get around
- 7. b)robot
- 8. c)location
- 9. c)internet
- 10. b) air-conditioning
- 11. d)chose
- 12. a) useful

- 13. c)consequences
- 14. c)annoying
- 15. b)stressful
- 16. d)ride
- 17. a)charging
- 18. b)hybrid
- 19. a)consequence
- 20. c)like
- 21. a)luxurious
- 22. a) give
- 23. d) with
- 24. b)on

- 25. c)gets
- 26. d)to
- 27. d)on
- 28. c)out
- 29. d)out
- 30. e)enjoyment/ c)amusement
- 31. c)difficultly/ e)hard
- 32. b) disturbing/d) troublesome
- 33. a)passed/ e)succeeded
- 34. a)uncommon/ c)unfamiliar

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) stopped
- 2. c) are bitten
- 3. b)take
- 4. c) will call
- 5. c) get
- 6. b) don't pay
- 7. b) won
- 8. b) would get
- 9. d)knew
- 10. c) Should
- 11. a)ring
- 12. c) would be

- 13. b)will
- 14. d)dies
- 15. a)feel
- 16. d) would you be
- 17. d)didn't help
- 18. d)arrived
- 19. b) buy
- 20. b) read
- 21. c)feel
- 22. b)have
- 23. b) to see
- 24. c)weren't

- 25. d)Were
- 26. d)should
- 27. c)Should
- 28. d)visit
- 29. b)has
- 30. c)Were he to study
- 31. c) pick
- 32. b) threw
- 33. c) expands
- 34. b) should

Pill in the space:

- 1. a) were
- 2. a) would
- 3. a) should
- 4. a) is
- 5. a) makes

- b)should
- b)are
- b) being
- b)don't
- b)if/when
- c)will
- c)making
- ...
- c)long
- c)are
- c)where

- d) unless
- d) must
- d) most
-
- d) if
- d) reading

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a)familiar

6. b)to

11. d)leave

2. C)robot

7. () had

12. d)When

3. d)click

8. a) would flood

13. c)unless

4. a) went

9. a)get

14. d) If

5. d)with

10. d)freezes

Fill in the space:

a) would

b) when

c)will

d)being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) it would cause a big loss of wealth
- 2. c) it is a habit that causes death
- 3. a) encouraged a large number to stop smoking
- 4. C) they opened new markets in the Third World Countries
- 5. a) exceeded

B) Answer the following questions:

- Media campaigns were launched explaining the dangers and encouraging smokers to stop smoking.
- Because the number of those who have died from smoking-related diseases surpasses the number of victims of epidemics, wars or accidents in our times.
- 8. By opening new markets in what is called the Third World Countries.

(4) A) Translate into Arabic:

١- لقد وجد بعض العلماء أن الناس أكثر عرضة للإصابة بالزكام عندما يكونون غير سعداء أو تحت الضغط لأن جهاز المناعة يكون أقل كفاءة عندما نكون قلقين.

٢- تحترم جميع الأديان الديمقراطية، فجميعها تحترم حقوق الإنسان وتحترم كل القيم التي نحملها جميعًا.

٢- أى بلد في حاجة ماسة إلى أصحاب الحكمة لتحديث نظام التعليم وتحقيق العدالة بين الناس.

B) Translate into English:

- The underground is one of the important achievements of the Egyptian state in recent years, for its important role in solving the problem of traffic congestion and reducing the number of accidents.
- We all, as individuals and governments, must do our utmost to be able to improve the quality of our domestic products and thus achieve economic growth.
- 3. The mother is the child's first school, as she is the one who teaches him morals and values and how to deal with those around him before he learns to read and write.

Student's own answer.

Robots

8

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) quiz
- 2. a) translation
- 3. c) chatting
- 4. d)feedback
- b) app
- 6. c) cost
- 7. a) understanding
- 8. d)comments

- 9. b)documentary
- 10. c) surprising
- 11. b) effect
- 12. a) technology
- 13. d) exactly
- 14. a) smartphone
- 15. b)do
- 16. c) make

- 17. c) into
- 18. a) of
- 19. b) confessed/ e) acknowledge
- 20. d) relaxed/ e) calm
- 21. a) merit/c) pros
- 22. b) incompletely/ d) partially
- 23. a) astonishing/b) amazing

Language Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- d) would have got
- b) would have been
- c) had taken 3.
- d) unless 4.
- a) had arrived 5.
- c) had known 6.
- c) wouldn't eat 7.
- d) could have sent
- d) had seen
- 10. c) had lived

- 11. b) would have become
- 12. a) would have lost
- 13. c) had thrown
- 14. a) would have grown
- 15. b) had had
- 16. c) had given
- d) would have happened
- 18. c)had been
- 19. d) wouldn't have been
- 20. b) being helped

- 21. d) Had
- 22. c) hadn't been
- 23. a) if
- 24. c) As long as
- 25. a) If
- 26. d) If it weren't
- 27. c) would go
- 28. b) had been
- 29. b) provided
- 30. d) Unless they ran

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) were
- a) started
- 3. a) when
- 4. a) many

- b) sent
- b) has

- b) in
- b) know

- c) for
- c) hadn't
- c) should
- c) when
- - d) when

d) will

- d) which
- d) the

General Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) chatting
- 2. b) everyday
- **3.** d) type
- 4. b) personal
- 5. a) extreme

- 6. c) against
- 7. a) to
- 8. c) would have irrigate
- 9. b) had won
- 10. d) if

- 11. b) Had
- 12. a) if
- 13. d) would have had
- 14. a) would have died
- 15. b) would have gone

Fill in the space:

- a) will
- c) be

- b) that
- d) happens

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) felt uneasy

4. c) eating a few meat meals

2. c) eighteen

- 5. c) ignored
- 3. b) persuade them to be vegetarians

B) Answer the following questions:

- 6. When she suddenly thought of it as eating an animal/ After eating a few meat meals.
- 7. Student's own answer.
- 8. Student's own answer.

(1) A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١- إن تدخين السجائر والتلوث عدوان مخيفان للإنسان لأنهما يدمران الصحة ويجلبان المعاناة والموت.
- ٢- على عكس وسائل النقل الأخرى، فإن الدراجة لا تســتخدم البنزين، وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على الهواء نظيفًا ولا تحتاج إلى مســاحة
 كبيرة لوقوفها مثل السيارات.
 - ٣- هناك أنواع مختلفة من السياحة التي تجذب السياح إلى بلادنا، والنوع الأكثر شيوعًا هو السفر من أجل المتعة والاسترخاء.

B) Translate into English:

- In Egypt, there is no discrimination based on religion, gender, colour, social position or wealth. We are all equal; man or woman; Muslim or Christian.
- 2. The government encourages local industries to do without many imports which need a lot of hard currencies and in the same time, provide job opportunities for youth.
- 3. At the present time, no country can stand apart from other countries and no country can produce all its need of food.

G Student's own answer.

8

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) advantage
- 2. b) benefits
- 3. c) click
- 4. a) communicated
- 5. b) control
- 6. b) familiar
- 7. d) navigate
- 8. a) vehicle
- 9. c) got around
- 10. a) position

- 11. c) the best
- 12. a) him
- 13. a) since
- 14. d) whoever
- 15. b) a few
- 16. c) has been learning
- 17. d) is
- 18. b) was written
- 19. c) interesting
- 20. d) large enough

Based on Unit 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) get around
- 2. a) electric
- 3. c) journey
- 4. b) discovered
- 5. d) abroad
- 6. a) with
- 7. b) send
- 15. Fill in the space:
 - a) go
 - c) are

- 8. d) didn't have
- 9. a) use
- 10. b) wouldn't be
- 11. d) is put
- 12. c) had been invited
- 13. a) disturbing/e) troublesome
- 14. c) harmful/e) useless
 - b) have
 - d) fast/soon

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) his parents at home

19. b) baby

17. di little care

20. c) trust in

18, b) difficult

B) Answer the following questions:

- Student's own answer.
- 22. The care there is mechanical rather than warmhearted. There is too much risk of epidemics of colds and other infectious diseases.
- 23. Student's own answer.

24. Translate into English:

- The people should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting up small projects which employ a number of workers.
- 25. Translate into Arabic:

· لندلُصبع الاتصال أسعل وفرصة للأفراد للحصول على معلومات ضدَّمة بسرعة كبيرة متاحة.

26. Student's own answer.



A good education



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) governess
- 2. b) cruel
- 3. a) employ
- 4. d) servants
- 5. c) author
- 6. c) employer
- 7. a) fire
- 8. b) advertised
- 9. d) Education
- 10. c) nearby
- 11. a) orphan

- 12. b) wealthy
- 13. d) Honesty
- 14. c) hurt
- 15. a) dead
- 16. b) energy
- 17. d) continue
- 18. c) gardener
- 19. a) imagined
- **20.** a) upset
- 21. c) taught
- 22. () improve

- 23. d) extra
- 24. c) become
- 25. d) apply
- 26. c) of
- 27. b) for
- 28. d) for
- 29. b) fire/e) discharge
- 30. d) wickede) unkind
- 31. a) fitting/b) relaxing
- 32. c) common_{d)} conventional
- 33. a) earlier/d) former

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) was given
- 2. d) were sent
- 3. c) were taken
- 4. b) was taken
- 5. d) be postponed
- 6. a) were arrested
- 7. c) was stolen
- 8. c) wasn't checked
- 9. a) wasn't used
- 10. d) to make

- 11. b) to be disturbed
- 12. b) is reported
- 13. a) was damaged
- 14. b) was formed
- 15. d) designed
- 16. c) being cooked
- 17. d) be deceived
- 18. a) to
- 19. b) was made
- 20. c) was born

- 21. c) was told
- 22. b) were invited
- 23. c) disappeared
- 24. c) was forced
- 25. d) being seen
- 26. a) weren't answered
- 27. d) was invited
- 28. a) built
- 29. b) being taken
- 30. d) collapsed

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) was
- 2. a) was
- 3. a) was
- 4. a) being
- 5. a) known

- b) taken
- b) called
- b) are
- b) of
- b) used
- c) called
- c) were
- c) is
- c) make
- c) are

- d) most
- d) to
- d) used
- d) by
- d) be

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) cruel
- 2. d) education
- 3. b) arque
- 4. a) orphan
- 5. d) servants
- 6. c) author

- 7. c) century
- 8. a) employ
- 9. c) had been finished
- 10. a) was elected
- 11. b) was invented
- 12. c) were locked

- 13. b) got lost
- 14. d) can't be denied
- 15. a) to me
- 16. c) been treated

Fill in the space:

a) visited

b) is

c) been

d) be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) it gives a sweet flavour to our life
- 2. c) men who side against fashion are becoming a little in number
- 3. d) it provides employment and gains for those connected with it
- 4. c) new materials have been introduced
- 5. d) large numbers

B)Answer the following questions:

- 6. The world would be a dull place if women always wore the same clothes.
- 7. Student's own number.
- 8. The clothing industry spends a lot on industrial research new materials such as nylon; rayon and terylene have been introduced. Also, it is a huge import-export business which is important to the world trade.

A)Translate into Arabic:

١- لقد أصبح من الواضح أن أخطر مشكلة تؤثر علينا في الوقت الحالي هي العدد المتزايد للأشخاص الذين يسكنون هذا الكوكب بالفعل.

٢- أحب الموسيقي لأنها تعتبر من أهم وأقوى الأشياء في حياتي. ستكون حياتي بدون الألحان والتناغم فارغة تمامًا.

٣- تظهر القيم والأخلاق الحميدة للشعب المصرى في أوقات المحن والأزمات كما رأينا في أزمة فيروس كورونا.

B)Translate into English:

- 1. We must provide a safe environment for people with special needs, take care of the talented and provide educational systems that develop their talents.
- 2. Many Egyptian writers have written many articles and books to demand women's rights and equality between them and men.
- 3. Good, advanced and creative education is a right for every Egyptian child to grow up and be a citizen able to help his country keep pace with developed countries.

Student's own answer.



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 9. c) discussion 1. b) argues
- 10. d) so-called 2. d) change
- 11. a) bridge 3. a) equipment
- 12. a) confidence 4. b) explain
- **13.** b) solve 5. c) brilliant
- 14. c) instead 6. b) description
- 15. a) terrible 7. c) exciting
- 16. b) keen 8. a) serious

- 17. c) instance
- 18. d) to
- 19. d) for
- 20. d) lonely
- 21. b) distract / e) complicate
- 22. a) certainly / d) absolutely
- 23. a) boring / b) dull

Language Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 2. c) had
- 3. d) Having
- 4. b) had left
- 5. b) because

1. c) was

- 6. b) had learnt
- 7. b) No sooner
- 8. c) had seen
- 9. c) had caused
- 10. a) On

- 11. c) walked
- 12. b) hadn't eaten
- 13. c) screamed
- 14. d) wasn't done
- 15. b) had finished
- **16. c)** done
- 17. a) had had
- 18. a) had forgotten
- 19. a) began
- 20. a) had left

- 21. d) had broken
- 22. a) had fallen
- 23. b) hadn't cleaned
- 24. a) had gone
- 25. c) when
- 26. d) when
- 27. b) invited
- 28. d) did I arrive
- 29. a) until
- 30. d) After

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) was
- 2. a) where
- 3. a) being 4. a) be
- 5. a) before

- b) didn't
- b) on
- b) had
- b) to
- b) used

- c) When
- c) by
- c) were
- c) was
- c) than

- d) went/travelled
- d) have
- d) by
- d) by
- d) which

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) wealthy

7. c) a success

13. a) had disappeared

2. c) hurt

8. d) with

14. b) 'd bought

3. d) continue

9. d) didn't

15. c) didn't recognise

4. b) energy

pnin. 10. b) in

16. d) had lived

5. a) boarding

11.a) travelled

6. c) significance

12. c) than

Fill in the space:

a) is

b) is

c) Because

d) to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) are sometimes frightened to go home

4. a) is usually bad

2. b) nurseries and child minders cost a lot

5. c) rare

3. c) look after children whose parents both work

B)Answer the following questions:

- 6. They may get into trouble in the streets or they may get into dangerous situations at home, when playing with matches, or while preparing something to eat. But the problem goes beyond that of school children.
- Student's own answer.
- 8. Babies.

A)Translate into Arabic:

١- التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين، لأنها السلم الذي من خلاله ترتقى البشرية وتتطور، ولكنها يمكن أن تكون أيضنا أداة للتدمير.

٢- تعتمد السعادة وراحة البال على قوة التحكم في أفكار الفرد وتوجيهها. على المرء أن يتجنب ما هو مؤلم.

٣- شخصية كل شخص مختلفة وفريدة مثل بصمات الأصابع. يمكننا عادة معرفة شخصية الناس من خلال تصرفهم مع الأخرين.

B)Translate into English:

- Every year, Egypt celebrates the World Child's Day in November when children, who successfully take part in different activities, are given prizes.
- In most countries, men usually catch heart diseases more than women and doctors say that heart disease is connected to daily life pressures, living style and kind of food.
- 3. The government has prepared an ambitious plan to upgrade education, raise the standard of teachers and also attract students to come to school.

Student's own answer.



さらまのといる。日からあるをいり、前所をははれていまた。 からんちょ

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) orphaned
- 2. c) copy
- 3. d) argued
- 4. b) expert
- 5. a) conclusion
- 6. a) believed
- 7. d) cruel
- 8. a) stranger
- 9. a) brilliant
- 10. b) explain

- 11. b) myself
- 12. a) don't they
- 13. d) no article
- 14. d) complaining
- 15. d) to sit
- 16. c) because
- 17. b) as well as
- 18. b) in spite of
- 19. b) are
- 20. a) working

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) equipment
- 2. d) expert
- 3. a) especially
- 4. a) team
- 5. a) feelings
- 6. d) with
- 7. b) had we heard
- 15. Fill in the space:
 - a) gives
 - c) said/known

- 8. c) had already eaten
- 9. c) spending
- 10. b) worked

b) is

d) without

- 11. b) were committed
- a) are being cleaned
- 13. d) poor/e) destitute
- 14. a) enormous/e) giant
- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) He was optimistic about science.

19. () To get control of

17. c) anything might happen

20. a) put solutions to

18. d) Space exploration

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21. He saw technology differently. He wrote about the possible dangers of technology. He thought that technology could be bad.
- 22. Because it is evolved with technology and technology is changing all times.
- 23. Student's own answer.

24. Translate into English:

- The rise in committing crimes among youth is considered one of the most serious problems that face the state and that we should all fight strictly to be able to live in a safe society.
- 25. Translate into Arabic:
 - لا ينبغس أن تكــون الوظيفة مجرد مصدر للمال. يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا للتنمية الذاتية. فالعثور على وظيفة في مجال تســتمتع بـه هو عامل مهم للغانـة.
- 26. Student's own answer.

Teston Revision

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) sneeze
- 2. c) off
- 3. c) allergy
- 4. b) realises
- 5. employees
- 6. b) advertised
- 7. b) would go
- 15. Fill in the space:
 - alis
 - c) will

- 8. c) until
- 9. a) mustn't
- 10. c) can't have seen
- 11. c) were marked
- 12. d) advisable

b) be

- 13. a) understood/d) grasped
- 14. b) stay/ e) remain
- d) than

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 16. b) less flavoured
 - 17. d) moderate
 - 18. b) increases appetite
 - 19. a) more
 - 20. b) losing some weight

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21. Student's own answer.
- 22. Student's own answer.
- 23. By chewing food.
- 24. Translate into Arabic:

إن للوالدين دورًا معمًّا في تشكيل شخصية أطفالهم وتعديل سلوكياتهم وأخلاقهم.

25. Translate into English:

Communication is one of the greatest challenges in relations between men and women. Researchers say that the main problem is different ways of communications for men and women.

26. Student's own answer.



What's your job?



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) attendants
- 2. d) construction
- 3. b) contracts
- 4. c) qualified
- 5. a) practical
- 6. d) industries
- 7. b) degree
- 8. c) skills
- 9. a) stressful
- 10. d) training
- 11. b) qualifications

- 12. a) casualty
- 13. c) communicators
- 14. b) natural
- 15. a) construction
- 16. c) airline
- 17. a) compassionate
- 18. b) non-biased
- 19. d) so far
- 20. a) meet
- 21. c) do
- 22. b) to

- 23. d) with
- 24. d) variety
- 25. a) did
- 26. a) last
- 27. b) breaking
- 28. c) for
- 29. d) sympathy / e) mercy
- 30. a) amazingly / e) astonishingly
- 31. a) annoy / d) worry
- 32. c) afraid / e) scared
- 33. a) analysed / e) clarified

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) boil
- 2. a) told
- 3. c) is
- 4. a) is enjoying
- 5. d)told
- 6. c) couldn't
- 7. c) wouldn't be
- 8. b) would buy
- 9. d) had been

- 10. a) will meet
- 11. c) the previous week
- 12. d) said
- 13. a) asked
- 14. c) that he had seen
- 15. d) was doing
- 16. b) the following lesson
- 17. d) did
- 18. c) was

- 19. a) said
- 20. d) had been repaired
- 21. c) is
- 22. a) wants
- 23. a) said
- 24. b) had to
- 25. c) was travelling
- 26. b) must
- 27. d) met

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) said
- 2. a) that
- 3. a) before
- 4. a) why
- 5. a) say

- b) told
- b) said
- b) was
- b) say
- b) with

- c) had
- c) will
- c) tell
- c) better
- c) that

- d) asked
- d) to
- d) said
- d) can
- d) being

13. b)had

General Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b)reassurance 7. c)decline

2. d)frightened 8. b)too 14. a)had done

3. a)casualty 9. c)was making 15. a)was

4. b)natural 10. a)loves 16. c)how to get

s. d)construction 11. b)was watching

5. d)construction6. c)qualifying11. b)was watching12. c)was

Fill in the space:

a)say b)is c)most d)that

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b) women are superior to men
 d) women are bad drivers

d)women are the boss in every branch
 a)responsible

3. d)Being wives and mothers

B) Answer the following questions:

- To ask for equality with men as they have a weaker case.
- 6. To claim that men and women are equal and have the same abilities.
- 7. It means that no one chooses women to share in politics but they themselves can share without any help.

(A) Translate into Arabic:

١- إن سيناء جزء عزيز من بلدنا وهي ليست مجرد صحراء في الشمال الشرقي لمصر، ولكنها رمز لكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.
 ٢- إن الإنسان اجتماعي بطبيعته، وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب عليه أن يولي اهتمامًا كبيرًا لكل ما يفعله لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حوله سواء بالسلب أو الإيجاب.

٣- يجب على المتقدمين للوظيفة أن يكون لديهم معرفة للغة أجنبية واحدة على الأقل، وأيضًا يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الألى.

B) Translate into English:

- Dams are built to store additional quantities of water behind them which can be used later.
 An example of this is the High Dam in Egypt that was built to face any water shortage.
- 2. We must reduce pollution in our environment by planting more trees and rationalising in using energy inside or outside homes.
- 3. Everyone in our society has a dream that they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hard and be patient to achieve it.

Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) confident
- 2. a) fair
- 3. c) firefighters
- 4. **b)** loyal
- 5. d) fancy
- 6. a) punctual
- 7. c) immediate

- 8. a) availability
- 9. b) sirens
- 10. d) interest
- c) experience
- 12. a) detail
- 13. c) qualifications
- 14. c) plenty

- 15. d) cuisine
- 16. c) to
- 17. b) for
- 18. a) for
- 19. a) trustful / e) candid
- 20. d) boring / e) dull
- 21. a) disloyal / c) unfaithful

Language EXercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- b) could score
- 2. c) if
- 3. d) will have
- 4. b) I had gone
- 5. c) she had been
- 6. b) whether
- 7. c) preferred
- 8. d) asked
- 9. b) visited

- 10. c) had played
- 11. b) was reading
- 12. a) have told
- 13. c) he is
- 14. d) I will take
- 15. b) the station is
- 16. c) Don't
- 17. b) advised
- 18. d) should study

- 19. b) prefer
- 20. d) denied
- 21. d) no word
- 22. c) tell
- 23. c) inquired
- **24. b)** asked
- 25. a) go

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) asked
- 2. a) told
- 3. a) would
- 4. a) say

- b) wanted
- b) said
- b) where
- b) would
- c) whether
- c) was
- c) who
- c) asked

d) to

- d) were
- d) Having

d) promised

General Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) flexible
- 2. c) required
- 3. d) plumber
- 4. c) hardworking
- 5. a) major
- 6. a) practical

- 7. a) for
- 8. c) variety
- 9. c) but
- 10. d) asked
- 11. b) said
- 12. c) she could get

- 13. b) tell
- 14. d) promised
- 15. d) whether
- 16. c) what

Fill in the space:

a) made

b)be

c) if/when

d) may

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) honest

4. c)monkey

2. c) twice

d)stayed without moving

c) the monkey's tricks were not very good

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. The Old Man and the Monkey.
- 6. When the old man put his hat on the ground and people began to put pennies in it.
- He was holding the dead monkey and weeping.

(A) A) Translate into Arabic:

١- في الواقع نحن أكثر سعادة من أجدادنا؛ لأننا نستمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي تجعل حياتنا أسهل وأكثر متعة وراحة.

٢- لحــل مشــكلة نقص المياه فإن العالم يقتصد ويرشــد في اســتخدامها، وهناك حل آخر وهو إعادة اســتخدام الميــاه وهذا يعني

٣- يفشــل العديد من الأشــخاص في الحياة، وهذا ليس بســبب عدم معرفتهم بوظيفتهم، ولكن لأنهم يستســلمون بعد أول فشل فالفشل يجب ألا يحبطك.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. This revolution in using the computer and the internet has led to installing computers in every classroom and connect every school to the internet.
- 2. We all have a precious gem inside our skull that no one can believe that it is greater and more important than any computer. That's the brain without which man can't think or move.
- 3. There is no doubt that polluted water is not good for drinking, moreover it is dangerous as it makes man ill and destroy the environment, animals and fish.

5 Student's own answer.

3. d) frustrated

4. a) casualties

5. c) careered

7. b) attendant

6. b) construction

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

8. a) confident 1. a) graduate

9. a) degree 2. a) contracted

10. b) reassured

11. c) to go

12. d) had met

13. b) who 14. c) Although 15. b) rich enough

16. a) would come

17. d) weren't told

18. d) yet

19. c) Should

20. b) to have had



Based on Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b)industry

2. b)compassion

3. c)stressful

4. d)training

5. a)practical

6. c) of

7. d)said

8. a)would

9. c) will buy

10. b) was cleaning

11. c)had been doing

12. a) suggested

13. a)major / d)leading

14. c)rigid / d)inflexible

15. Fill in the space:

a)thought/said

c)couldn't

b)When

d)have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 16. c) Doing business online.
- 17. a)Time spent with children at home.
- 18. c)The benefits companies can get from having telecommuters.
- 19. a) The concept of a "workweek" is disappearing from many people's lives.
- 20. b) not active

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21. Yes, as it will be much easier and comfortable.
- 22. They fear that employees who were not being watched would become lazy and undisciplined.
- 23. By using the telephone, email and instant messaging.

24. Translate into English:

- Reclaiming more deserts and developing farming methods to produce more crops are the positive solution to the problems of over population and starvation.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إنها لمسئولية الآباء والمدرسة والجامعة أن يحذروا الشباب من الآثار المدمرة للمخدرات وأصحاب السوء.

26. Student's own answer.



Amazing people



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) achieved
- 2. d) activists
- 3. b) disability
- 4. c) campaigned
- 5. b) medals
- 6. a) muscles
- 7. d) wheelchair
- 8. c) Ramps
- 9. b) amazing
- 10. a) competition
- 11. d) media

- 12. c) charities
- 13. c) guess
- 14. b) improve
- 15. c) inspire
- 16. d) charity
- 17. a) ensure
- 18. d) campaign
- 19. b) marketing
- 20. c) championship
- 21. a) Polio
- 22. a) noticed

- 23. c) Doing
- 24. c) northern
- 25. c) with
- 26. d) for
- 27. b) on
- 28. b) from
- 29. b) distinction / e) variation
- 30. d) privately / e) individually
- 31. a) discouraged / d) depressed

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) who
- 2. b) who
- 3. b) when
- 4. b) where
- 5. a) that
- 6. d) whom
- 7. b) where
- 8. c) which
- 9. c) where

- 10. c) who
- 11. c) whose
- 12. b) that
- 13. c) whose
- 14. a) who
- 15. c) whose
- 16. b) when
- 17. a) which
- 18. c) where

- 19. b) which
- 20. d) who's
- 21. b) whose
- 22. b) whom
- 23. a) are carried
- 24. a) to whom
- 25. a) who

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) where
- 2. a) which
- 3. a) whom
- 4. a) on

- b) who
- b) whose
- b) would
- b) be

- c) told
- c) has
- c) who
- c) which

- d) which
- d) to
- ujto
- d) that
- d) by

UNIT 11

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) accomplish

7. a) amazed

13. b) where

2. a) competition

8. d) repair

14. c) in which

3. b) medals

9. **b)** that

15. b) which

4. c) opportunity

10. a) whom

16. d) who

5. c) event

11. b) from which

6. a) went

12. d) who's

2 Fill in the space:

a) where

b) which

c) who

d) whose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) reduces

4. b) Time makes your possessions increase in value.

2. b) It is not recommended

5. d) master

3. c) to make a future profit

B) Answer the following questions:

- **5.** To buy beautiful objects from the past such as Persian rugs, furniture and silver and above all clocks. This makes your money increase with the passing of time.
- 6. Our culture and personality.
- Certain men were clever at measuring the time of day according to the beating of their own hearts. Every hour or so, they would shout out the time.

A) Translate into Arabic:

١- هناك الكثير من الأشياء تذكر في صالح التقدم التكنولوجي ومنها أنها بلا شك تجعل حياة الناس أسهل.

إن المواطنين الصالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون وقتهم وأنفسهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية عائلاتهم، وهم أيضًا مستعدون
 للتضحية بأنفسهم عندما يكون وطنهم فى خطر.

٣- إن الاحتباس الحراري ليس فقط تهديدًا لصحتنا في المستقبل، إنه بالفعل يؤدي إلى أكثر من مائة وخمسين ألفًا من حالات الوفاة سنويًا.

B) Translate into English:

- Many writers and novelists depend on nonfictional stories in their writings and consider the
 experiences in them make us gain more experience in life.
- In our society, crime rates have increased remarkably recently and crime is a serious phenomenon that requires cooperation of the individuals and the government sectors to find a radical solution to it.
- 3. We all should be proud of our disabled players who made great achievements in the field of sport that healthy players failed to make.

Student's own answer.



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) support
- 2. d) sales
- 3. c) apologise
- 4. b) staff
- 5. a) interviews
- 6. d) department

- 7. a) hole
- 8. b) noisy
- 9. c) trains
- 10. c) training
- 11. d) make
- 12. a) for

- 13. c) for
- 14. b) to
- 15. d) qualifications
- 16. b) civilised / e) mannerly
- 17. b) damage /e) break
- 18. a) provide / e) aid

Language Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) what
- 2. c) I applied for
- 3. d) which
- 4. c) whose
- 5. c) whom
- 6. d) written
- 7. a) who
- 8. b) from whom

- 9. b) which
- 10. a) I'd lend her
- 11. a) leading
- **12.** a) whose
- 13. b) which
- 14. d) which
- 15. d) at which
- 16. d) that

- 17. d) from whom
- 18. d) where
- 19. c) with whom
- 20. c) ,who is 60,
- 21. c) in whose
- 22. d) whose

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) where
- 2. a) which
- 3. a) that/which
- 4. a) what

- b) whom
- b) some/other/different
- b) which
- b) have

- c) which
- hich d) who
- c) what
- c) were
- d) whose d) on/in
- c) mustn't
- d) by

General Exercises (Part 2)

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) loud
- 2. b) receive
- 3. c) Make
- 4. c) down
- 5. b) complaint
- 6. d) in

- 7. b) forward
- 8. a) to
- 9. c) built
- 10. b) where I worked
- 11. a) which
- 12. d) that

- 13. c) What
- 14. b) wearing
- 15. a) what
- 16. c) containing

Fill in the space:

- a) that
- c) all/our

- b) which
- d) when

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) teen stress

4. d) stress

2. a) within control

5. d) caffeine

3. c) quality

B)Answer the following questions:

- Taking on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends.
- 6. By doing physical exercises, enough sleep and managing their time.
- 7. a) frightened = panic
- b) sufficient = enough

A)Translate into Arabic:

١- هل تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ يعتقد الكثير من الخبراء أن العقاب طريقة سلبية في تربية الأطفال.

٢- في الماضي كان الناس محرومين تمامًا من ممارسة حقوقهم خاصة الحقوق السياسية.

٣- إن قواتنا المسلحة تتصدى لأي تهديد خارجي أو داخلي لكي نستطيع أن نعيش بشعور من الأمن والأمان.

B) Translate into English:

- Youth conference that is held every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth from different countries of the world to meet, discuss and exchange experiences and cultures.
- Mass Media help in guiding public opinion towards the importance of hygiene, social distancing and taking protective measures to keep citizens' health from the diseases of the age among which the new coronavirus.
- 3. Our beloved country, Egypt, is considered an example of religious tolerance and national unity through peaceful co-existence among people's sections which has been found over hundreds of years.

Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) disabled

8. a) positive

2. c) muscle

9. a) hold

3. b) inspire

- 10. b) lift
- 4. c) campaign
-

5. b) impact

11. a) At

6. a) charity

- 12. c) used
- 7. b) competition
- 13. d) happy14. c) much

17. a) ours

15. c) has

16. d) so

- 18. c) play
- 19. d) anywhere
- 20. b) despite



Based on Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) achieving

2. c) campaign

3. c) inspire

4. b) staff

5. b) effect

6. a) championship

7. b) who

8. c) where

9. a) that

10. c) on which

11. d) that

12. c) whose

13. a) noisy /c) blaring

14. c) please /d) satisfy

15.Fill in the space:

a) who

b) told

c) where/from which

d) whose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) different

17. c) women

18. c) fifty

19. d) decrease

20. b) low payment

B)Answer the following questions:

- 21. I think women are entering the work force in great numbers for the first time.
- 22. Women in China now receive equal pay for equal work, therefore they are not dependent on their families as they once were.
- 23. To assure that women are really equal to men in all fields.

24.Translate into English:

- Sport has a great role in fighting and solving social problems such as crime, violence and addiction and also can help children and youth to form an effective and independent personality.

25.Translate into Arabic:

- لا شيء نفعله في هذا العالم يتم في معزل؛ فالآن من المعروف أن أحد مفاتيح النجاح الأساسية هو القدرة على العمل مع الأخرين.

26.Student's own answer.



Hard work



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) disappeared
- 2. a) solution
- 3. b) mystery
- 4. d) weave
- 5. c) mysterious
- 6. a) weaver
- 7. a) offers
- 8. b) disappearance
- 9. d) called
- 10. c) cottage
- 11. a) empty

- 12. b) solve
- 13. c) fireplace
- 14. d) stealing
- 15. a) realise
- 16. b) surprised
- 17. d) unpleasant
- **18. d)** prove
- 19. a) village
- 20. c) mystery
- 21. d) Artificial
- 22. a) manual

- 23. b) operate
- 24. b) customers
- 25. c) instead
- 26. a) on
- 27. d) from
- 28. c) of
- 29. a) blank /d) vacant
- 30. b) innocent /c) guiltless
- 31. d) nasty /e) undesirable

Language Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) must have gone
- 2. a) must have lost
- 3. b) can't have seen
- 4. a) must be
- 5. c) can't
- 6. a) must have been
- 7. d) must have passed
- 8. a) must
- 9. b) must have been
- 10. b) must have run

- 11. b) must
- 12. a) must be
- 13. c) must have been
- 14. c) must be
- 15. b) must be
- 16. c) must have rained
- 17. a) can't
- 18. a) must
- 19. a) must
- 20. a) might have been stolen

- 21. c) must have forgotten
- 22. b) might
- 23. b) must have escaped
- 24. a) must have got
- 25. b) must be
- 26. d) must have been
- 27. c) can't
- 28. d) might
- 29. d) can't

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) have
- 2. a) can't
- 3. a) can't
- 4. a) won't
- 5. a) might

- b) been
- b) must
- b) didn't
- b) have

- b) may/might
- c) must
- c) wasn't
- c) might
- c) will
- c) of

- d) was
- d) into
- d) be
- d) must
- d) be

General Exercises (Part 1)

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) disappeared
- 2. c) empty
- 3. b) trust
- 4. a) hide
- 5. b) solve
- 6. b) guilty

- 7. a) weaver
- 8. c) to
- 9. c) can't have finished
- 10. c) must have missed
- 11. b) can't have
- 12. d) must have

- 13. b) must have
- 14. d) might be
- 15. b) must have been
- 16. a) can't

@ Fill in the space:

- a) that/which
- c) must

- b) it
- d) with

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- c) an atomic bomb is far more powerful than any bomb used before.
- b) a hydrogen bomb has been perfected.
- 3. d) a hydrogen bomb could kill far more people than an atomic bomb.
- 4. c) the world would not have known how powerful the atomic bomb was.
- 5. d) entire

B)Answer the following questions:

- 5. If there were another war, and if hydrogen bombs were to be used in it, the whole world would be destroyed.
- 6. I think if there are no wars and no mass destructive weapons.
- 7. If this bomb had not been used then, the world wouldn't have realised to the full of destructive power.

(1) A) Translate into Arabic:

١- إن الصداقة الوطيدة هي أهم أشكال الدعم الاجتماعي تأثيرًا؛ فهي تهدئ من آثار التوتر وتؤدي إلى صحة بدنية وعقلية أغضل.

٢- لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل المؤثرة في تحقيق السلام والاستقرار في كل أنحاء العالم.

٣- هنــاك بعض الإجراءات البســيطة والتي مــن الممكن أن تحافظ بها على صحتك لفترة أطول، وأول هذه الإجراءات هي غسـيل

B)Answer the following questions:

- 1. It is known that extreme fear of exams is a double-edged weapon as it sometimes helps you to study and sometimes makes you worried and so affects your concentration badly.
- 2. We should put into consideration that there are some people who are unable to control their fears so they are in need of help to overcome these fears.
- 3. Illiteracy, ignorance and poverty are the real enemies that hinder the development of any nation and so there must be suitable and radical solutions to get rid of them.
- Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) character
- 2. c) page-turner
- 3. a) plot
- 4. b) abandoned
- 5. c) checked
- 6. d) close
- 7. a) crimes
- 8. a) divided

- b) warehouse
- 10. c) puzzle
- 11. c) legends
- 12. b) BCE
- 13. a) monster
- 14. c) traditional
- 15. d) brought
- 16. a) gone

- 17. d) recommend
- 18. b) take
- 19. c) of
- 20. d) to
- 21. b) displeasure /e) gloom
- 22. a) comical /b) humorous
- 23. a) far/b) remote

Language Exercises (Part 2)

(1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) must have been
- 2. c) shouldn't have done
- 3. b) can't have
- 4. c) can't
- 5. a) must have been
- 6. d) ought to have bought
- 7. d) must have lost
- 8. b) must have

- 9. b) have been
- 10. b) must have been
- 11. d) might have left
- 12. c) must have been
- 13. b) might have
- 14. c) must have taken
- 15. d) can't
- 16. d) could have spent

- 17. b) might have told
- 18. a) can't
- 19. c) can't have been
- 20. d) must have been
- 21. a) might
- 22. b) can't have seen
- 23. b) can't have seen
- 24. d) shouldn't have eaten

Fill in the space:

- 1. a) after
- 2. a) gets
- 3. a) needn't 4. a) must/might
- 5. a) would
- b) must/should
- b) would

- b) can
- b) have
- b) when/if
- c) who
- c) told/advised
- c) can't
- c) can't
- c) there

- d) will
- d) prepared/arranged
- d) whether
- d) might/may
- d) on

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) deserted
- 2. d) shallow
- 3. a) believe
- 4. b) explain
- d) interesting
- 6. a) laugh

- 7. b) describe
- 8. d) of
- 9. d) should have been
- 10. d) must be
- 11. d) must have
- 12. a) must have left
- 13. d) should have spent
- 14. b) must be
- 15. a) must have fallen
- 16. c) must

- Pill in the space:
 - a) must
 - c) on

- b) too
- d) won't/don't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) He had had a bad accident

4. c) Relax

2. d) He was famous

- 5. a) on Monday
- 3. a) The same thing had happened to him in a film

B) Answer the following questions:

- When there are many patients and many accidents. Also, she worked such long hours that it was sometimes difficult to be sociable after work.
- 6. I think he will die as he was injured badly in his head.
- She was respected by each member of the staff at the hospital. She always felt happy when people recovered and finally went home again.

() A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١- يجب على الحكومة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية التحتية للكثير من العشوائيات، وإلا فسوف نواجه الكثير من الكوارث.
- ٢- ليس من المعقول أن ننتقد كل شيء دون أخذ أي خطوة إيجابية باتجاه التطور؛ ولذا يجب أن نعمل كثيرًا ونتكلم قليلًا.
 - ٣- لقد عانت النساء كثيرًا في الماضي من الأمية والتمييز من حيث النوع، وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أي حقوق سياسية.

B) Answer the following questions:

- It is a must for everyone in society, young or old, to respect and appreciate teachers as they are the base of learning process.
- A good evidence of Egyptians' determination to build their country is carrying out the New Suez Canal project by the government under the president's leadership.
- Thanks to mass media and satellites, the world has become a small village where it is easy to communicate with anyone in any country while sitting in your place.

Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) abandoned
- 8. a) buried

15. b) to tell

- 2. b) engaged
- a) puzzled

16. a) Had

3. b) paces

10. a) themes

17. a) buying

4. a) plot

11. b) such a

18. b) went

5. c) adopted

- 12. d) to have escaped
- 19. d) hadn't bought

6. a) stone7. a) bear

13. a) have

20. b) will have met



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) guilty
- 2. a) lonely
- 3. a) lies
- 4. b) ensure
- 5. d) shape
- 6. a) archaeologist
- 7. c) to
- 8. b) with
- 17. Fill in the space:

 - c) must

- 9. a) must have worked
- 10. c) might be
- 11. b) must have been
- 12. c) can't be
- 13. b) must have played
- 14. c) must be
- 15. a) amusing / d) entertaining
- 16. b) shallow / e) superficial

- a) was

- b) when
- d) not

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 18. d) the sun
 - 19. a) two
 - 20. c) energy without pollution
 - 21. c) dry animal waste and form it into bricks for burning
 - 22. c) high cost

B) Answer the following questions:

- 23. Once the seeds have been taken out, the rest of the plant can be dried and burnt.
- 24. It would produce huge amounts of power which could be sent down to the earth.
- 25. As the sun never stops shining, it can supply solar energy for twenty-four hours a day.

26. Translate into English:

- Many people object to what is called globalisation as they think that it serves rich countries not poor ones and they demand to modify this system to achieve justice among countries.
- 27. Translate into Arabic:

- واحدة من أول إجراءات حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هي تثقيف الجماهير لمساعدتهم على فهم الحاجة إلى إنجاب طفل أو طفلين على الأكثر.

28. Student's own answer.

(Revision

4

Teston Revision 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) competed
- 2. a) applied
- 3. b) rewarding
- 4. d) confident
- 5. a) held
- 6. c to
- 7. 2) solution
- 8. b) mystery
- 17. Fill in the space:
 - a) While
 - c) was

- 9. d) stealing
- 10. b) surprised
- 11. d) would be
- 12. c) until
- 13. b) banned
- 14. d) were
- 15. d) asked

b) the

d) that

- b) being listened
- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 18. c) is less effective than what he does.
- 19. a) they follow the example set by their teacher.
- 20. c) disregard and ignore personal danger.
- 21. b) those who speak much and do little.
- 22. b) patriots

B) Answer the following questions:

- 23. When they don't follow advice they give to people by themselves.
- 24. By teaching people by what they said as much as by what they did.
- 25. Student's own answer.

26. Translate into English:

 The strong relation and mutual respect between father and mother are considered the fertile soil in which their children grow to be sound persons physically and psychologically.

27. Translate into Arabic:

حقيقة لا يمكن إنكارها أن الشنباب هم أسناس أي تقدم للآمة؛ لذلك يجب على الحكومة أن تعطى اهتمامها لمساعدتهم لكي يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين.

28. Student's own answer.